Methods in Molecular Biology 1371

Springer Protocols

Maria Cristina Cuturi
Ignacio Anegon *Editors*

Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses

Methods and Protocols
Volume II

Humana Press

METHODS IN MOLECULAR BIOLOGY

Series Editor
John M. Walker
School of Life and Medical Sciences
University of Hertfordshire
Hatfield, Hertfordshire, AL10 9AB, UK

For further volumes:
http://www.springer.com/series/7651

Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses

Methods and Protocols, Volume II

Edited by

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon

INSERM UMR 1064-ITUN, Nantes, France

Humana Press

Editors
Maria Cristina Cuturi
INSERM UMR 1064-ITUN
Nantes, France

Ignacio Anegon
INSERM UMR 1064-ITUN
Nantes, France

ISSN 1064-3745 ISSN 1940-6029 (electronic)
Methods in Molecular Biology
ISBN 978-1-4939-3138-5 ISBN 978-1-4939-3139-2 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2

Library of Congress Control Number: 2010936185

Springer New York Heidelberg Dordrecht London

Printed on acid-free paper

Humana Press is a brand of Springer
Springer Science+Business Media LLC New York is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

Dedication

Al Pepe Mujica, ejemplo de explorador de nuevos caminos.

Preface

New Roads for Immune Tolerance: Finding the Way

Caminante no hay camino, se hace camino al andar.

Antonio Machado

This book describes new ways to induce immune immunoregulation and tolerance. The epigraph underlines that the roads taken in research are not defined in advance and unwind whilst moving ahead. This may seem obvious but underscores some interesting points of present research. One is that basic research, without a final goal or a given objective but rather curiosity-driven, needs to be preserved and stimulated as a way to find new paths of progress. Another point is the need to have a very open mind to options that emerge during research and find the one that may seem the most appropriate to choose. Finally, once on the road to immunoregulation or immune tolerance as a goal, the trail may be long winded and dangerous.

The aim of this book is a guide to finding roads, walking along them whilst making choices finding objectives in immunoregulation and immune tolerance research and avoiding making the same mistakes. These aims are based on recent developments on cells and molecules of the immune system and their interactions. This volume II on "Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses" follows the one published in 2009. All of the chapters of this volume II are entirely new and describe research on new areas from researchers with worldwide recognition and extensive experience in their topics.

We believe that the book will be of interest and inspirational for new research in immune tolerance, and we hope that future readers will find it useful. We are very grateful to the authors that made this book possible; they are the intrepid travelers on these research roads.

Nantes, France

Maria Cristina Cuturi
Ignacio Anegon

Acknowledgments

We gratefully acknowledge Mrs. Brenda Evans for her very efficient secretarial assistance.

We also acknowledge support by the project IMBIO-DCs from de Région Pays de la Loire, the Labex IGO project (n° ANR-11-LABX-0016-01) funded by the "Investissements d'Avenir" French Government program, managed by the French National Research Agency (ANR) and by the project Institut Hospitalo Universitaire-Centre Européen des Sciences de la Transplantation et d'Immunothérapie (CESTI) funded by the "Investissements d'Avenir" French Government program (n° ANR-10-IBHU-005) as well as by Nantes Metropole and the Pays de la Loire Region, the ONE Study funded by the European Union FP7 program and the Fondation ProGreffe.

Contents

Contributors

Rosita Aitoro • *Food Allergy Unit, Department of Translational Medical Science, Pediatric Section, University of Naples "Federico II", Naples, Italy*

Tatiana Akimova • *Division of Transplant Immunology, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine and Biesecker Center for Pediatric Liver Disease, Children's Hospital of Philadelphia, Perelman School of Medicine at the University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA*

Darya Alizadeh • *Department of Pediatrics, Cancer Biology Graduate Program, College of Medicine, University of Arizona, Tucson, AZ, USA*

Dominique L.P. Baeten • *Department of Clinical Immunology & Rheumatology, Academic Medical Center, University of Amsterdam, Amsterdam, The Netherlands; Department of Experimental Immunology, Academic Medical Center, University of Amsterdam, Amsterdam, The Netherlands*

P.D. Becker • *MRC Centre for Transplantation, King's College London, Guy's Hospital, London, UK*

Ulf H. Beier • *Division of Nephrology, Department of Pediatrics, Children's Hospital of Philadelphia, Perelman School of Medicine at the University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA*

Gaëlle Bériou • *INSERM UMR1064, ITUN, Nantes, France*

Roberto Berni Canani • *Food Allergy Unit, Department of Translational Medical Science, Pediatric Section, University of Naples "Federico II", Naples, Italy; European Laboratory for the Investigation of Food Induced Diseases, University of Naples "Federico II", Naples, Italy; CEINGE-Advanced Biotechnology, University of Naples Federico II, Naples, Italy*

Laura Carretero-Iglesia • *ITUN, Inserm UMRS 1064, Center for Research in Transplantation and Immunology, Nantes, France*

Lucienne Chatenoud • *INSERM U1151, Hôpital Necker-Enfants Malades, Paris, France; CNRS UMR 8253, Hôpital Necker-Enfants Malades, Paris, France; Université Paris Descartes, Sorbonne Paris Cité, Paris, France*

Linda Cosenza • *Food Allergy Unit, Department of Translational Medical Science, Pediatric Section, University of Naples "Federico II", Naples, Italy*

Margherita Di Costanzo • *Food Allergy Unit, Department of Translational Medical Science, Pediatric Section, University of Naples "Federico II", Naples, Italy*

Maria Cristina Cuturi • *ITUN, Inserm UMRS 1064, Center for Research in Transplantation and Immunology, Nantes, France*

Charlotte Esser • *Leibniz Research Institute for Environmental Medicine (IUF), Düsseldorf, Germany*

Gerry Fahy • *Department of Ophthalmology, University Hospital Galway, National University of Ireland, Galway, Ireland*

Wayne W. Hancock • *Division of Transplant Immunology, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine and Biesecker Center for Pediatric Liver Disease, Children's Hospital of Philadelphia, Perelman School of Medicine at the University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA*

Marcelo Hill • *Laboratorio de Inmunorregulación e inflamación, Departamento de Inmunobiología, Facultad de Medicina, Institut Pasteur de Montevideo, Universidad de la Republica, Montevideo, Uruguay*
Régis Josien • *INSERM UMR1064, ITUN, Nantes, France; Faculté de Médecine, Université de Nantes, Nantes, France; Laboratoire d'Immunologie, CHU Nantes Hôtel Dieu, Nantes, France*
Sarantis Korniotis • *Institut Necker Enfants Malades, INSERM U1151, CNRS UMR8253, Sorbonne Paris Cité, Université Paris Descartes Site Broussais, Paris, France*
Nicolas Larmonier • *Department of Pediatrics, Cancer Biology Graduate Program, College of Medicine, University of Arizona, Tucson, AZ, USA; Department of Immunobiology, Arizona Cancer Center, College of Medicine, BIO5 Research Institute, University of Arizona, Tucson, AZ, USA*
R. Lechler • *MRC Centre for Transplantation, King's College London, Guy's Hospital, London, UK*
Matthew H. Levine • *Department of Surgery, Penn Transplant Institute, Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania and University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA*
Aifen Lin • *Medical Research Center, Taizhou Hospital of Zhejiang Province, Wenzhou Medical University, Linhai, Zhejiang, China*
G. Lombardi • *MRC Centre for Transplantation, King's College London, Guy's Hospital, London, UK*
Jérôme C. Martin • *INSERM UMR1064, ITUN, Nantes, France; Faculté de Médecine, Université de Nantes, Nantes, France; Laboratoire d'Immunologie, CHU Nantes Hôtel Dieu, Nantes, France*
Benjamin M. Matta • *Department of Surgery, Thomas E. Starzl Transplantation Institute, University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, Pittsburgh, PA, USA*
Ruddy Montandon • *Welcome Trust Sanger Institute, Cambridge, UK*
Rita Nocerino • *Food Allergy Unit, Department of Translational Medical Science, Pediatric Section, University of Naples "Federico II", Naples, Italy*
Lisa O'Flynn • *Orbsen Therapeutics Ltd., Galway, Ireland*
Lorella Paparo • *Food Allergy Unit, Department of Translational Medical Science, Pediatric Section, University of Naples "Federico II", Naples, Italy*
Louis Pérol • *INSERM U932, Paris, France; Institut Curie, Section Recherche, Paris, France*
Eliane Piaggio • *INSERM U932, Paris, France; Institut Curie, Section Recherche, Paris, France*
Thomas Ritter • *College of Medicine, Nursing and Health Sciences, Regenerative Medicine Institute, National University of Ireland, Galway, Ireland*
N. Safinia • *MRC Centre for Transplantation, King's College London, Guy's Hospital, London, UK*
Birgit Sawitzki • *Institute of Medical Immunology, Charité University Medicine, Berlin, Germany*
Carmen Di Scala • *Food Allergy Unit, Department of Translational Medical Science, Pediatric Section, University of Naples "Federico II", Naples, Italy*
Stephan Schlickeiser • *Institute of Medical Immunology, Charité University Medicine, Berlin, Germany*
Mathias Streitz • *Institute of Medical Immunology, Charité University Medicine, Berlin, Germany*

Sander W. Tas • *Department of Clinical Immunology & Rheumatology, Academic Medical Center, University of Amsterdam, Amsterdam, The Netherlands; Department of Experimental Immunology, Academic Medical Center, University of Amsterdam, Amsterdam, The Netherlands*

Oliver Treacy • *College of Medicine, Nursing and Health Sciences, Regenerative Medicine Institute, National University of Ireland, Galway, Ireland*

Wenwei Tu • *Department of Pediatrics & Adolescent Medicine, Li Ka Shing Faculty of Medicine, University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, China*

Hēth R. Turnquist • *Department of Surgery, Thomas E. Starzl Transplantation Institute, University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, Pittsburgh, PA, USA; Department of Immunology, University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, Pittsburgh, PA, USA*

T. Vaikunthanathan • *MRC Centre for Transplantation, King's College London, Guy's Hospital, London, UK*

F. Xiao • *MRC Centre for Transplantation, King's College London, Guy's Hospital, London, UK*

Wei-Hua Yan • *Medical Research Center, Taizhou Hospital of Zhejiang Province, Wenzhou Medical University, Linhai, Zhejiang, China*

Sylvaine You • *INSERM U1151, Hôpital Necker-Enfants Malades, Paris, France; CNRS UMR 8253, Hôpital Necker-Enfants Malades, Paris, France; Université Paris Descartes, Sorbonne Paris Cité, Paris, France*

Flora Zavala • *Institut Necker Enfants Malades, INSERM U1151, CNRS UMR8253, Sorbonne Paris Cité, Université Paris Descartes Site Broussais, Paris, France*

Jian Zheng • *Department of Pediatrics & Adolescent Medicine, Li Ka Shing Faculty of Medicine, University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, China*

Part I

New Molecules and Cellular Mechanisms of Immunoregulation

Chapter 1

HLA-G as an Inhibitor of Immune Responses

Aifen Lin and Wei-Hua Yan

Abstract

HLA-G is a nonclassical human leukocyte antigen (HLA) class I molecule which plays important tolerogenic functions in various physiological and pathological situations such as fetus and transplant acceptance, and immune escaping of virus-infected and malignant cells. Here we describe a method, which allows for studying cell surface expression of HLA-G using specific antibodies with flow cytometry analysis.

Key words HLA-G, Flow cytometry, Antibody

1 Introduction

Human leukocyte antigen G (HLA-G) is a nonclassic HLA class I molecule that was initially observed to be restricted to the fetal-maternal interface on the extravillous cytotrophoblasts [1]. Unlike classical HLA class I antigens, HLA-G featured with limited polymorphism, restricted tissue distribution, slow turnover, limited peptide diversity, immunosuppressive properties, and seven isoforms, which include four membrane-bound (HLA-G1, -G2, -G3, and -G4) and three soluble isoforms (HLA-G5, -G6, and -G7) [2, 3].

The biological function of HLA-G is through binding to its receptors including ILT-2/CD85j, ILT-4/CD85d, KIR2DL4/CD158d, CD8, and CD160 expressed on different types of cells [4]. KIR2DL4 is expressed on NK cells, ILT-2 is expressed on B lymphocytes, some T lymphocytes and NK cells, and all dendritic cells and monocytes, ILT-4 is expressed by monocytes, dendritic cells, and recently reported in neutrophils. The CD8 is predominantly expressed on the surface of cytotoxic T cells, but can also be found on natural killer cells, CD160 is expressed by cytotoxic CD8+ T cells and NK cells, and a small proportion of CD4+ T cells [5]. By binding receptors expressed on various cells and the pathway of trogocytosis, HLA-G could inhibit the cytolytic function of NK cells and T lymphocytes, the alloproliferative response of CD4+ T cells, the ongoing proliferation of T cells and NK cells,

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_1,

the maturation of dendritic cells, the Ig secretion of B lymphocyte and phagocytosis of neutrophils, and induces regulatory cells [6–9]. In the context of clinical aspects, the significance of HLA-G expression has been extensively investigated in the fetal-maternal immune tolerance, the acceptance of solid organ transplants, and the immune escape of tumors and virus-infected cells [10].

In this chapter, we provide the protocol for a sensitive, quantitative, and simple method to measure cell surface expression of HLA-G on human cells with flow cytometry (or fluorescence-activated cell sorting, FACS). Please note that this protocol will allow detecting the certain types of HLA-G isoforms only according to the specificity of anti-HLA-G antibodies [11]. Other methods for the detection of HLA-G and HLA-G isoforms are available, such as quantitative RT-PCR, immunohistochemistry and Western blotting; however, these are not covered in this chapter.

2 Materials

Prepare all solutions using ultrapure water (prepared by deionized water to attain an electrical resistivity of 18 MΩ cm at 25 °C) and analytical or higher grade reagents. Store all reagents at 4 °C (unless indicated otherwise). Follow institutional guidelines for waste disposal.

2.1 Buffers

1. Cell detaching buffer: PBS (1×) containing 10 mM EDTA pH 8.0. We do not recommend using trypsin to detach adherent cells because it may strip/cleave the molecules expressed on the cell surface.
2. FACS buffer: PBS (1×) containing 1 % BSA and 10 mM EDTA (PBS-BSA) pH 8.0. Sterile filter solution and store at 4 °C or aliquot and freeze at –20 °C.
3. Cell fixing buffer: PBS (1×) containing 0.5 % paraformaldehyde (PBS-PFA). Store at room temperature.

2.2 Antibodies

1. We use anti-human HLA-G mouse monoclonal antibody MEM-G/9 (Exbio, Prague, The Czech Republic). This antibody targets native form of human HLA-G1 on the cell surface as well as with soluble HLA-G5 isoform in its beta2-microglobulin-associated form. For more information on the differences between anti-HLA-G antibodies please *see* **Note 1**.
2. If non-labeled primary antibody is to be used, subsequent staining with an appropriate fluorochrome-conjugated secondary antibody is required.

2.3 Other Materials and Equipment

1. 96-Well plates (U- or V-bottom) with lids or adhesive film.
2. Variable volume pipettes.

3. Sterile tips.
4. Centrifuge.
5. Flow cytometer.
6. Ice.

3 Methods

Grow cells as per protocol and treat cells as required for your experiment (*see* **Note 2**). We do not recommend using cells that are overgrown or exhibit excessive cell death (*see* **Note 3**). This protocol allows for detection of HLA-G expression on both adherent (such as JEG-3 cells) and on non-adherent cells (such as K562 cells). If adherent cells are used for the analysis of HLA-G expression, begin with **step 1** of the protocol and if non-adherent cells are used, omit **steps 1** and **2** below and begin directly with **step 3**. Prepare all buffers and solutions before starting the experiment. To be able to analyze the data obtained one needs to prepare and assess controls along with the experimental staining. The controls we routinely use are listed in Table 1.

1. Wash cells once in sterile 1× PBS by adding 10 ml sterile PBS to T75 flask and gently tap the flask. Be careful not to detach the cells at this point. Aspirate the PBS by decanting or by removing with a pipet.
2. After removing the PBS used for washing, add 5–10 ml of the detaching solution to T75 flask of cells, swirl slowly around so that all cells are covered with the detaching solution, and incubate for 5–10 min at 37 °C in incubator until the solution becomes cloudy.
3. Collect the detached cells or the non-adherent cells using a pipet and transfer into a fresh tube, such as a 15 or 50 ml conical centrifuge tube. Some cells may not detached completely just by incubation in detaching solution; detachment can then

Table 1
Suggested negative/positive controls for the detection of HLA-G expression by flow cytometry

Type of control	Notes
Unstained cells	To check for dead cells using FCS/SSC plots
Cells stained with secondary antibody or isotype control antibody	Control for nonspecific binding of secondary or isotype controls to cells of interest
Cells that does not express HLA-G (if desired)	Control for nonspecific binding of anti-HLA-G antibody
Cells that express HLA-G (if desired)	Control for specific binding of anti-HLA-G antibody

often be supported by gently tapping the side of the culture flask against one hand several times.

4. Resuspend cells with ice-cold PBS-BSA and adjust cell concentration to 2×10^6 cells/ml using hemocytometer or other suitable method.
5. Transfer 50 μl cell suspension per well in 96-well plate (U- or V-bottom). Prepare as many wells as you need to perform the experiment including all non-stained and/or isotype controls and/or secondary antibody only and/or positive controls (*see* Table 1).
6. Wash the cells once in 200 μl ice-cold 1× PBS by centrifugation at 300 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C. Remove the supernatant after each wash by quickly flicking the plate upside down over a sink, and then carefully tapping it on clean paper towels to remove the remaining liquid.
7. While washing, prepare antibody solution by mixing ice-cold FACS buffer with the FITC-MEM-G/9 and isotype control (5 μg/ml final concentration) (*see* **Notes 4** and **5**).
8. Add 100 μl of the diluted antibody to each well and incubate with cells for 30–60 min at 4 °C. The final volume of the mix we typically use is 150 μl per well, but this could be scaled to from 50 to 250 μl if desired. *Do not* add the antibody to cells that are to be used as secondary and unstained cells control. Controls included negative (no stain added), isotype control (with similarly labeled, nonspecific primary antibody), and positive cell controls.
9. Pellet the cells by centrifugation (spin at 300 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C).
10. Wash twice as in **step 6**. The samples are now ready for FACS analysis and you can proceed immediately to **steps 15** and **16**.
11. If you have used a non-labeled anti-HLA-G antibody in **steps 7** and **8** (indirect staining), dilute the secondary FITC-labeled anti-mouse IgG antibody to 0.25 μg/ml (or 1/100 from the stock) in FACS buffer. Vortex to mix.
12. Add the secondary FITC-labeled antibody to wells containing cells stained with the anti-HLA-G antibody and washed twice with 1× PBS. Also add the secondary FITC-labeled antibody to at least two wells containing isotype control-incubated and non-stained cells; these will be used as isotype control and a secondary antibody only control staining. *Do not* forget to leave some wells without any antibody addition as non-stained cell control wells.
13. Incubate for 20 min in the dark at 4 °C.
14. Wash twice as in **step 6**.

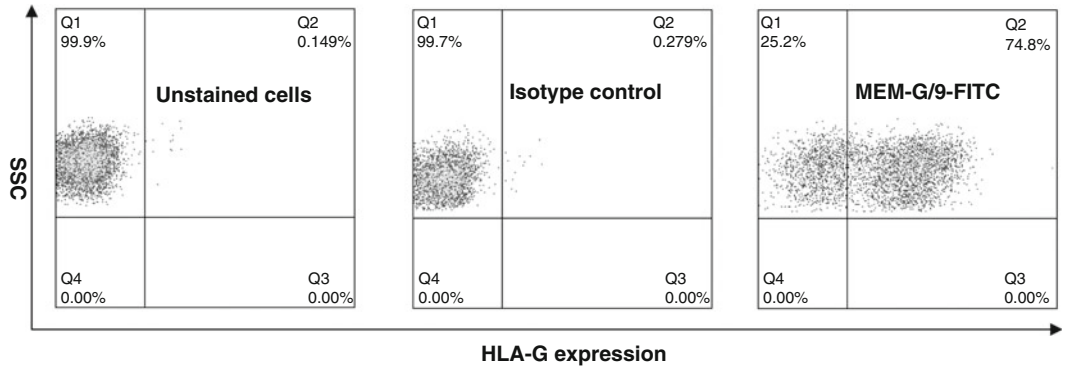


Fig. 1 Flow cytometry analysis of HLA-G expression on the surface of K562-G1 cells

15. If cells are to be analyzed the same day they can be resuspended with 300 μl FACS buffer and transferred cells to Falcon tubes (5 ml polystyrene round-bottom tube, 12 × 75 mm) and kept at 4 °C in the dark. Alternatively cells can be fixed with cell fixing buffer and stored in the fridge for 2–3 days prior to analysis.
16. Analyze on a suitable flow cytometer (e.g., FACS Calibur, FACS Canto II) acquiring the non-stained cells control first, then the secondary/isotype antibody controls, and the HLA-G-stained cells. Example FACS plots for HLA-G expression in K562-G1 cells (exogenous HLA-G1 expression in K562 cells) [13], normal peripheral blood CD14+ monocytes, and CD3+ T lymphocytes are shown in Figs. 1 and 2, respectively (*see* **Note 6**).

4 Notes

1. Excellent anti-HLA-G antibodies with HLA-G isoform specificity, that generate strong signals during flow cytometry analyses, can be purchased from most major vendors such as Exbio, Abcam, BD Biosciences, etc. There are six HLA-G isoform-specific antibodies that are often used by researchers in flow cytometry analysis to address the expression and functional of HLA-G in various conditions.

   MEM-G/9 reacts with HLA-G1 on the cell surface as well as with soluble HLA-G5 isoform in its beta2-microglobulin-associated form. This antibody is the standard reagent thoroughly validated during 3rd International Conference on HLA-G (Paris, 2003). 01G (IgG1) and MEM-G/11 (IgG1) recognize HLA-G1, but not soluble forms. 2A12 (IgG1) and 5A6G7 (IgG1) recognize HLA-G5 and HLA-G6 isoforms but not HLA-G1 isoform. 87G (IgG2a) recognizes both membrane-bound and soluble forms of HLA-G (HLA-G1 and HLA-G5) and can block the interaction

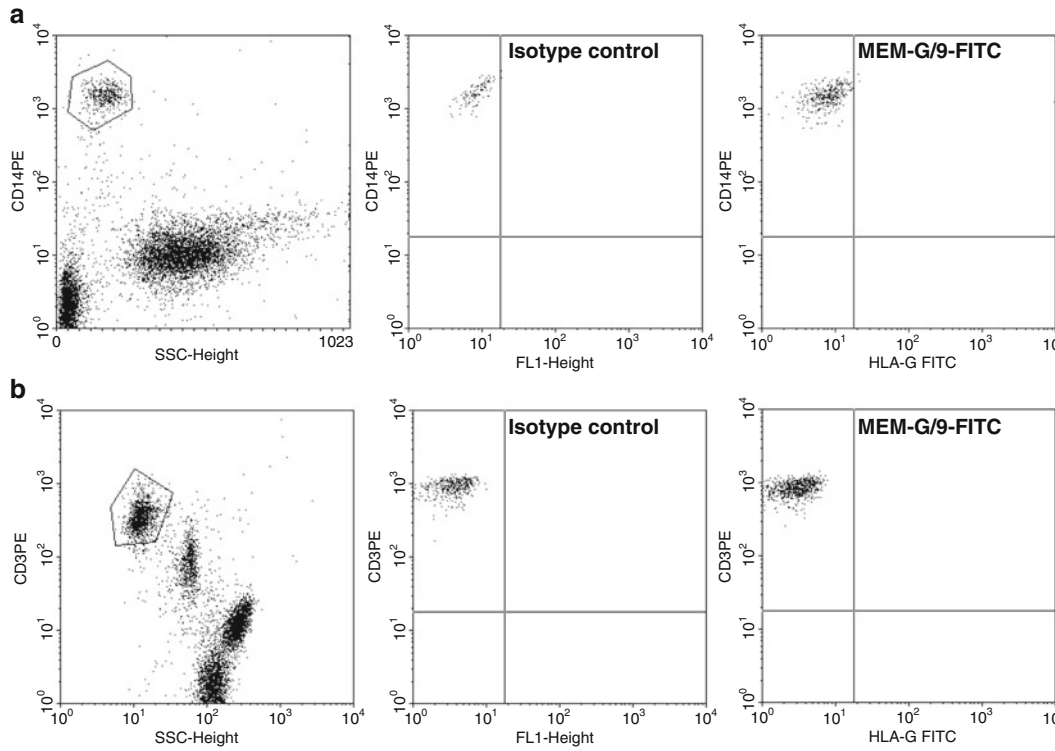


Fig. 2 Flow cytometry analysis of HLA-G expression in normal peripheral blood cells. (**a**) A representative flow cytometry diagram shows CD14+ monocytes gated by CD14 and its HLA-G expression. (**b**) A representative flow cytometry diagram shows CD3+ T lymphocytes gated by CD3 and its HLA-G expression

of HLA-G with inhibitory receptors, and thus can be used in functional assays evaluating the role of HLA-G [11, 12].

2. Grow cells as per protocol. Replace the media on the day before experiment. If cells growing in suspension are used skip **steps 1** and **2**. If adherent cells are to be analyzed start from **step 1**.
3. Note that dead cells can bind antibodies nonspecifically and often give false-positive results in flow cytometry analysis. It is therefore advisable to use cultures with a high proportion of viable cells. Cell viability can be assessed by Trypan blue staining before cell staining. Further, the forward scatter (FSC) vs. sideward scatter (SSC) pattern of the cells during FACS analysis after the FACS measurement of HLA-Gexpression staining procedures will give a second clue about the condition of the cells (dead cells have a distinctive FSC/SSC pattern).
4. Both primary and secondary antibodies must be tittered on known HLA-G-positive (Choriocarcinoma cell line JEG-3, ATCC Number: HTB-36) and HLA-G-negative (Choriocarcinoma cell line JAR, ATCC Number: HTB-144) cell populations prior to use in actual experiments.

5. The final concentration of the staining antibody and the isotype control should be the same. Optimal antibody concentrations are determined by titration. Always run in parallel an isotype-matched control antibody.
6. For two- and three-color analysis, compensation controls must be run to compensate for spectral overlap. These consist of one sample each stained with each fluorescent reagent separately and a control containing both colors; for example if two-color analysis is performed with FITC and phycoerythrin (PE) then samples stained with FITC alone and PE alone and a sample certain to be positive for both colors should be run.

Acknowledgements

This work is supported by grants from National Natural Science Foundation of China (31170879, 31370920, 81372247), Zhejiang Provincial Natural Science Foundation of China (LR13H160001), and by Zhejiang Provincial program for the cultivation of high-level innovative health talents.

References

1. Kovats S, Main EK, Librach C et al (1990) A class I antigen, HLA-G, expressed in human trophoblasts. Science 248:220–223
2. Yan WH (2011) Human leukocyte antigen-G in cancer: are they clinically relevant? Cancer Lett 311:123–130
3. Yan WH (2011) HLA-G expression in cancers: potential role in diagnosis, prognosis and therapy. Endocr Metab Immune Disord Drug Targets 11:76–89
4. Fainardi E, Castellazzi M, Stignani M et al (2011) Emerging topics and new perspectives on HLA-G. Cell Mol Life Sci 68:433–451
5. González A, Rebmann V, LeMaoult J et al (2012) The immunosuppressive molecule HLA-G and its clinical implications. Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci 49:63–84
6. Carosella ED, Gregori S, LeMaoult J (2011) The tolerogenic interplay(s) among HLA-G, myeloid APCs, and regulatory cells. Blood 118:6499–6505
7. Naji A, Menier C, Morandi F et al (2014) Binding of HLA-G to ITIM-bearing Ig-like transcript 2 receptor suppresses B cell responses. J Immunol 192:1536–1546
8. Baudhuin J, Migraine J, Faivre V et al (2013) Exocytosis acts as a modulator of the ILT4-mediated inhibition of neutrophil functions. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110: 17957–17962
9. Brown R, Kabani K, Favaloro J et al (2012) CD86+ or HLA-G+ can be transferred via trogocytosis from myeloma cells to T cells and are associated with poor prognosis. Blood 120:2055–2063
10. Carosella ED (2011) The tolerogenic molecule HLA-G. Immunol Lett 138:22–24
11. Paul P, Rouas-Freiss N, Moreau P et al (2000) HLA-G, -E, -F preworkshop: tools and protocols for analysis of non-classical class I genes transcription and protein expression. Hum Immunol 61:1177–1195
12. LeMaoult J, Le Discorde M, Rouas-Freiss N et al (2003) Biology and functions of human leukocyte antigen-G in health and sickness. Tissue Antigens 62:273–284
13. Chen BG, Xu DP, Lin A et al (2013) NK cytolysis is dependent on the proportion of HLA-G expression. Hum Immunol 74: 286–289

Chapter 2

New Molecular and Cellular Mechanisms of Tolerance: Tolerogenic Actions of IL-2

Louis Pérol and Eliane Piaggio

Abstract

Interleukin-2 (IL-2) is an old molecule with brand new functions. Indeed, IL-2 has been first described as a T-cell growth factor but recent data pointed out that its main function in vivo is the maintenance of immune tolerance. Mechanistically, IL-2 is essential for the development and function of $CD4^+$ $Foxp3^+$ regulatory T cells (T_{reg} cells) that are essential players in the control of immune responded to self, tumors, microbes and grafts. T_{reg} cells are exquisitely sensitive to IL-2 due to their constitutive expression of the high affinity IL-2 receptor (IL-2R) and the new paradigm suggests that low-doses of IL-2 could selectively boost T_{reg} cells in vivo. Consequently, a growing body of clinical research is aiming at using IL-2 at low doses as a tolerogenic drug to boost endogenous T_{reg} cells in patients suffering from autoimmune or inflammatory conditions. In this manuscript, we briefly review IL-2/IL-2R biology and the role of IL-2 in the development, maintenance, and function of T_{reg} cells; and also its effects on other immune cell populations such as $CD4^+$ T helper cells and $CD8^+$ memory T cells. Then, focusing on type 1 diabetes, we review the preclinical studies and clinical trials supporting the use of low-doses IL-2 as a tolerogenic immunotherapy. Finally, we discuss the limitations and future directions for IL-2 based immunotherapy.

Key words Interleukin-2, Immune tolerance, Immunotherapy, Autoimmunity, Regulatory T cells

1 Introduction

Interleukin-2 (IL-2) was the first cytokine to be identified, even before IL-1. In the 70s, the groups of Robert Gallo and Kendall Smith showed that activated T cells produced a soluble T-cell growth factor that allowed the long-term maintenance of T cells in vitro [1, 2]. The anecdote is that it was named IL-2, because Smith's experiments demonstrated that it was IL-1, produced by activated macrophages that induced IL-2 production by the activated T cells [3]. In 1983, the IL-2 gene was cloned by Tadatsugu Taniguchi's team [4] and its crystal structure was solved in 1992 [5]. IL-2 is an old molecule with brand new functions. Indeed, even if IL-2 has been administered for more than 20 years to cancer patients, based on its capacity to boost the immune response, recent results have pointed out that IL-2 can have impressive

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_2,

tolerogenic actions. This novel aspect has led researchers and clinicians to consider the potential of IL-2 as an immunosuppressor. Here, we will review the basic aspects of IL-2 biology, the contrasting effector and tolerogenic actions of the cytokine and we will focus on the lessons learned from mice and humans on the therapeutic use of low-dose IL-2 as inducer of immune tolerance.

1.1 The Biology of IL-2 and IL-2 Receptor (IL-2R)

1.1.1 IL-2

IL-2 is a 15,000 Da alpha-helical cytokine mainly produced by $CD4^+$ and also $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes after activation. In addition, IL-2 can also be produced at low levels by γδ T lymphocytes and by NKT cells after activation via their endogenous ligands [6, 7]. Finally, activated dendritic cells and mastocytes are also able to produce IL-2 [8, 9], although the precise relevance of this phenomenon remains to be elucidated. Upon activation, naïve T lymphocytes produce large amounts of IL-2 in a rapid and transient fashion. Indeed, different TCR signaling downstream molecules such as AP-1, NF-κB/p65, and NFAT are translocated into the nucleus and form a complex at the promoter of the *Il2* gene, inducing its transcription [10]. The engagement of co-stimulatory molecules on T lymphocytes is required for optimal IL-2 production, as it stabilizes IL-2 mRNA [11]. Then, IL-2 transcription is rapidly shutdown by termination of the *Il2* gene transcriptional activity and degradation of the IL-2 mRNA. Importantly, a negative feedback loop finely regulates IL-2 production: IL-2 acts in an autocrine way, inducing the expression of the transcription factor Blimp-1, a transcriptional repressor of *Il2* transcription [12, 13]. The importance of this negative feedback loop is shown by the observation that Blimp-$1^{-/-}$ T cells produce more IL-2 and that Blimp-$1^{-/-}$ mice die prematurely of an autoimmune syndrome marked by uncontrolled T lymphocyte activation [14, 15].

The rapid and transient nature of IL-2 production suggests that IL-2 mainly acts in an autocrine or paracrine fashion, therefore preventing widespread activation of the immune system. Furthermore, due to a very short half-life [16], IL-2 is highly difficult to detect in the serum of healthy individuals, even if non-negligible numbers of IL-2-producing T cells can be detected by flow cytometry. One hypothesis is that IL-2 is retained within the extracellular matrix in a biologically active form [17–19].

1.1.2 IL-2R

The IL-2R is composed of three non-covalently associating subunits: the alpha (IL-2Rα, CD25), the beta (IL-2Rβ, CD122), and the common cytokine receptor gamma (IL-2Rγ_c, CD132) chains.

Of note, the CD122 subunit is also a part of the IL-15R, along with IL-15Rα and the γ_c chains; and the CD132 subunit is common to the receptor complexes for IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21.

The IL-2R exists in different forms, which display different affinities for IL-2 and different cellular repartitions. First, the

dimeric receptor composed of the IL-2Rβ and IL-2Rγ_c chains, forms the intermediate affinity IL-2R (dissociation constant (K_d) = 10^{-9} M). While the IL-2Rγ_c subunit is ubiquitously expressed on immune cells, the IL-2Rβ chain is expressed at high levels on NK cells, memory CD8$^+$ T cells and at lower levels on resting T cells, B cells and different innate immune cells such as dendritic cells, endowing them with the capacity to respond to IL-2 through this intermediate affinity IL-2R. Then, the association of the IL-2Rα to the intermediate affinity IL-2R forms the high affinity IL-2R ($K_d = 10^{-11}$ M). Importantly, CD25 by itself can bind IL-2 with low affinity ($K_d = 10^{-8}$ M) but does not induce any intracellular signal [20]. Crystallographic data revealed that CD25 binding to IL-2 is the first event in IL-2R formation, subsequently allowing the recruitment of CD122 and γ_c [21]. In addition, the binding of IL-2 to CD25 modifies the quaternary structure of IL-2, stabilizing it in its high affinity receptor [22]. The expression pattern of the high affinity IL-2R is much more restricted, with only regulatory T cells (T_{reg} cells) and type 2 innate lymphoid cells (ILC2) expressing it constitutively, making those extremely sensitive to IL-2. In addition, conventional dendritic cells express low levels of CD25 at steady state and could trans-present IL-2 to CD122/CD132 expressing naïve T cells, enhancing their activation [23]. Finally, CD4$^+$ Foxp3$^-$ effector T cells (T_{eff} cells), CD8$^+$ T cells but also B cells and NK cells transiently upregulate CD25 expression after stimulation with their respective ligands, giving them the ability to respond to low-doses IL-2.

Mechanistically, the α chain does not participate in signaling, but both the intermediate and high affinity IL-2Rs are functional as they induce the trans-phosphorylation of the intracellular domains of CD122 and CD132, allowing the recruitment of different intracellular signaling proteins. Namely, three main canonical pathways are activated after the interaction of IL-2 with its receptor: the JAK3/STAT5 pathway, the PI3K/Act/motor pathway and the MAPK pathway [24].

1.2 Effector Functions of IL-2

Besides its tolerogenic actions that are the subject of this review, one should not forget that historically IL-2 has been first described to play an important role in the homeostasis of different effector immune cells and particularly CD8$^+$ T cells.

1.2.1 IL-2 Actions Beyond CD4$^+$ T Cells

Indeed, after a viral infection, all activated antigen-specific CD8$^+$ T cells rapidly gain CD25 expression and upregulate CD122, making them able to respond to autocrine and paracrine IL-2 [25]. After a few days, CD25 becomes bimodal with only the short-lived effector cells maintaining high CD25 expression and the long-lived memory cells losing it, suggesting an important role of IL-2 in the differentiation of effector CD8$^+$ T cells [25]. In accordance, bone marrow chimera experiments then demonstrated that CD25$^{-/-}$ CD8$^+$ T cells fail to differentiate in fully competent

effector $CD8^+$ T cells, as they are present in reduced numbers and have less cytotoxic properties than their wild type counterparts [26–28]. Identical results were obtained with $CD122^{-/-}$ [29] and $STAT5^{-/-}$ mice [30]. Finally, even if the maintenance of memory cells in the host seems to mainly rely on IL-15 and not on IL-2 [31, 32], the presence of IL-2 during the priming of $CD8^+$ T cells is required for the normal expansion of memory $CD8^+$ T cells after a secondary infection [26–28].

In addition, as stated above, other cellular subsets such as T_{eff} cells, NK and B cells express the IL-2R at steady state or after activation. However, the extent of the effect of IL-2 in the homeostasis of these cells is not fully understood. For instance, the homeostasis of NK cells is strictly dependent on IL-15. Indeed, although both IL-15 and IL-2 signal via the intermediate affinity IL-2R, IL-2 is not able to compensate the profound NK defect observed in $IL\text{-}15^{-/-}$ and $IL\text{-}15Ra^{-/-}$ mice [33, 34]. Confirming those results, NK cell responses are only slightly reduced in $IL\text{-}2^{-/-}$ mice [35]. A recent study suggests that immature $CD127^+$ NK cells express low levels of CD25 and that IL-2 is necessary for the optimal expansion of this particular NK subset after an infection or in cancer [36]. Importantly, as NK cells express 10–100 times more CD122 than T lymphocytes, it makes sense that even low doses of IL-2 will boost NK cells in vivo [37]. The group of B. Bielekova demonstrated the heterogeneous pattern of CD122 distribution among human NK cells. Indeed, they showed that $CD56^{bright}$ "immunoregulatory" NK cells express ten times more CD122 than $CD56^{dim}$ NK cells, making them more sensible to IL-2 [38]. Also, B cells express the high affinity IL-2R after activation [39] and several studies reported that IL-2 can enhance B cell proliferation [39–41]. Furthermore, the frequencies and numbers of γδ T cells and intra-epithelial CD8αα T lymphocytes are reduced in $IL\text{-}2^{-/-}$ and $CD122^{-/-}$ mice, suggesting a role of IL-2 in their homeostasis [42–45]. Recent data demonstrated that type 2 innate lymphoid cells (ILC2) constitutively express the high affinity IL-2R [46, 47]. The contribution of IL-2 to the homeostasis of ILC2 remains to be determined, along with the contribution of ILC2 in the tolerogenic properties of IL-2. Recent results demonstrated that human mature dendritic cells could respond to IL-2 because they express the high affinity IL-2R. Of note, IL-2-stimulated mature dendritic cells secrete high quantities of interferon γ (IFNγ), enhancing $CD8^+$ T-cell activation in an in vitro co-culture model [48]. Finally, it is interesting to note that IL-2 action extends beyond the immune system as fibroblasts [49], neurons [50], pancreatic β-cells [51] and pulmonary endothelial cells [52] express the IL-2R and therefore can respond to IL-2. Of note, the fact that pulmonary endothelial cells express the functional IL-2 high affinity receptor could explain the vascular leak syndrome associated to high-dose IL-2 administration in a murine model of cancer [52].

1.2.2 IL-2 Modulates the Polarization of T_{eff} Cells

In vitro, $CD4^+$ T cells purified from an IL-$2^{-/-}$ mouse poorly proliferate after engagement of their TCR [53]. In mice, the immunopathology caused by the adoptive transfer of OVA-specific T_{eff} cells in OVA expressing lymphopenic recipients is reduced when the OVA-specific T_{eff} cells come from an IL-$2^{-/-}$ deficient donor [54]. These results clearly indicate that IL-2 participates in the initial proliferation of T_{eff} cells after a TCR/costimulation signal. In addition, other groups have demonstrated that IL-2 can also modulate the polarization of recently activated T_{eff} cells. Using in vitro models of T helper (Th) polarization, they showed that the absence of IL-2 signaling favors Th17 and follicular helper T cells (Tfh) polarization while it is detrimental to Th1 and Th2 polarization. Indeed, Th1 and Th2 polarization are strikingly reduced in naïve T_{eff} cells from a STAT$5^{-/-}$ or an IL-$2^{-/-}$ deficient mouse [55–57]. Similarly, addition of IL-2 neutralizing antibodies or its soluble receptor to cell cultures prevents Th1 and Th2 polarization [55–57]. Mechanistically, IL-2 acts in two ways: it induces the expression of the IL-12RB2 (in pro-Th1 conditions) or the IL-4RA (in pro-Th2 conditions) and it increases chromatin accessibility at the *Ifng* (in pro-Th1 conditions) or the *Il4* (in pro-Th2 conditions) loci [56, 58]. On the contrary, the polarization of activated T_{eff} cells in the presence of IL-6 and TGFβ (pro-Th17 conditions) and a neutralizing anti-IL-2 antibody dramatically enhances Th17 differentiation [59]. In accordance, IL-$2^{-/-}$ and STAT$5^{-/-}$ mice present elevated numbers of Th17 cells and abnormally high concentrations of IL-17 in their serum [59]. Mechanistically, the transcription factor STAT5 (induced by IL-2 signaling) directly binds the *Il17* promoter and represses its transcription [59]. In addition, IL-2 via STAT5 reduces the expression of the IL-6R subunits that are critical for optimal Th17 polarization [56]. Finally, the absence of IL-2 signaling in vivo reduces the Tfh polarization and therefore the amplitude of the germinal center reaction [60, 61]. IL-2 acts directly on Tfh cells, via the induction of Blimp-1 that represses Bcl6, the key transcription factor of Tfh cells [62].

1.2.3 Clinical Therapies Based on High-Dose IL-2 Administration

The initial results showing that IL-2 was an essential T-cell growth factor and that it could stimulate the effector functions of NK cells encouraged its administration in patients to boost effector immune responses. Indeed, the FDA approved the administration of recombinant human IL-2 at high doses in 1992 for the treatment of metastatic renal cell cancer and in 1998 for the treatment of metastatic melanoma. In addition, high-dose IL-2 therapy showed synergy with an antitumoral vaccine in metastatic melanoma [63] and with an anti-GD2 monoclonal antibody in neuroblastoma [64]. IL-2 at high doses has also been used in the clinic to boost effector immune responses in chronic infectious diseases, mainly in HIV-infected patients [65, 66]. Yet, high-dose IL-2 therapy is very toxic and the reached efficacy is not optimal [67, 68]. Indeed, IL-2 at high-doses fails to improve the survival of HIV-infected patients

[69] and induces only 5–15 % of tumor regression in cancer patients [70]. In both cases, although high doses of IL-2 can very efficiently stimulate the effector arm of the immune system, it also boosts T_{reg} cells and thus immune tolerance [71–73]. This phenomenon likely explains the relative failure of high-dose IL-2 therapy in cancer, as illustrated by the fact that the magnitude of the T_{reg} cell increment has been negatively correlated with the clinical outcome of the treated patients [74].

1.3 The Main Function of IL-2 Is the Maintenance of Immune Tolerance

The paradigm of IL-2 as the T-cell growth factor was questioned by the generation of IL-2 or IL-2R deficient mice. Indeed, those mice are not lymphopenic as it could have been expected, but die prematurely of a lymphoproliferative autoimmune syndrome [75–77]. Different groups then showed that the immunopathology observed in IL-2 and IL-2R deficient was not due to an intrinsic defect of the T_{eff} cell compartment but to the absence of $CD4^+$ $CD25^+$ $Foxp3^+$ T_{reg} cells that are critically dependent on IL-2 for their homeostasis [78, 79]. Indeed, the adoptive transfer of T_{reg} cells rescues the immunopathology caused by IL-$2^{-/-}$, $CD25^{-/-}$ or $CD122^{-/-}$ T lymphocytes, demonstrating that the main function of IL-2 is the maintenance of immune tolerance [80–82].

Two seminal works then showed that IL-$2^{-/-}$ and $CD25^{-/-}$ mice present a substantial reduction of the T_{reg} cell frequencies and numbers in the periphery but not in the thymus, suggesting that IL-2 was mandatory for T_{reg} cell homeostasis in the periphery but not for thymic generation [83, 84]. However, $CD122^{-/-}$ mice and IL-$2^{-/-}$ IL-$15^{-/-}$ mice present an important depletion of thymic T_{reg} cells [85, 86]. In addition, thymic-restricted re-expression of CD122 in $CD122^{-/-}$ mice is sufficient to restore T_{reg} cell differentiation and to prevent the lymphoproliferation normally observed in this strain [81, 87, 88]. Consequently, CD122 signaling is required for T_{reg} cell differentiation in the thymus. At the molecular level, CD122 signaling induces STAT5 phosphorylation, the latter directly binding to the *Foxp3* gene promoter and conserved noncoding DNA sequence 2 (CNS2), enhancing its transcription [85, 89, 90]. Subsequently, the identification of the immediate precursors of thymic T_{reg} cells ($CD4^+$ $CD8^-$ $CD25^+$ $Foxp3^-$ thymocytes) allowed precise delineation of the role of CD122 signaling cytokines in the differentiation of T_{reg} cells [91]. In vitro, the culture of these precursors with IL-2 is sufficient to induce the expression of key T_{reg} cell molecules as Foxp3, GITR, or CTLA-4 [91]. However, IL-2 alone is not able to drive demethylation of the CNS2 of the *Foxp3* locus, a hallmark of T_{reg} cell stability, indicating that other factors are still required for the proper differentiation of T_{reg} cells [92]. Interestingly, IL-15 and IL-7 but not IL-4, IL-21, or TSLP (the other γ_c signaling cytokines) are also able to induce Foxp3 expression in T_{reg} cell precursors, but to a lesser extent than IL-2 [91, 93, 94]. Altogether, these results show that

IL-2 plays an essential role in the differentiation of T_{reg} cells. Indeed, IL-2 via CD122/STAT5 induces the expression of Foxp3 in the $CD4^+$ $CD8^+$ $CD25^+$ $Foxp3^-$ T_{reg} cell precursors. In the absence of IL-2, IL-15 but also IL-7 can compensate, certainly explaining the absence of thymic T_{reg} cell deficit observed in IL-$2^{-/-}$ and $CD25^{-/-}$ mice.

The key role of IL-2 in the homeostasis of T_{reg} cells outside the thymus has been extensively studied. Early work showed that T_{reg} cells fail to survive and proliferate in the periphery if they are adoptively transferred in an IL-$2^{-/-}$ host [81]. In accordance, IL-$2^{-/-}$, $CD25^{-/-}$ and $CD122^{-/-}$ mice have less T_{reg} cells in the periphery, the reduction being more important in $CD122^{-/-}$, thus suggesting that IL-15 can partially compensate for lL-2 absence [83–85]. Also, the administration of a neutralizing monoclonal anti-IL-2 antibody results in the rapid depletion of T_{reg} cells and in the appearance of various autoimmune diseases [95, 96]. IL-2 is required for the maintenance of Foxp3 protein and mRNA expression both in vitro and in vivo [95, 97–99]. As T_{reg} cells cannot produce IL-2 due to direct Foxp3-mediated repression of IL-2 transcription [100], they are crucially dependent on paracrine IL-2 and their number is indexed to the number of IL-2-producing T_{eff} cells [101, 102]. In addition, polymorphisms in *Il2*, *Cd25* or downstream adaptor genes are associated with impaired T_{reg} cell function or homeostasis and higher susceptibility to various autoimmune diseases as type 1 diabetes (T1D) or multiple sclerosis [103–107]. Mechanistically, IL-2 via STAT5 induces the anti-apoptotic molecules Bcl2 and Mcl1 and therefore prevents T_{reg} cell apoptosis [102, 108–110]. IL-2 is also important to maintain the high T_{reg} cell proliferation rate in vivo, as the transcriptome of T_{reg} cells purified from IL-$2^{-/-}$ mice reveals several metabolic and cell cycle alterations [84]. Recently, the group of D. Campbell showed that only a subset of T_{reg} cells ("central" T_{reg} cells, $CD44^{low}$ $CD62L^+$) is dependent on IL-2 for its survival, partially explaining why T_{reg} cells are not totally absent in IL-$2^{-/-}$ and $CD25^{-/-}$ mice [111]. Finally, in addition to thymic T_{reg} cells, T_{eff} cells can be educated in the periphery to become peripheral T_{reg} cells [112]. IL-2 also plays an important role in the differentiation and stability of pT_{reg} cells in vivo (for a recent review, see ref. [113]) [114–120].

T_{reg} cell suppressive function relies on multiple mechanisms such as anti-inflammatory cytokine production, direct cytotoxicity, cytokine deprivation, and inhibition of dendritic cell maturation [121]. Of note, T_{reg} cells by constitutively expressing the high affinity IL-2R, they can capture the IL-2 produced by recently activated T_{eff} cells in their vicinity, inducing their apoptosis [122]. In addition, using this IL-2-dependent suppression mechanism, T_{reg} cells restrain both $CD8^+$ T cell and NK cell immune responses [36, 123–126]. Interestingly, T_{reg} cells also promote Th17, Tfh

and memory CD8+ differentiation, as IL-2 negatively regulates the differentiation of these cellular subtypes [127–130].

To conclude, contrary to what was initially proposed, IL-2 is now viewed as a gatekeeper of immune tolerance. Thus, the aforementioned studies led to the emergence of the concept that IL-2 at low doses could represent a novel class of immunosuppressive drug, acting by specific T_{reg} expansion/activation.

1.4 IL-2 as Inducer of Immune Tolerance: Lessons Learned from Mice and Humans

Animal studies have demonstrated the potential of T_{reg} cell based cellular therapies for the treatment of autoimmune diseases [131, 132], hematopoietic stem cell transplantation [133, 134] and solid organ transplantation [135]. However, although probably feasible [136–138], translating this strategy to humans is technically challenging and not applicable to large numbers of patients. Alternatively, IL-2 administration could represent an easier and more affordable strategy to boost the patient's own Tregs compartment.

1.4.1 The Specific Case of Type 1 Diabetes

T1D is a prototypic organ-specific autoimmune disease in which the immune system destroys the insulin producing β-cells of the pancreas. At disease onset, there are still residual β-cells, offering a window for therapeutic intervention to stop the autoimmune destruction and rescue insulin production. Major knowledge on the physiopathology of T1D has been obtained from studies in the nonobese diabetic (NOD) mice [139], which shares many similarities with human disease. In these mice, T_{reg} cells control the autoimmune reaction [140–142], and adoptively transferred Tregs recognizing a pancreatic antigen can reverse T1D [131]. In this specific pathological setting, low doses IL-2 treatment could be particularly adapted. Interestingly, genome-wide association studies have shown that multiple T1D susceptibility genes are related to the IL-2 pathway: *Il2*, *Cd25*, *Cd122*, and *PTPN2*, potentially affecting T_{reg} cell homeostasis [104, 143]. Furthermore, in NOD mice, insufficient IL-2 amounts in the pancreas seem to be responsible for poor Treg survival in the islets, and the loss of the T_{reg}:T_{eff} balance, which could lead to progressive breakdown of self-tolerance [108]. Indeed, administration of low doses of IL-2 to young pre-diabetic NOD mice prevents diabetes development [108, 144] and more impressively, only 5 days of low-dose IL-2 administration to new onset diabetic NOD mice induces long-lasting disease remission [145]. These results are impressive because very few drugs are able to revert new-onset clinical diabetes [146]. The most striking feature of low-dose IL-2 therapy in NOD mice is that even though different cell types can potentially respond to IL-2, low dose IL-2 acts specifically on Tregs in the pancreas, inducing an increase of their frequency and reinforcing their function as suggested by the decrease in IFNγ production by pancreas infiltrating Teffs and CD8+ T cells. A recent randomized double blind, placebo-controlled phase I/II dose-finding clinical

trial demonstrated that IL-2 at low-doses was well tolerated in T1D patients [147]. In addition, low-doses IL-2 induced a dose-dependent increase in the frequency of T_{reg} cells, without expansion of potentially pathogenic T_{eff} cells. A precise analysis of the effect of low-doses IL-2 on glucose metabolism and on residual insulin secretion in new-onset T1D patients awaits the results of the phase II clinical trials that are currently launched (NCT01862120).

1.4.2 Low-Dose IL-2 Therapeutic Potential in Other Autoimmune/Inflammatory Situations

Besides the specific case of T1D, different studies have demonstrated that administration of low doses of IL-2 can have an important therapeutic potential in various autoimmune/inflammatory pathologies. In mice, low doses of IL-2 (alone or complexed with an anti-IL-2 monoclonal antibody that increases its half-life and redirects its action towards CD25-expressing cells (i.e., T_{reg} cells)) can reduce inflammation and improve the clinical outcome in various pathologies such as systemic lupus erythematosus [148], atherosclerosis [149], renal proteinuria [150], or solid organ graft [151]. In addition, when combined to the immunosuppressive drug rapamycin, low doses of IL-2 can strikingly reduce the gravity of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis [151], acute graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) [152], and allogeneic solid graft rejection [153].

Interestingly, in humans, low-dose IL-2 therapy induces a dose-dependent increase in the numbers of T_{reg} cells in the peripheral blood of patients suffering from autoimmune vasculitis secondary to infection with hepatitis C virus [154], or from active chronic GVHD refractory to glucocorticoids [155]. In the latter situation, low-dose IL-2 administration selectively acts on T_{reg} cells, increasing their survival, proliferation and thymic export, while maintaining their suppressive function [156].

1.4.3 Limitations of Low-Dose IL-2 Therapy

We have shown that in the NOD mice, therapy based in the administration of low doses of IL-2 has a long-term curative effect in only 30 % of the treated animals [145]. Improving the capacity of low-doses to revert T1D in new-onset diabetic NOD mice represents an important step before the clinical application of this therapy in patients.

Administration of higher IL-2 doses in pre-diabetic NOD mice induces a higher expansion of T_{reg} cells in the pancreas [41]. Despite this dramatic T_{reg} cell expansion, high doses of IL-2 were highly toxic and rapidly precipitated diabetes onset. Disease occurrence could be explained by the concurrent activation of pathogenic T_{eff}, $CD8^+$ and NK cells in the pancreas, which actively divided and produced IFN-γ. In the context of human therapy, these results indicated that IL-2 therapeutic window is narrow, highlighting the need to perform thorough immunomonitoring of the broad effects of IL-2 so as to determine the dose that would uniquely act on Treg and other regulatory populations.

Another strategy would be to combine low doses of IL-2 with other therapies that have shown therapeutic potential in the NOD model [157]. In the specific case of rapamycin, although the combination IL-2/rapamycin can prevent T1D onset in NOD mice [158], we showed that rapamycin abolished IL-2 curative effect [41]. Indeed, rapamycin partially counteracts the IL-2 induced T_{reg} cell expansion/activation and induces rapid glucose intolerance. Interestingly, these results may explain the recent failure of a clinical trial aiming at administrating low-dose IL-2 combined to rapamycin in patients suffering from T1D [159].

Finally, low-dose IL-2 therapeutic potential may critically depend on the underlying immunopathology. Indeed, during solid organ transplantation, complexed IL-2 can delay graft rejection only in minor-HLA mismatched [160]. On the contrary, in the very aggressive clinical scenario of HLA-mismatched transplant, IL-2 complexes slightly boost T_{reg} cells, without any clinical benefit. Similar observations have been made in the case of acute GVHD. Indeed, while old studies suggested that low-dose IL-2 alone could prevent acute GVHD [161–163], we recently reevaluated the potential of this therapy. Using different models of allogeneic or xenogeneic GVHD, we demonstrated that low doses of IL-2 do not have a specific effect on donor T_{reg} cells. Indeed, in the inflammatory context of GVHD, allogeneic T_{eff} cells and $CD8^+$ T cells upregulate CD25, endowing them with the capacity to respond to low doses of IL-2 and explaining the observed loss of T_{reg} cell specificity [164]. Interestingly, in the case of acute GVHD, combination of IL-2 with rapamycin may represent a valid approach [152].

1.4.4 Future Directions for Low-Doses IL-2 Based Immunotherapy

The results previously discussed indicate that IL-2 has a promising future as a tolerance-inducing therapy. However, its application in patients may require previous optimization to define new strategies to selectively enhance the regulatory compartment versus the effector compartment. One strategy could be to prolong low-doses IL-2 administration in order to maintain the T_{reg} cell boost in time. This could be achieved through repeated administration schemes or through the use of lentiviral vectors coding for IL-2, allowing constant release of IL-2. In this line, two groups demonstrated that the injection of an adenovirus coding for IL-2 in pre-diabetic NOD mice could prevent autoimmune diabetes, through a specific boost of endogenous T_{reg} cells [165, 166]. Another strategy could be to increase IL-2 half-life in vivo, for instance via the use of IL-2-albumin or IL-2-Fc fusion proteins, or through the administration of complexed IL-2. Indeed, when IL-2 is complexed with an anti-IL-2 antibody, depending on the antibody, this complex can redirect IL-2 action to T_{reg} cells or to cells expressing the intermediate affinity IL-2R [167]. Finally, future preclinical studies will require precise evaluation of low-dose IL-2 therapeutic potential using appropriate preclinical models, as the effect of low doses of IL-2 cannot be extrapolated from one pathology to another.

References

1. Morgan DA, Ruscetti FW, Gallo R (1976) Selective in vitro growth of T lymphocytes from normal human bone marrows. Science 193:1007–1008
2. Gillis S, Smith KA (1977) Long term culture of tumour-specific cytotoxic T cells. Nature 268:154–156
3. Smith KA, Gilbride KJ, Favata MF (1980) Lymphocyte activating factor promotes T-cell growth factor production by cloned murine lymphoma cells. Nature 287:853–855
4. Taniguchi T, Matsui H, Fujita T, Takaoka C, Kashima N, Yoshimoto R, Hamuro J (1983) Structure and expression of a cloned cDNA for human interleukin-2. Nature 302:305–310
5. Bazan JF (1992) Unraveling the structure of IL-2. Science 257:410–413
6. Metelitsa LS, Naidenko OV, Kant A, Wu HW, Loza MJ, Perussia B, Kronenberg M, Seeger RC (2001) Human NKT cells mediate antitumor cytotoxicity directly by recognizing target cell CD1d with bound ligand or indirectly by producing IL-2 to activate NK cells. J Immunol 167:3114–3122
7. Yui MA, Sharp LL, Havran WL, Rothenberg EV (2004) Preferential activation of an IL-2 regulatory sequence transgene in TCR gamma delta and NKT cells: subset-specific differences in IL-2 regulation. J Immunol 172:4691–4699
8. Granucci F, Vizzardelli C, Pavelka N, Feau S, Persico M, Virzi E, Rescigno M, Moro G, Ricciardi-Castagnoli P (2001) Inducible IL-2 production by dendritic cells revealed by global gene expression analysis. Nat Immunol 2:882–888
9. Hershko AY, Suzuki R, Charles N, Alvarez-Errico D, Sargent JL, Laurence A, Rivera J (2011) Mast cell interleukin-2 production contributes to suppression of chronic allergic dermatitis. Immunity 35:562–571
10. Jain J, Loh C, Rao A (1995) Transcriptional regulation of the IL-2 gene. Curr Opin Immunol 7:333–342
11. Lindstein T, June CH, Ledbetter JA, Stella G, Thompson CB (1989) Regulation of lymphokine messenger RNA stability by a surface-mediated T cell activation pathway. Science 244:339–343
12. Gong D, Malek TR (2007) Cytokine-dependent Blimp-1 expression in activated T cells inhibits IL-2 production. J Immunol 178:242–252
13. Villarino AV, Tato CM, Stumhofer JS, Yao Z, Cui YK, Hennighausen L, O'Shea JJ, Hunter CA (2007) Helper T cell IL-2 production is limited by negative feedback and STAT-dependent cytokine signals. J Exp Med 204:65–71
14. Kallies A, Hawkins ED, Belz GT, Metcalf D, Hommel M, Corcoran LM, Hodgkin PD, Nutt SL (2006) Transcriptional repressor Blimp-1 is essential for T cell homeostasis and self-tolerance. Nat Immunol 7:466–474
15. Martins GA, Cimmino L, Shapiro-Shelef M, Szabolcs M, Herron A, Magnusdottir E, Calame K (2006) Transcriptional repressor Blimp-1 regulates T cell homeostasis and function. Nat Immunol 7:457–465
16. Donohue JH, Rosenberg SA (1983) The fate of interleukin-2 after in vivo administration. J Immunol 130:2203–2208
17. Miller JD, Clabaugh SE, Smith DR, Stevens RB, Wrenshall LE (2012) Interleukin-2 is present in human blood vessels and released in biologically active form by heparanase. Immunol Cell Biol 90:159–167
18. Miller JD, Stevens ET, Smith DR, Wight TN, Wrenshall LE (2008) Perlecan: a major IL-2-binding proteoglycan in murine spleen. Immunol Cell Biol 86:192–199
19. Wrenshall LE, Platt JL (1999) Regulation of T cell homeostasis by heparan sulfate-bound IL-2. J Immunol 163:3793–3800
20. Kondo S, Kinoshita M, Shimizu A, Saito Y, Konishi M, Sabe H, Honjo T (1987) Expression and functional characterization of artificial mutants of interleukin-2 receptor. Nature 327:64–67
21. Rickert M, Wang X, Boulanger MJ, Goriatcheva N, Garcia KC (2005) The structure of interleukin-2 complexed with its alpha receptor. Science 308:1477–1480
22. Wang X, Rickert M, Garcia KC (2005) Structure of the quaternary complex of interleukin-2 with its alpha, beta, and gammac receptors. Science 310:1159–1163
23. Wuest SC, Edwan JH, Martin JF, Han S, Perry JS, Cartagena CM, Matsuura E, Maric D, Waldmann TA, Bielekova B (2011) A role for interleukin-2 trans-presentation in dendritic cell-mediated T cell activation in humans, as revealed by daclizumab therapy. Nat Med 17:604–609
24. Malek TR (2008) The biology of interleukin-2. Annu Rev Immunol 26:453–479
25. Kalia V, Sarkar S, Subramaniam S, Haining WN, Smith KA, Ahmed R (2010) Prolonged interleukin-2Ralpha expression on virus-specific CD8+ T cells favors terminal-effector differentiation in vivo. Immunity 32:91–103

26. Bachmann MF, Wolint P, Walton S, Schwarz K, Oxenius A (2007) Differential role of IL-2R signaling for CD8+ T cell responses in acute and chronic viral infections. Eur J Immunol 37:1502–1512
27. Williams MA, Tyznik AJ, Bevan MJ (2006) Interleukin-2 signals during priming are required for secondary expansion of CD8+ memory T cells. Nature 441:890–893
28. Pipkin ME, Sacks JA, Cruz-Guilloty F, Lichtenheld MG, Bevan MJ, Rao A (2010) Interleukin-2 and inflammation induce distinct transcriptional programs that promote the differentiation of effector cytolytic T cells. Immunity 32:79–90
29. Yu A, Zhou J, Marten N, Bergmann CC, Mammolenti M, Levy RB, Malek TR (2003) Efficient induction of primary and secondary T cell-dependent immune responses in vivo in the absence of functional IL-2 and IL-15 receptors. J Immunol 170:236–242
30. Mitchell DM, Williams MA (2013) Disparate roles for STAT5 in primary and secondary CTL responses. J Immunol 190:3390–3398
31. Becker TC, Wherry EJ, Boone D, Murali-Krishna K, Antia R, Ma A, Ahmed R (2002) Interleukin 15 is required for proliferative renewal of virus-specific memory CD8 T cells. J Exp Med 195:1541–1548
32. Zhang X, Sun S, Hwang I, Tough DF, Sprent J (1998) Potent and selective stimulation of memory-phenotype CD8+ T cells in vivo by IL-15. Immunity 8:591–599
33. Lodolce JP, Boone DL, Chai S, Swain RE, Dassopoulos T, Trettin S, Ma A (1998) IL-15 receptor maintains lymphoid homeostasis by supporting lymphocyte homing and proliferation. Immunity 9:669–676
34. Kennedy MK, Glaccum M, Brown SN, Butz EA, Viney JL, Embers M, Matsuki N, Charrier K, Sedger L, Willis CR et al (2000) Reversible defects in natural killer and memory CD8 T cell lineages in interleukin 15-deficient mice. J Exp Med 191:771–780
35. Kundig TM, Schorle H, Bachmann MF, Hengartner H, Zinkernagel RM, Horak I (1993) Immune responses in interleukin-2-deficient mice. Science 262:1059–1061
36. Gasteiger G, Hemmers S, Bos PD, Sun JC, Rudensky AY (2013) IL-2-dependent adaptive control of NK cell homeostasis. J Exp Med 210:1179–1187
37. Caligiuri MA, Murray C, Robertson MJ, Wang E, Cochran K, Cameron C, Schow P, Ross ME, Klumpp TR, Soiffer RJ et al (1993) Selective modulation of human natural killer cells in vivo after prolonged infusion of low dose recombinant interleukin 2. J Clin Invest 91:123–132
38. Bielekova B, Catalfamo M, Reichert-Scrivner S, Packer A, Cerna M, Waldmann TA, McFarland H, Henkart PA, Martin R (2006) Regulatory CD56(bright) natural killer cells mediate immunomodulatory effects of IL-2Ralpha-targeted therapy (daclizumab) in multiple sclerosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:5941–5946
39. Lantz O, Grillot-Courvalin C, Schmitt C, Fermand JP, Brouet JC (1985) Interleukin 2-induced proliferation of leukemic human B cells. J Exp Med 161:1225–1230
40. Mingari MC, Gerosa F, Carra G, Accolla RS, Moretta A, Zubler RH, Waldmann TA, Moretta L (1984) Human interleukin-2 promotes proliferation of activated B cells via surface receptors similar to those of activated T cells. Nature 312:641–643
41. Baeyens A, Perol L, Fourcade G, Cagnard N, Carpentier W, Woytschak J, Boyman O, Hartemann A, Piaggio E (2013) Limitations of IL-2 and rapamycin in immunotherapy of type 1 diabetes. Diabetes 62:3120–3131
42. Contractor NV, Bassiri H, Reya T, Park AY, Baumgart DC, Wasik MA, Emerson SG, Carding SR (1998) Lymphoid hyperplasia, autoimmunity, and compromised intestinal intraepithelial lymphocyte development in colitis-free gnotobiotic IL-2-deficient mice. J Immunol 160:385–394
43. Kawai K, Suzuki H, Tomiyama K, Minagawa M, Mak TW, Ohashi PS (1998) Requirement of the IL-2 receptor beta chain for the development of Vgamma3 dendritic epidermal T cells. J Invest Dermatol 110:961–965
44. Porter BO, Malek TR (1999) IL-2Rbeta/IL-7Ralpha doubly deficient mice recapitulate the thymic and intraepithelial lymphocyte (IEL) developmental defects of gammac−/− mice: roles for both IL-2 and IL-15 in CD8alphaalpha IEL development. J Immunol 163:5906–5912
45. Ye SK, Maki K, Lee HC, Ito A, Kawai K, Suzuki H, Mak TW, Chien Y, Honjo T, Ikuta K (2001) Differential roles of cytokine receptors in the development of epidermal gamma delta T cells. J Immunol 167:1929–1934
46. Roediger B, Kyle R, Yip KH, Sumaria N, Guy TV, Kim BS, Mitchell AJ, Tay SS, Jain R, Forbes-Blom E et al (2013) Cutaneous immunosurveillance and regulation of inflammation by group 2 innate lymphoid cells. Nat Immunol 14:564–573
47. Spits H, Artis D, Colonna M, Diefenbach A, Di Santo JP, Eberl G, Koyasu S, Locksley

RM, McKenzie AN, Mebius RE et al (2013) Innate lymphoid cells—a proposal for uniform nomenclature. Nat Rev Immunol 13:145–149

48. Herr F, Lemoine R, Gouilleux F, Meley D, Kazma I, Heraud A, Velge-Roussel F, Baron C, Lebranchu Y (2014) IL-2 phosphorylates STAT5 to drive IFN-gamma production and activation of human dendritic cells. J Immunol 192:5660–5670
49. Plaisance S, Rubinstein E, Alileche A, Benoit P, Jasmin C, Azzarone B (1993) The IL-2 receptor present on human embryonic fibroblasts is functional in the absence of P64/IL-2R gamma chain. Int Immunol 5:843–848
50. Petitto JM, Meola D, Huang Z (2012) Interleukin-2 and the brain: dissecting central versus peripheral contributions using unique mouse models. Methods Mol Biol 934:301–311
51. Dirice E, Kahraman S, Jiang W, El Ouaamari A, De Jesus DF, Teo AK, Hu J, Kawamori D, Gaglia JL, Mathis D et al (2014) Soluble factors secreted by T cells promote beta-cell proliferation. Diabetes 63:188–202
52. Krieg C, Letourneau S, Pantaleo G, Boyman O (2010) Improved IL-2 immunotherapy by selective stimulation of IL-2 receptors on lymphocytes and endothelial cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107:11906–11911
53. Schorle H, Holtschke T, Hunig T, Schimpl A, Horak I (1991) Development and function of T cells in mice rendered interleukin-2 deficient by gene targeting. Nature 352:621–624
54. Knoechel B, Lohr J, Kahn E, Bluestone JA, Abbas AK (2005) Sequential development of interleukin 2-dependent effector and regulatory T cells in response to endogenous systemic antigen. J Exp Med 202:1375–1386
55. Shi M, Lin TH, Appell KC, Berg LJ (2008) Janus-kinase-3-dependent signals induce chromatin remodeling at the Ifng locus during T helper 1 cell differentiation. Immunity 28:763–773
56. Liao W, Lin JX, Wang L, Li P, Leonard WJ (2011) Modulation of cytokine receptors by IL-2 broadly regulates differentiation into helper T cell lineages. Nat Immunol 12:551–559
57. Cote-Sierra J, Foucras G, Guo L, Chiodetti L, Young HA, Hu-Li J, Zhu J, Paul WE (2004) Interleukin 2 plays a central role in Th2 differentiation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 101:3880–3885
58. Liao W, Schones DE, Oh J, Cui Y, Cui K, Roh TY, Zhao K, Leonard WJ (2008) Priming for T helper type 2 differentiation by interleukin 2-mediated induction of interleukin 4 receptor alpha-chain expression. Nat Immunol 9: 1288–1296
59. Laurence A, Tato CM, Davidson TS, Kanno Y, Chen Z, Yao Z, Blank RB, Meylan F, Siegel R, Hennighausen L et al (2007) Interleukin-2 signaling via STAT5 constrains T helper 17 cell generation. Immunity 26:371–381
60. Johnston RJ, Choi YS, Diamond JA, Yang JA, Crotty S (2012) STAT5 is a potent negative regulator of TFH cell differentiation. J Exp Med 209:243–250
61. Ballesteros-Tato A, Leon B, Graf BA, Moquin A, Adams PS, Lund FE, Randall TD (2012) Interleukin-2 inhibits germinal center formation by limiting T follicular helper cell differentiation. Immunity 36:847–856
62. Oestreich KJ, Mohn SE, Weinmann AS (2012) Molecular mechanisms that control the expression and activity of Bcl-6 in TH1 cells to regulate flexibility with a TFH-like gene profile. Nat Immunol 13:405–411
63. Schwartzentruber DJ, Lawson DH, Richards JM, Conry RM, Miller DM, Treisman J, Gailani F, Riley L, Conlon K, Pockaj B et al (2011) gp100 peptide vaccine and interleukin-2 in patients with advanced melanoma. N Engl J Med 364:2119–2127
64. Yu AL, Gilman AL, Ozkaynak MF, London WB, Kreissman SG, Chen HX, Smith M, Anderson B, Villablanca JG, Matthay KK et al (2010) Anti-GD2 antibody with GM-CSF, interleukin-2, and isotretinoin for neuroblastoma. N Engl J Med 363:1324–1334
65. Kovacs JA, Baseler M, Dewar RJ, Vogel S, Davey RT Jr, Falloon J, Polis MA, Walker RE, Stevens R, Salzman NP et al (1995) Increases in CD4 T lymphocytes with intermittent courses of interleukin-2 in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. A preliminary study. N Engl J Med 332: 567–575
66. Kovacs JA, Vogel S, Albert JM, Falloon J, Davey RT Jr, Walker RE, Polis MA, Spooner K, Metcalf JA, Baseler M et al (1996) Controlled trial of interleukin-2 infusions in patients infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. N Engl J Med 335:1350–1356
67. Atkins MB, Lotze MT, Dutcher JP, Fisher RI, Weiss G, Margolin K, Abrams J, Sznol M, Parkinson D, Hawkins M et al (1999) High-dose recombinant interleukin 2 therapy for patients with metastatic melanoma: analysis of 270 patients treated between 1985 and 1993. J Clin Oncol 17:2105–2116
68. Klapper JA, Downey SG, Smith FO, Yang JC, Hughes MS, Kammula US, Sherry RM, Royal

RE, Steinberg SM, Rosenberg S (2008) High-dose interleukin-2 for the treatment of metastatic renal cell carcinoma: a retrospective analysis of response and survival in patients treated in the surgery branch at the National Cancer Institute between 1986 and 2006. Cancer 113:293–301

69. INSIGHT-ESPRIT Study Group; SILCAAT Scientific Committee, Abrams D, Levy Y, Losso MH, Babiker A, Collins G, Cooper DA, Darbyshire J, Emery S et al (2009) Interleukin-2 therapy in patients with HIV infection. N Engl J Med 361:1548–1559
70. Rosenberg SA (2012) Raising the bar: the curative potential of human cancer immunotherapy. Sci Transl Med 4:127ps128
71. Weiss L, Letimier FA, Carriere M, Maiella S, Donkova-Petrini V, Targat B, Benecke A, Rogge L, Levy Y (2010) In vivo expansion of naive and activated CD4+CD25+FOXP3+ regulatory T cell populations in interleukin-2-treated HIV patients. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107:10632–10637
72. Ahmadzadeh M, Rosenberg SA (2006) IL-2 administration increases CD4+ CD25(hi) Foxp3+ regulatory T cells in cancer patients. Blood 107:2409–2414
73. Lemoine FM, Cherai M, Giverne C, Dimitri D, Rosenzwajg M, Trebeden-Negre H, Chaput N, Barrou B, Thioun N, Gattegnio B et al (2009) Massive expansion of regulatory T-cells following interleukin 2 treatment during a phase I-II dendritic cell-based immunotherapy of metastatic renal cancer. Int J Oncol 35:569–581
74. Sim GC, Martin-Orozco N, Jin L, Yang Y, Wu S, Washington E, Sanders D, Lacey C, Wang Y, Vence L et al (2014) IL-2 therapy promotes suppressive ICOS+ Treg expansion in melanoma patients. J Clin Invest 124(1): 99–110
75. Sadlack B, Merz H, Schorle H, Schimpl A, Feller AC, Horak I (1993) Ulcerative colitis-like disease in mice with a disrupted interleukin-2 gene. Cell 75:253–261
76. Suzuki H, Kundig TM, Furlonger C, Wakeham A, Timms E, Matsuyama T, Schmits R, Simard JJ, Ohashi PS, Griesser H et al (1995) Deregulated T cell activation and autoimmunity in mice lacking interleukin-2 receptor beta. Science 268:1472–1476
77. Willerford DM, Chen J, Ferry JA, Davidson L, Ma A, Alt FW (1995) Interleukin-2 receptor alpha chain regulates the size and content of the peripheral lymphoid compartment. Immunity 3:521–530
78. Kramer S, Schimpl A, Hunig T (1995) Immunopathology of interleukin (IL) 2-deficient mice: thymus dependence and suppression by thymus-dependent cells with an intact IL-2 gene. J Exp Med 182: 1769–1776
79. Suzuki H, Zhou YW, Kato M, Mak TW, Nakashima I (1999) Normal regulatory alpha/beta T cells effectively eliminate abnormally activated T cells lacking the interleukin 2 receptor beta in vivo. J Exp Med 190:1561–1572
80. Wolf M, Schimpl A, Hunig T (2001) Control of T cell hyperactivation in IL-2-deficient mice by CD4(+)CD25(−) and CD4(+) CD25(+) T cells: evidence for two distinct regulatory mechanisms. Eur J Immunol 31:1637–1645
81. Malek TR, Yu A, Vincek V, Scibelli P, Kong L (2002) CD4 regulatory T cells prevent lethal autoimmunity in IL-2Rbeta-deficient mice. Implications for the nonredundant function of IL-2. Immunity 17:167–178
82. Almeida AR, Legrand N, Papiernik M, Freitas AA (2002) Homeostasis of peripheral CD4+ T cells: IL-2R alpha and IL-2 shape a population of regulatory cells that controls CD4+ T cell numbers. J Immunol 169:4850–4860
83. D'Cruz LM, Klein L (2005) Development and function of agonist-induced CD25+Foxp3+ regulatory T cells in the absence of interleukin 2 signaling. Nat Immunol 6:1152–1159
84. Fontenot JD, Rasmussen JP, Gavin MA, Rudensky AY (2005) A function for interleukin 2 in Foxp3-expressing regulatory T cells. Nat Immunol 6:1142–1151
85. Burchill MA, Yang J, Vogtenhuber C, Blazar BR, Farrar MA (2007) IL-2 receptor beta-dependent STAT5 activation is required for the development of Foxp3+ regulatory T cells. J Immunol 178:280–290
86. Soper DM, Kasprowicz DJ, Ziegler SF (2007) IL-2Rbeta links IL-2R signaling with Foxp3 expression. Eur J Immunol 37:1817–1826
87. Bayer AL, Yu A, Malek TR (2007) Function of the IL-2R for thymic and peripheral CD4+CD25+ Foxp3+ T regulatory cells. J Immunol 178:4062–4071
88. Malek TR, Porter BO, Codias EK, Scibelli P, Yu A (2000) Normal lymphoid homeostasis and lack of lethal autoimmunity in mice containing mature T cells with severely impaired IL-2 receptors. J Immunol 164:2905–2914
89. Yao Z, Kanno Y, Kerenyi M, Stephens G, Durant L, Watford WT, Laurence A, Robinson GW, Shevach EM, Moriggl R et al (2007) Nonredundant roles for Stat5a/b in directly regulating Foxp3. Blood 109: 4368–4375

90. Zorn E, Nelson EA, Mohseni M, Porcheray F, Kim H, Litsa D, Bellucci R, Raderschall E, Canning C, Soiffer RJ et al (2006) IL-2 regulates FOXP3 expression in human CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells through a STAT-dependent mechanism and induces the expansion of these cells in vivo. Blood 108:1571–1579
91. Lio CW, Hsieh CS (2008) A two-step process for thymic regulatory T cell development. Immunity 28:100–111
92. Toker A, Engelbert D, Garg G, Polansky JK, Floess S, Miyao T, Baron U, Duber S, Geffers R, Giehr P et al (2013) Active demethylation of the Foxp3 locus leads to the generation of stable regulatory T cells within the thymus. J Immunol 190:3180–3188
93. Burchill MA, Yang J, Vang KB, Moon JJ, Chu HH, Lio CW, Vegoe AL, Hsieh CS, Jenkins MK, Farrar MA (2008) Linked T cell receptor and cytokine signaling govern the development of the regulatory T cell repertoire. Immunity 28:112–121
94. Vang KB, Yang J, Mahmud SA, Burchill MA, Vegoe AL, Farrar MA (2008) IL-2, -7, and -15, but not thymic stromal lymphopoeitin, redundantly govern CD4+Foxp3+ regulatory T cell development. J Immunol 181: 3285–3290
95. Setoguchi R, Hori S, Takahashi T, Sakaguchi S (2005) Homeostatic maintenance of natural Foxp3(+) CD25(+) CD4(+) regulatory T cells by interleukin (IL)-2 and induction of autoimmune disease by IL-2 neutralization. J Exp Med 201:723–735
96. Bayer AL, Yu A, Adeegbe D, Malek TR (2005) Essential role for interleukin-2 for CD4(+)CD25(+) T regulatory cell development during the neonatal period. J Exp Med 201:769–777
97. Murawski MR, Litherland SA, Clare-Salzler MJ, Davoodi-Semiromi A (2006) Upregulation of Foxp3 expression in mouse and human Treg is IL-2/STAT5 dependent: implications for the NOD STAT5B mutation in diabetes pathogenesis. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1079:198–204
98. Passerini L, Allan SE, Battaglia M, Di Nunzio S, Alstad AN, Levings MK, Roncarolo MG, Bacchetta R (2008) STAT5-signaling cytokines regulate the expression of FOXP3 in CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells and CD4+CD25– effector T cells. Int Immunol 20:421–431
99. Rubtsov YP, Niec RE, Josefowicz S, Li L, Darce J, Mathis D, Benoist C, Rudensky AY (2010) Stability of the regulatory T cell lineage in vivo. Science 329:1667–1671
100. Wu Y, Borde M, Heissmeyer V, Feuerer M, Lapan AD, Stroud JC, Bates DL, Guo L, Han A, Ziegler SF et al (2006) FOXP3 controls regulatory T cell function through cooperation with NFAT. Cell 126:375–387
101. Almeida AR, Zaragoza B, Freitas AA (2006) Indexation as a novel mechanism of lymphocyte homeostasis: the number of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells is indexed to the number of IL-2-producing cells. J Immunol 177: 192–200
102. Amado IF, Berges J, Luther RJ, Mailhe MP, Garcia S, Bandeira A, Weaver C, Liston A, Freitas AA (2013) IL-2 coordinates IL-2-producing and regulatory T cell interplay. J Exp Med 210:2707–2720
103. Vella A, Cooper JD, Lowe CE, Walker N, Nutland S, Widmer B, Jones R, Ring SM, McArdle W, Pembrey ME et al (2005) Localization of a type 1 diabetes locus in the IL2RA/CD25 region by use of tag single-nucleotide polymorphisms. Am J Hum Genet 76:773–779
104. Todd JA, Walker NM, Cooper JD, Smyth DJ, Downes K, Plagnol V, Bailey R, Nejentsev S, Field SF, Payne F et al (2007) Robust associations of four new chromosome regions from genome-wide analyses of type 1 diabetes. Nat Genet 39:857–864
105. Yamanouchi J, Rainbow D, Serra P, Howlett S, Hunter K, Garner VE, Gonzalez-Munoz A, Clark J, Veijola R, Cubbon R et al (2007) Interleukin-2 gene variation impairs regulatory T cell function and causes autoimmunity. Nat Genet 39:329–337
106. Concannon P, Chen WM, Julier C, Morahan G, Akolkar B, Erlich HA, Hilner JE, Nerup J, Nierras C, Pociot F et al (2009) Genome-wide scan for linkage to type 1 diabetes in 2,496 multiplex families from the Type 1 Diabetes Genetics Consortium. Diabetes 58:1018–1022
107. Wellcome Trust Case Control Consortium (2007) Genome-wide association study of 14,000 cases of seven common diseases and 3,000 shared controls. Nature 447: 661–678
108. Tang Q, Adams JY, Penaranda C, Melli K, Piaggio E, Sgouroudis E, Piccirillo CA, Salomon BL, Bluestone JA (2008) Central role of defective interleukin-2 production in the triggering of islet autoimmune destruction. Immunity 28:687–697
109. Pierson W, Cauwe B, Policheni A, Schlenner SM, Franckaert D, Berges J, Humblet-Baron S, Schonefeldt S, Herold MJ, Hildeman D et al (2013) Antiapoptotic Mcl-1 is critical for the survival and niche-filling capacity of

Foxp3(+) regulatory T cells. Nat Immunol 14:959–965

110. Josefowicz SZ, Rudensky A (2009) Control of regulatory T cell lineage commitment and maintenance. Immunity 30:616–625
111. Smigiel KS, Richards E, Srivastava S, Thomas KR, Dudda JC, Klonowski KD, Campbell DJ (2014) CCR7 provides localized access to IL-2 and defines homeostatically distinct regulatory T cell subsets. J Exp Med 211: 121–136
112. Josefowicz SZ, Lu LF, Rudensky AY (2012) Regulatory T cells: mechanisms of differentiation and function. Annu Rev Immunol 30: 531–564
113. Goldstein JD, Perol L, Zaragoza B, Baeyens A, Marodon G, Piaggio E (2013) Role of cytokines in thymus- versus peripherally derived-regulatory T cell differentiation and function. Front Immunol 4:155
114. Chen W, Jin W, Hardegen N, Lei KJ, Li L, Marinos N, McGrady G, Wahl SM (2003) Conversion of peripheral CD4+CD25– naive T cells to CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells by TGF-beta induction of transcription factor Foxp3. J Exp Med 198:1875–1886
115. Davidson TS, DiPaolo RJ, Andersson J, Shevach EM (2007) Cutting Edge: IL-2 is essential for TGF-beta-mediated induction of Foxp3+ T regulatory cells. J Immunol 178: 4022–4026
116. Zheng SG, Wang J, Wang P, Gray JD, Horwitz DA (2007) IL-2 is essential for TGF-beta to convert naive CD4+CD25– cells to CD25+Foxp3+ regulatory T cells and for expansion of these cells. J Immunol 178: 2018–2027
117. Duarte JH, Zelenay S, Bergman ML, Martins AC, Demengeot J (2009) Natural Treg cells spontaneously differentiate into pathogenic helper cells in lymphopenic conditions. Eur J Immunol 39:948–955
118. Oldenhove G, Bouladoux N, Wohlfert EA, Hall JA, Chou D, Dos Santos L, O'Brien S, Blank R, Lamb E, Natarajan S et al (2009) Decrease of Foxp3+ Treg cell number and acquisition of effector cell phenotype during lethal infection. Immunity 31:772–786
119. Bailey-Bucktrout SL, Martinez-Llordella M, Zhou X, Anthony B, Rosenthal W, Luche H, Fehling HJ, Bluestone JA (2013) Self-antigen-driven activation induces instability of regulatory T cells during an inflammatory autoimmune response. Immunity 39: 949–962
120. Zhou X, Bailey-Bucktrout SL, Jeker LT, Penaranda C, Martinez-Llordella M, Ashby M, Nakayama M, Rosenthal W, Bluestone JA (2009) Instability of the transcription factor Foxp3 leads to the generation of pathogenic memory T cells in vivo. Nat Immunol 10:1000–1007
121. Vignali DA, Collison LW, Workman CJ (2008) How regulatory T cells work. Nat Rev Immunol 8:523–532
122. Pandiyan P, Zheng L, Ishihara S, Reed J, Lenardo MJ (2007) CD4+CD25+Foxp3+ regulatory T cells induce cytokine deprivation-mediated apoptosis of effector CD4+ T cells. Nat Immunol 8:1353–1362
123. Gasteiger G, Hemmers S, Firth MA, Le Floc'h A, Huse M, Sun JC, Rudensky AY (2013) IL-2-dependent tuning of NK cell sensitivity for target cells is controlled by regulatory T cells. J Exp Med 210:1167–1178
124. Sitrin J, Ring A, Garcia KC, Benoist C, Mathis D (2013) Regulatory T cells control NK cells in an insulitic lesion by depriving them of IL-2. J Exp Med 210:1153–1165
125. McNally A, Hill GR, Sparwasser T, Thomas R, Steptoe RJ (2011) CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells control CD8+ T-cell effector differentiation by modulating IL-2 homeostasis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:7529–7534
126. McNally A, McNally M, Galea R, Thomas R, Steptoe RJ (2014) Immunogenic, but not steady-state, antigen presentation permits regulatory T-cells to control CD8+ T-cell effector differentiation by IL-2 modulation. PLoS One 9:e85455
127. de Goer de Herve MG, Jaafoura S, Vallee M, Taoufik Y (2012) FoxP3(+) regulatory CD4 T cells control the generation of functional CD8 memory. Nat Commun 3:986
128. Kastenmuller W, Gasteiger G, Subramanian N, Sparwasser T, Busch DH, Belkaid Y, Drexler I, Germain RN (2011) Regulatory T cells selectively control CD8+ T cell effector pool size via IL-2 restriction. J Immunol 187:3186–3197
129. Leon B, Bradley JE, Lund FE, Randall TD, Ballesteros-Tato A (2014) FoxP3+ regulatory T cells promote influenza-specific Tfh responses by controlling IL-2 availability. Nat Commun 5:3495
130. Pandiyan P, Conti HR, Zheng L, Peterson AC, Mathern DR, Hernandez-Santos N, Edgerton M, Gaffen SL, Lenardo MJ (2011) CD4(+)CD25(+)Foxp3(+) regulatory T cells promote Th17 cells in vitro and enhance host resistance in mouse Candida albicans Th17 cell infection model. Immunity 34:422–434
131. Tang Q, Henriksen KJ, Bi M, Finger EB, Szot G, Ye J, Masteller EL, McDevitt H, Bonyhadi

M, Bluestone JA (2004) In vitro-expanded antigen-specific regulatory T cells suppress autoimmune diabetes. J Exp Med 199: 1455–1465

132. Furtado GC, Curotto de Lafaille MA, Kutchukhidze N, Lafaille JJ (2002) Interleukin 2 signaling is required for CD4(+) regulatory T cell function. J Exp Med 196:851–857
133. Hoffmann P, Ermann J, Edinger M, Fathman CG, Strober S (2002) Donor-type CD4(+) CD25(+) regulatory T cells suppress lethal acute graft-versus-host disease after allogeneic bone marrow transplantation. J Exp Med 196:389–399
134. Cohen JL, Trenado A, Vasey D, Klatzmann D, Salomon BL (2002) CD4(+)CD25(+) immunoregulatory T Cells: new therapeutics for graft-versus-host disease. J Exp Med 196: 401–406
135. Graca L, Thompson S, Lin CY, Adams E, Cobbold SP, Waldmann H (2002) Both CD4(+)CD25(+) and CD4(+)CD25(−) regulatory cells mediate dominant transplantation tolerance. J Immunol 168:5558–5565
136. Brunstein CG, Miller JS, Cao Q, McKenna DH, Hippen KL, Curtsinger J, Defor T, Levine BL, June CH, Rubinstein P et al (2011) Infusion of ex vivo expanded T regulatory cells in adults transplanted with umbilical cord blood: safety profile and detection kinetics. Blood 117:1061–1070
137. Di Ianni M, Falzetti F, Carotti A, Terenzi A, Castellino F, Bonifacio E, Del Papa B, Zei T, Ostini RI, Cecchini D et al (2011) Tregs prevent GVHD and promote immune reconstitution in HLA-haploidentical transplantation. Blood 117:3921–3928
138. Trzonkowski P, Bieniaszewska M, Juscinska J, Dobyszuk A, Krzystyniak A, Marek N, Mysliwska J, Hellmann A (2009) First-in-man clinical results of the treatment of patients with graft versus host disease with human ex vivo expanded CD4+CD25+ CD127− T regulatory cells. Clin Immunol 133:22–26
139. von Herrath M, Nepom GT (2009) Animal models of human type 1 diabetes. Nat Immunol 10:129–132
140. Salomon B, Lenschow DJ, Rhee L, Ashourian N, Singh B, Sharpe A, Bluestone JA (2000) B7/CD28 costimulation is essential for the homeostasis of the CD4+CD25+ immunoregulatory T cells that control autoimmune diabetes. Immunity 12:431–440
141. Billiard F, Litvinova E, Saadoun D, Djelti F, Klatzmann D, Cohen JL, Marodon G, Salomon BL (2006) Regulatory and effector T cell activation levels are prime determinants of in vivo immune regulation. J Immunol 177:2167–2174
142. Feuerer M, Shen Y, Littman DR, Benoist C, Mathis D (2009) How punctual ablation of regulatory T cells unleashes an autoimmune lesion within the pancreatic islets. Immunity 31:654–664
143. Garg G, Tyler JR, Yang JH, Cutler AJ, Downes K, Pekalski M, Bell GL, Nutland S, Peakman M, Todd JA et al (2012) Type 1 diabetes-associated IL2RA variation lowers IL-2 signaling and contributes to diminished CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cell function. J Immunol 188:4644–4653
144. Serreze DV, Hamaguchi K, Leiter EH (1989) Immunostimulation circumvents diabetes in NOD/Lt mice. J Autoimmun 2:759–776
145. Grinberg-Bleyer Y, Baeyens A, You S, Elhage R, Fourcade G, Gregoire S, Cagnard N, Carpentier W, Tang Q, Bluestone J et al (2010) IL-2 reverses established type 1 diabetes in NOD mice by a local effect on pancreatic regulatory T cells. J Exp Med 207: 1871–1878
146. Shoda LK, Young DL, Ramanujan S, Whiting CC, Atkinson MA, Bluestone JA, Eisenbarth GS, Mathis D, Rossini AA, Campbell SE et al (2005) A comprehensive review of interventions in the NOD mouse and implications for translation. Immunity 23:115–126
147. Hartemann A, Bensimon G, Payan CA, Jacqueminet S, Bourron O, Nicolas N, Fonfrede M, Rosenzwajg M, Bernard C, Klatzmann D (2013) Low-dose interleukin 2 in patients with type 1 diabetes: a phase 1/2 randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 1:295–305
148. Mizui M, Koga T, Lieberman LA, Beltran J, Yoshida N, Johnson MC, Tisch R, Tsokos GC (2014) IL-2 protects lupus-prone mice from multiple end-organ damage by limiting CD4− CD8− IL-17-producing T cells. J Immunol 193:2168–2177
149. Dinh TN, Kyaw TS, Kanellakis P, To K, Tipping P, Toh BH, Bobik A, Agrotis A (2012) Cytokine therapy with interleukin-2/anti-interleukin-2 monoclonal antibody complexes expands CD4+CD25+Foxp3+ regulatory T cells and attenuates development and progression of atherosclerosis. Circulation 126:1256–1266
150. Polhill T, Zhang GY, Hu M, Sawyer A, Zhou JJ, Saito M, Webster KE, Wang Y, Wang Y, Grey ST et al (2012) IL-2/IL-2Ab complexes induce regulatory T cell expansion and protect

against proteinuric CKD. J Am Soc Nephrol 23:1303–1308

151. Webster KE, Walters S, Kohler RE, Mrkvan T, Boyman O, Surh CD, Grey ST, Sprent J (2009) In vivo expansion of T reg cells with IL-2-mAb complexes: induction of resistance to EAE and long-term acceptance of islet allografts without immunosuppression. J Exp Med 206:751–760
152. Shin HJ, Baker J, Leveson-Gower DB, Smith AT, Sega EI, Negrin RS (2011) Rapamycin and IL-2 reduce lethal acute graft-versus-host disease associated with increased expansion of donor type CD4+CD25+Foxp3+ regulatory T cells. Blood 118:2342–2350
153. Pilon CB, Petillon S, Naserian S, Martin GH, Badoual C, Lang P, Azoulay D, Piaggio E, Grimbert P, Cohen JL (2014) Administration of low doses of IL-2 combined to rapamycin promotes allogeneic skin graft survival in mice. Am J Transplant 14:2874–2882
154. Saadoun D, Rosenzwajg M, Joly F, Six A, Carrat F, Thibault V, Sene D, Cacoub P, Klatzmann D (2011) Regulatory T-cell responses to low-dose interleukin-2 in HCV-induced vasculitis. N Engl J Med 365: 2067–2077
155. Koreth J, Matsuoka K, Kim HT, McDonough SM, Bindra B, Alyea EP III, Armand P, Cutler C, Ho VT, Treister NS et al (2011) Interleukin-2 and regulatory T cells in graft-versus-host disease. N Engl J Med 365:2055–2066
156. Matsuoka K, Koreth J, Kim HT, Bascug G, McDonough S, Kawano Y, Murase K, Cutler C, Ho VT, Alyea EP et al (2013) Low-dose interleukin-2 therapy restores regulatory T cell homeostasis in patients with chronic graft-versus-host disease. Sci Transl Med 5: 179ra143
157. Bluestone JA, Herold K, Eisenbarth G (2010) Genetics, pathogenesis and clinical interventions in type 1 diabetes. Nature 464:1293–1300
158. Rabinovitch A, Suarez-Pinzon WL, Shapiro AM, Rajotte RV, Power R (2002) Combination therapy with sirolimus and interleukin-2 prevents spontaneous and recurrent autoimmune diabetes in NOD mice. Diabetes 51:638–645
159. Long SA, Rieck M, Sanda S, Bollyky JB, Samuels PL, Goland R, Ahmann A, Rabinovitch A, Aggarwal S, Phippard D et al (2012) Rapamycin/IL-2 combination therapy in patients with type 1 diabetes augments Tregs yet transiently impairs beta-cell function. Diabetes 61:2340–2348
160. Vokaer B, Charbonnier LM, Lemaitre PH, Le Moine A (2012) Impact of interleukin-2-expanded regulatory T cells in various allogeneic combinations on mouse skin graft survival. Transplant Proc 44:2840–2844
161. Sykes M, Abraham VS, Harty MW, Pearson DA (1993) IL-2 reduces graft-versus-host disease and preserves a graft-versus-leukemia effect by selectively inhibiting CD4+ T cell activity. J Immunol 150:197–205
162. Sykes M, Romick ML, Hoyles KA, Sachs DH (1990) In vivo administration of interleukin 2 plus T cell-depleted syngeneic marrow prevents graft-versus-host disease mortality and permits alloengraftment. J Exp Med 171:645–658
163. Sykes M, Romick ML, Sachs DH (1990) Interleukin 2 prevents graft-versus-host disease while preserving the graft-versus-leukemia effect of allogeneic T cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 87:5633–5637
164. Perol L, Martin GH, Maury S, Cohen JL, Piaggio E (2014) Potential limitations of IL-2 administration for the treatment of experimental acute graft-versus-host disease. Immunol Lett 162:173–184
165. Goudy KS, Johnson MC, Garland A, Li C, Samulski RJ, Wang B, Tisch R (2011) Inducible adeno-associated virus-mediated IL-2 gene therapy prevents autoimmune diabetes. J Immunol 186:3779–3786
166. Churlaud G, Jimenez V, Ruberte J, Amadoudji Zin M, Fourcade G, Gottrand G, Casana E, Lambrecht B, Bellier B, Piaggio E et al (2014) Sustained stimulation and expansion of Tregs by IL2 control autoimmunity without impairing immune responses to infection, vaccination and cancer. Clin Immunol 151:114–126
167. Boyman O, Kovar M, Rubinstein MP, Surh CD, Sprent J (2006) Selective stimulation of T cell subsets with antibody-cytokine immune complexes. Science 311:1924–1927

Chapter 3

Expansion of Regulatory T Cells In Vitro and In Vivo by IL-33

Benjamin M. Matta and Hēth R. Turnquist

Abstract

Thymic-derived, regulatory T cells (Treg) represent a subset of $CD4^+$ T cells that are required for normal immune homeostasis and suppression of unwanted responses against self-antigens (Ags) that prevent autoimmunity. Their role as immune regulators and potent ability to suppress T cell responses has been the focus of intense investigations aimed at utilizing these cells therapeutically, particularly in the settings of autoimmunity and transplantation. Many methods for expanding Treg have been described; however, efforts to generate large numbers of Treg for use in vivo often compromise their suppressor function or rely on the induction of Treg rather than their expansion. Our recent studies have focused on the barrier tissue-derived cytokine IL-33, a recently described IL-1 family member. IL-33 has emerged as a multifunctional protein, with reported roles in driving potent Type 1 and Type 2 immunity, as well as facilitating profound Treg expansion in vitro and in vivo. IL-33-expanded Treg express the IL-33 receptor (R) ST2, and express classical markers associated with Treg phenotype and suppressor function. They suppress both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cell proliferation and effector functions in vitro, and Treg expressing ST2 have been identified as important regulators of detrimental immune responses in vivo. In the present chapter, we detail methods for expanding significant numbers of Treg using IL-33 both in vitro and in vivo that may potentially be used to promote/maintain organ transplant tolerance or suppress autoimmunity.

Key words Regulatory T cells, Interleukin-33, ST2, Dendritic cells, Transplantation tolerance, Interleukin-2

1 Introduction

The name Treg is a broadly used connotation that encompasses multiple subsets of functionally suppressive $CD4^+$ T cells, each with unique phenotypic and functional characteristics. The most widely characterized and studied are thymic-derived, $CD4^+$ T cells that undergo the T cell selection process and are released into the periphery. These cells express the transcription factor Forkhead box P 3 (Foxp3) and constitutively express high levels of the high-affinity IL-2R, CD25. A mutation in the Foxp3 gene in mice results in a disorder that closely resembles the fatal disorder IPEX (immune dysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy, and

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_3,

X-linked inheritance) in humans and revealed a critical role for Foxp3 in the reported suppressive function of $CD4^+CD25^+$ regulatory T cells that control immune homeostasis and suppress autoimmunity [1–3]. Given their potent ability to suppress T cell responses, intense investigation has centered on harnessing these cells for therapeutic applications, particularly in the settings of transplantationand autoimmunity [4–6]. Many protocols have been described for expanding Treg, including polyclonal and Ag-specific cells [7]. Likewise, significant effort has been made to maintain or enhance their suppressor function, especially in the presence of inflammatory stimuli that could counter their regulatory mechanisms [8].

High constitutive expression of CD25 by Treg indicates that they rely heavily on IL-2 [9] and accordingly, culture of $CD4^+CD25^+$ T cells with IL-2 and TCR stimulation has been used as a method of Treg expansion in vitro [10]. Our recent published findings have revealed that IL-33, a pleiotropic cytokine with inflammatory and regulatory functions, stimulates IL-2 secretion by $CD11c^+$ DC (Fig. 1; [11]) that supports robust Treg expansion (Fig. 2; [11]). Additionally, IL-33 acting on DC in vitro results in selective expansion of IL-33R/$ST2^+$ Treg over $ST2^-$ Treg, as well as $Foxp3^-$ effector T cells (Fig. 2c; [11]). Administration of IL-33 in vivo also significantly expands Treg (Fig. 3; [11]) that suppress T cell responses (Fig. 4; [11]) and critically mediate fully MHC-mismatched experimental cardiac allograft survival [12, 13]. IL-33-expanded $ST2^+$ Treg express classical Treg phenotypic markers, and have recently emerged as key regulators of immune function [14]. Thus, the ability to selectively expand this unique Treg subset for potential therapeutic application is an important immunologic tool and is described in detail herein.

The observation that IL-33 expands Treg [11–13] was an important finding that added to the known pleiotropic functions

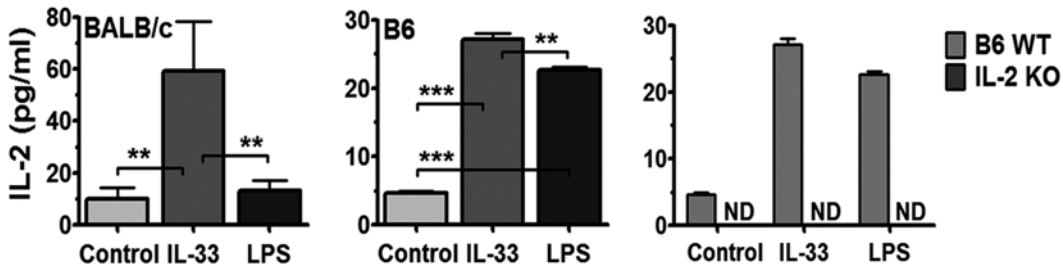


Fig. 1 IL-33 stimulates IL-2 secretion by $CD11c^+$ BMDCs. BALB/c, B6 wild-type (WT) or IL-$2^{-/-}$ bone marrow (BM)-derived $CD11c^+$ DC were generated in 7-day culture and cultured for 18 h in medium alone or supplemented with IL-33 (20 ng/ml) or LPS (100 ng/ml). Supernatants were harvested for cytokine quantitation by ELISA. Data are representative of $n=4$ (LPS) or $n=5$ (control and IL-33). ND = Not detectable, $^{**}p<0.01$, $^{***}p<0.001$. Figure and legend were modified and reproduced with permission from *The JournalofImmunology* [11]. (Copyright 2014. The American Association of Immunologists, Inc.)

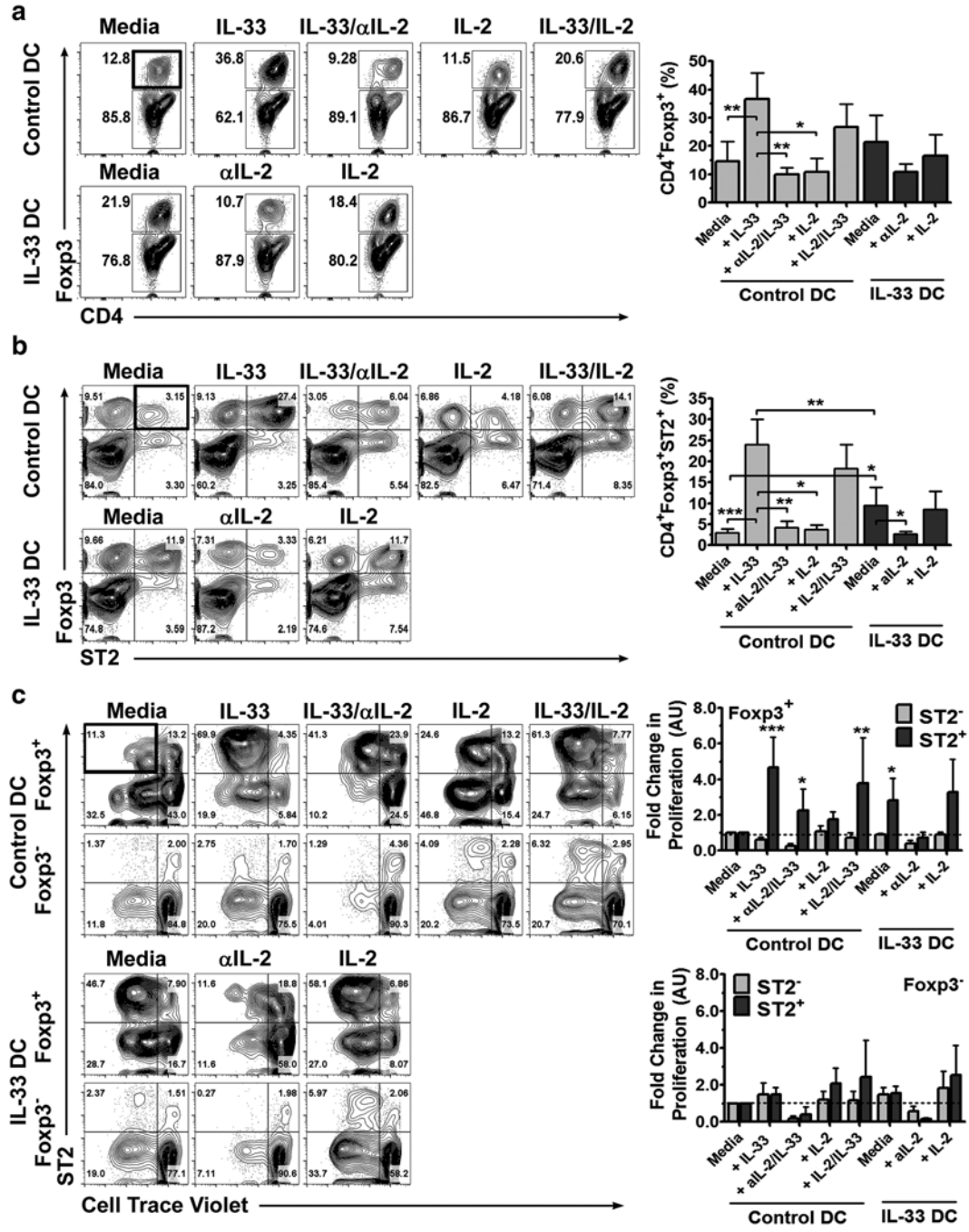


Fig. 2 CD11c⁺ BMDC-derived IL-2 promotes selective expansion of ST2⁺ Treg following IL-33 exposure. CD11c⁺ BALB/c BMDC were cultured overnight in media alone or supplemented with IL-33 (20 ng/ml). BMDC were cultured in MLR with Cell Trace Violet (CTV)-labeled B6 Foxp3-IRES-mRFP (FIR) CD4⁺ T cells for 5 days. Some wells were supplemented with IL-33 (10 ng/ml), neutralizing IL-2 antibody (10 μg/ml), rhIL-2 (50 U/ml), or a combination as indicated. After 5 days, cells were harvested and stained for flow cytometric analysis. Representative flow plots and an average of (**a**) Foxp3 and (**b**) Foxp3 and ST2 expression on CD4⁺-gated cells or (**c**) ST2 expression vs. CTV on CD4⁺ Foxp3⁺ (*top panels*) and CD4⁺Foxp3⁻ (*bottom panels*) cells. Results in were averaged from $n=4$ independent experiments. *Black boxes* on flow plots indicate populations used to generate corresponding graphs. *AU* Arbitrary Units for fold change reported in graphs in (**c**). *$p<0.05$, **$p<0.01$, ***$p<0.001$. Figure and legend were modified and reproduced with permission from *The Journal of Immunology* [11]. (Copyright 2014. The American Association of Immunologists, Inc.)

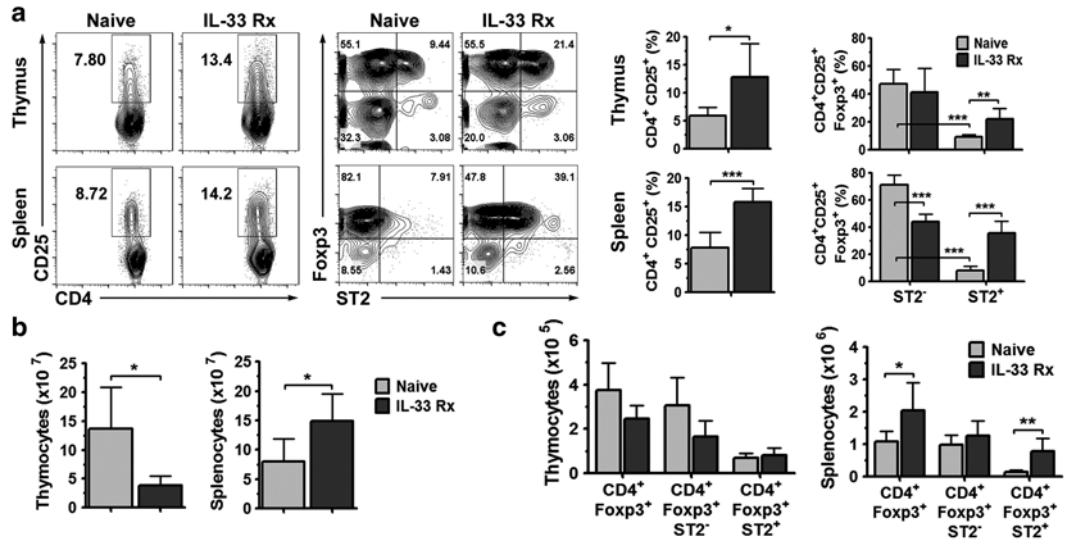


Fig. 3 IL-33 administration expandsan ST2$^+$ subset of CD4$^+$CD25$^+$Foxp3$^+$ T cells originating in the thymus. (**a**) Representative flow cytometry plots and frequency of CD4$^+$CD25$^+$ and CD4$^+$CD25$^+$Foxp3$^+$ cells from CD3$^+$CD4$^+$-gated total thymocytes or splenocytes from naïve or IL-33-treated (IL-33 Rx) C57BL/6J (B6) mice. (**b**) Absolute number of total cells and (**c**) indicated cell populations in the thymus and spleens averaged from $n=5$ mice. $^*p<0.05$,$^{**}p<0.01$,$^{***}p<0.001$. Figure and legend reproduced with permission from *The Journal of Immunology* [11]. (Copyright 2014. The American Association of Immunologists, Inc.)

already ascribed to this IL-1 family cytokine [15]. IL-33 was initially found to promote potent Type 2 responses [16] through actions on ST2-expressing immune cells [17]. Through stimulation of IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13 production, these downstream effects of IL-33 are important in protective responses during parasitic infection [18], but conversely can severely exacerbate disease pathology associated with Type 2 responses [15]. It was later discovered that IL-33 could also act synergistically with proinflammatory stimuli, such as IL-12, to drive robust Type 1 immune responses in CD8$^+$ T cells [19], and NK and NKT cells [20], and stimulate potent antiviral immunity [21].

With the current use of Treg therapy already in clinical trials, studies continue in an effort to develop Treg expansion protocols tailored to specific uses. ST2$^+$ Treg may offer a therapeutic advantage over ST2$^-$ Treg in their ability to consume potentially detrimental IL-33 released from damaged tissues under pathologic conditions. We have demonstrated an ability for ST2$^+$ Treg to significantly suppress IL-12/IL-33-driven CD8$^+$ T cell IFN-γ production in vitro (Fig. 4; [11]) compared to ST2$^-$ Treg; however, this effect has not yet been reported in vivo. Given the pleiotropic effects of IL-33 in vivo, the capacity to selectively expand ST2$^+$ Treg ex vivo using IL-33-exposed CD11c$^+$ BMDC may be a promising way to capitalize on these important immunoregulatory cells. The following protocols describing robust expansion of ST2$^+$

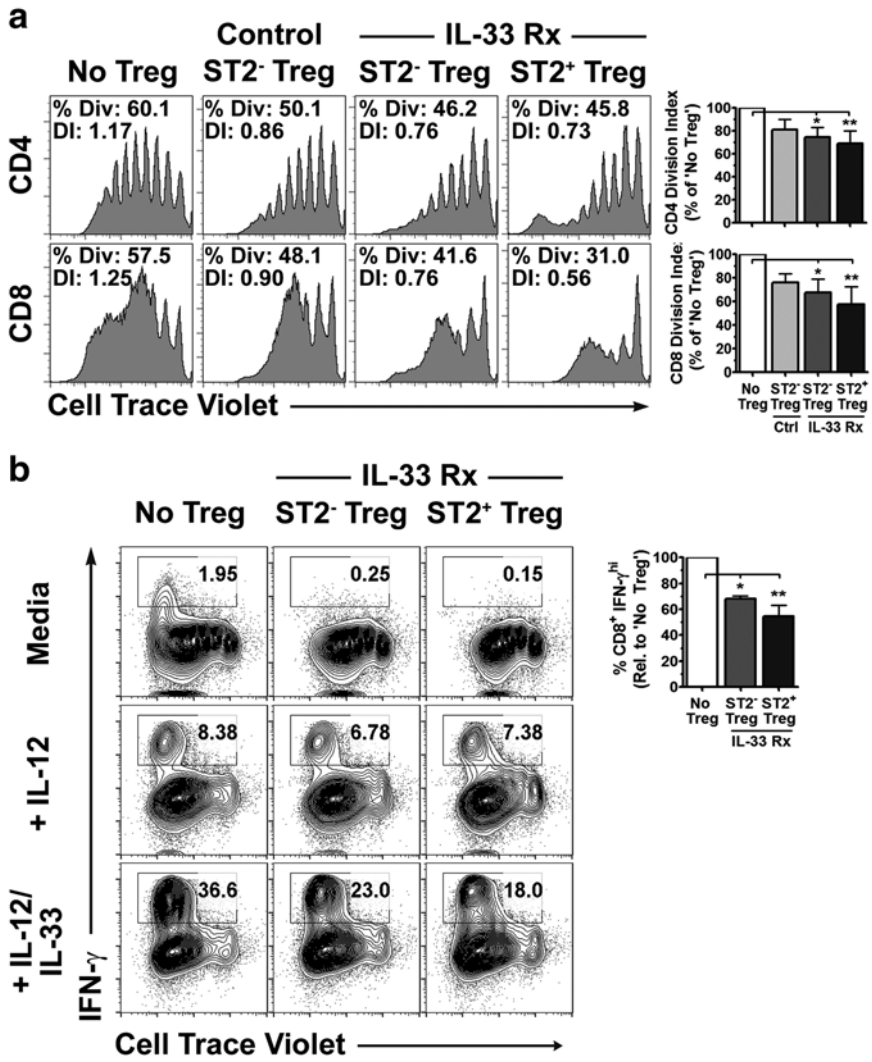


Fig. 4 IL-33-expanded Treg suppress CD8$^+$ effector T cell function. B6 FIR mice were administered IL-33 (0.5 μg/day; for 10 day). CD4$^+$ cells were purified on d 11 from total splenocytes and stained for flow sorting of CD4$^+$ RFP(Foxp3)$^+$ST2$^-$ or ST2$^+$ Treg. Sorted Treg were cultured with purified CTV-labeled, B6 CD4$^+$, or CD8$^+$ T cells at a Treg:Teffector ratio of 1:8 with CD3/CD28 T-activator beads for 4 days. Cultures were harvested and stained for flow cytometric analysis of T cell proliferation. (**a**) Representative flow plots and Division Index Relative to "No Treg" group of T cell proliferation based on CTV dilution profile. (**b**) Representative flow plots and an average of IFN-γ^{hi}CD8$^+$ T cells unstimulated or stimulated with 5 ng/ml IL-12 alone or in combination with 10 ng/ml IL-33. Data were generated from $n=3$ independent experiments. Statistical significance in A and B were determined by one-way ANOVA. DI = Division Index. *$p<0.05$, **$p<0.01$. Figure and legend reproduced with permission from *The JournalofImmunology* [11]. (Copyright 2014. The American Association of Immunologists, Inc.)

Treg using IL-33 in vitro and in vivo provide the avenue for further exploration, including investigation of ST2$^+$ Treg in humans, of the function and potential therapeutic use of this unique Treg subset.

2 Materials

2.1 Administration of Recombinant Mouse IL-33 and Spleen Harvest

1. Phosphate-buffered saline (PBS; Lonza, Walkersville, MD).
2. Recombinant mouse IL-33 (BioLegend, San Diego, CA) is resuspended in PBS at a final concentration of 5–10 μg/ml. IL-33 is administered by intraperitoneal (i.p.) injection at 100 μl/mouse (0.5–1 μg/mouse) daily for 10 days.
3. Fetal bovine serum (FBS)/EDTA solution: 500 ml PBS, 0.5 % heat-inactivated FBS, 2 mM EDTA (Sigma, St. Louis, MO).
4. Complete RPMI 1640 media: RPMI 1640 (Gibco by Life Technologies, Grand Island, NY) supplemented with 10 % heat-inactivated FBS, 50 μM 2-mercaptoethanol, 2 mM l-glutamine, 1 M MEM nonessential amino acids, 1 mM sodium pyruvate, 100 U/ml penicillin, 0.1 mg/ml streptomycin, 10 mM HEPES (N-2-hydroxyethylpiperazine-N′-2-ethane-sulfonic acid).
5. Red blood cell (RBC) lysis buffer: 1 L MilliQ water, 0.1 mM EDTA, 1 g potassium bicarbonate ($KHCO_3$), 8.29 g ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl). Adjust pH to 7.2–7.5 and filter.
6. Sterile needles, 27 gauge, 1/2 in.
7. Sterile syringes (1 and 5 cc).
8. Nylon mesh cell strainers, 70 μm (BD Biosciences, Franklin Lakes, NJ).
9. Sterile Petri dish, 100 mm × 15 mm (Fisher Scientific, Pittsburgh, PA).

2.2 Expansion of Treg In Vitro

2.2.1 Propagation of $CD11c^+$ Cells from Mouse Bone Marrow

1. Recombinant murine IL-4 (R&D Systems, Minneapolis, MN).
2. Recombinant murine GM-CSF (R&D Systems, Minneapolis, MN).
3. Mouse Anti-CD11c immunomagnetic beads (Miltenyi Biotec, Auburn, CA).
4. MACS® Separation Columns (Miltenyi Biotec, Auburn, CA).
5. MACS® Separator Magnet (Miltenyi Biotec, Auburn, CA).
6. Bright-Line™ Hemacytometer (Fisher Scientific, Pittsburgh, PA).
7. Cell Culture Dish, 100 mm tissue culture-treated polystyrene (BD Biosciences).
8. 0.4 % (w/v) trypan blue in 0.81 % sodium chloride and 0.06 % potassium phosphate, dibasic (Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, MO).
9. Needles, syringes, cell strainers, PBS, FBS/EDTA, and RPMI 1640 medium—*see* Subheading 2.1.

2.2.2 Expansion of Treg In Vitro by IL-33 and CD11c+ BMDC

1. *See* Subheading 2.1 for necessary materials for isolation of total splenocytes.
2. T1/ST2 (IL-33R) FITC-conjugated mAb (MD Bioproducts, St. Paul, MN), Anti-mouse CD4 (Clone RM 4-5) APC-conjugated mAb (Affymetrix/eBioscience, San Diego, CA).
3. 5 % FBS: 500 ml PBS, 25 ml heat-inactivated FBS.
4. Dynabeads® Untouched™ Mouse CD4 Cells Kit (Life Technologies).
5. DynaMag™-15 Magnet (Life Technologies).
6. Recombinant mouse IL-33 (BioLegend).

2.3 Flow Cytometric Analysis of IL-33-Expanded Treg

1. 5 ml Round-bottom polystyrene tubes (BD Falcon).
2. Cell stain buffer (CSB): 500 ml PBS, 5 % heat-activated FBS, 0.1 % (w/v) sodium azide, pH 7.4–7.6.

2.3.1 Surface Staining

3. 5 % Normal goat serum (GS) in CSB.
4. Appropriate monoclonal antibodies (mAbs).
5. 4 % Paraformaldehyde (PFA): 4 g of PFA per 100 ml of PBS. Can be diluted to 1–2 % working solution with PBS to fix cells.

2.3.2 Intracellular Staining

1. Permeabilization buffer (PB): 500 ml PBS, 5 % heat-inactivated FBS, 0.1 % sodium azide, 0.1 % saponin.
2. Fixation/permeabilization buffer (Fix/Perm): Foxp3/Transcription Factor Staining Set (Affymetrix/eBioscience).
3. 5 % Normal goat serum in PB.
4. Appropriate mAbs.
5. 4 % Paraformaldehyde (PFA): 40 g PFA in 1 L PBS. Store at 4 °C protected from light.

3 Methods

3.1 Expansion of Treg In Vivo by Administration of Recombinant Mouse IL-33

1. Dissolve recombinant mouse IL-33 in PBS to a final concentration of 5–10 μg/ml.
2. Using a 1 cc syringe with a 27G, ½″ needle, administer 100 μl by intraperitoneal (i.p.) injection once daily for 10 days to C57BL/6 (B6) mice. Foxp3 reporter mice may be used to permit flow sorting of expanded Treg for functional assays (Foxp3-IRES-mRFP (FIR) on a C57BL/6 background) following IL-33 administration.
3. One day after the final injection, sacrifice animals using approved methods of euthanasia. Harvest the spleen using aseptic techniques and place in FBS/EDTA on ice.

4. Transfer the spleen to a sterile Petri dish and mechanically dissect into small pieces no larger than 2–3 mm. The dissected spleen should be forced through a 70 μm nylon mesh cell strainer into a 50 ml conical tube using a sterile 5 ml syringe. Wash the dish and cell strainer with 20–30 ml cold FBS/EDTA.
5. Centrifuge at 500 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C, and resuspend the cells in RBC lysis buffer (3–5 ml per spleen) for 5 min.
6. Following lysis, add PBS to bring the total volume to 50 ml, and centrifuge the cells again under the same conditions. Splenocytes are ready for purification or immunostaining for flow sorting or phenotypic analysis. Keep cells in RPMI 1640 medium on ice until ready to use.

3.2 Expansion of Treg In Vitro Using IL-33 and CD11c+ Dendritic Cells

3.2.1 Generation of CD11c+ BMDC

1. From 8- to 12-week-old mice, dissect the femurs and tibiae, taking care to remove as much muscle as possible, and place in a 50 ml tube with FBS/EDTA on ice.
2. Under sterile conditions in a laminar flow hood, place the bones in a sterile Petri dish with 10–15 ml FBS/EDTA. Sterile scissors and forceps are used to tease away and remove any remaining muscle tissue. Place cleaned bones ina second Petri dish with 10–15 ml fresh FBS/EDTA.
3. Using scissors, carefully cut the bones and flush the BM into a clean dish with FBS/EDTA using a 5–10 cc syringe and 27G needle.
4. Once all the bones have been flushed, remove the needle and use the syringe to transfer the cells to a 50 ml tube, passing them through a 70 μm nylon cell strainer. Wash the dish and strainer with 5–10 ml FBS/EDTA.
5. Centrifuge at 500 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C.
6. Carefully aspirate the supernatant, taking care not to disrupt the pellet. Resuspend the cells in 3–5 ml RBC lysis buffer for 5 min.
7. Add cold FBS/EDTA to 50 ml and centrifuge as described above.
8. Resuspend the cells in RPMI 1640 and count viable cells using Trypan Blue and a hemacytometer.
9. Culture cells in a sterile, 100 mm tissue culture-treated dish at $3–4 \times 10^6$ cells in 15 ml RPMI 1640 supplemented with GM-CSF and IL-4 at 1000 U/ml (day 0). Cells will be cultured for a total of 7 days.
10. On day 2, remove 10 ml of tissue culture media per dish and centrifuge at 500 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C. Pour off the supernatant and resuspend cells in 15 ml fresh RPMI 1640 per dish with GM-CSF and IL-4.

11. On day 4, gently swirl the plates and remove 15 ml media containing floating cells. Discard this media and add 15 ml fresh RPMI 1640 per dish with GM-CSF and IL-4.
12. On day 6, repeat process for day 2, removing 15 ml, spinning down cells, pouring off the supernatant and resuspending cells in 15 ml fresh RPMI per dish with GM-CSF and IL-4.
13. On day 7, gently swirl plates and harvest all media/non-adherent cells into a 50 ml tube. Add 5 ml FBS/EDTA per dish and pipette up and down to wash thoroughly. Collect these cells and add to 50 ml tube.
14. Centrifuge at 500 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C.
15. Resuspend cells in FBS/EDTA and count using hemacytometer. Proceed with CD11c isolation using mouse anti-CD11c immunomagnetic beads (Miltenyi Biotec) according to the manufacturer's protocol.
16. Resuspend positively-selected CD11c$^+$ cells in RPMI 1640 medium and count. Bring cells to a concentration of 1×10^5 cells/ml and keep on ice. Cells are ready for culture.

3.2.2 Expansion of Treg In Vitro by CD11c$^+$ BMDC and IL-33

1. Prepare total splenocyte single-cell suspension from untreated/naïve wild-type (WT) B6 or FIR B6 mice as described in Subheading 3.1.
2. Following RBC lysis, isolate untouched bulk CD4$^+$ T cells by negative selection using Dynabeads® Untouched™ Mouse CD4 Cells Kit (Life Technologies) according to the manufacturer's instructions.
3. Remove non-CD4$^+$T cells using the DynaMag™-15 Magnet (Life Technologies).
4. Wash the isolated CD4$^+$ T cells in FBS/EDTA. Centrifuge at 500 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C.
5. Pour off the supernatant and resuspend cells in RPMI 1640 medium. Count cells using trypan blue and a hemacytometer.
6. Dilute CD4$^+$ T cells to a concentration of 1×10^6 cells/ml in RPMI 1640 medium.
7. In a 96-well U-bottom plate, add purified CD11c$^+$ BMDC (100 µl from Subheading 3.2.1) and bulk CD4$^+$ T cells at a DC:T cell ratio of 1:10 in 200 µl total volume (*see* **Note 1**). In a syngeneic system when B6 CD11c$^+$ BMDC are used with B6 FIR CD4$^+$ T cells, anti-CD3 is added at a final concentration of 0.25 µg/ml (*see* **Note 2**).
8. Recombinant IL-33 is added to each well at a final concentration of 10 ng/ml (*see* **Notes 3** & **4**).
7. Cells are cultured for a total of 5 days at 37 °C, in a humidified 5 % CO_2 incubator.

8. On day 5, cells are harvested by pipetting up and down and transferred to a 50 ml tube.
9. Centrifuge at 500 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C.
10. The cells are ready for immunostaining for flow sorting or phenotypic analysis.

3.3 Flow Sorting of IL-33-Expanded Treg for Functional Assays

3.3.1 Immunostaining and FlowSorting of IL-33-Expanded Treg

1. Utilizing Foxp3-IRES-mRFP (FIR) reporter mice, Treg expanded by IL-33 in vivo (Subheading 3.1) or in vitro (Subheading 3.2) may be flow-sorted for testing of their functional suppressive capacity, and comparison of IL-33R/ST2$^+$ vs. ST2$^-$Foxp3$^+$ Treg subsets.
2. Total splenocytes from FIR mice (Subheading 3.1) or cells harvested 4 °C from culture (Subheading 3.2) are resuspended in 5 % FBS and stained using ST2-FITC (1:200 dilution) and CD4-APC (1:800 dilution). Cells are incubated at 4 °C for 30 min.
3. Wash cells with 10× volume 5 % FBS and centrifuge at 500 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C.
4. Resuspend cells in 5 % FBS and filter through cell strainer cap into 5 ml round bottom tube.
5. Cells are sorted using a FACSAria™ (BD Biosciences). Foxp3$^+$ (RFP$^+$) cells are detected using the PE/Texas Red channel. Gating on lymphocytes (FSC-A vs. SSC-A) and single cells (FSC-H vs. FSC-W), ST2$^+$ and ST2$^-$Foxp3$^+$ cells are sorted from the CD4$^+$-gated population. Sorted cells are collected in sterile 5 ml snap-cap round-bottom tubes containing approximately 1 ml cold RPMI 1640 medium.
6. Sorted cells are washed in RPMI 1640 and centrifuged at 500 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C.
7. Cells are resuspended in RPMI 1640 and counted using trypan blue and a hemacytometer. Cells are ready for in vitro suppressionassay or phenotype analysis by flow cytometry. For in vivo use, wash cells with PBS to remove traces of FBS.

3.3.2 Testing the T Cell Suppressive Capacity of IL-33-Expanded Treg In Vitro

1. The T cell suppressor function of flow-sorted Treg populations (Subheading 3.3.1) can be tested in vitro. CD4$^+$CD25$^-$ T effector (T_{eff}) cells are used as responders and purified from total splenocytes of a naïve B6 mouse. To do this, purified rat anti-mouse CD25 (clone PC61 at 1:100) is included in the antibody cocktail during the CD4$^+$ T cell purification process (described in Subheading 3.1).
2. Purified CD4$^+$CD25$^-$ T cells are labeled with CellTrace™ Violet (CTV) Cell Proliferation kit (Life Technologies) according to the manufacturer's instructions, taking care to keep cells in the dark during and after the labeling process.

3. Resuspend CTV-labeled cells in RPMI 1640 medium and count. Adjust the concentration to 1×10^6/ml.
4. CTV-labeled T_{eff} cells (1×10^5/well) are stimulated in 96-well U-bottom plates with Dynabeads® Mouse T-Activator CD3/CD28 (1×10^4/well; Life Technologies). Flow-sorted Treg populations are added at different Treg:T_{eff} ratios in a final volume of 200 μl per well and cells are cultured for 3 days at 37 °C, in a humidified 5 % CO_2 incubator.
5. At the end of 3 days, cells are harvested from culture and stained for flow cytometric quantification of T_{eff} cell proliferation by CTV-dilution analysis. Flow-sorted $CD4^+$ Treg can be distinguished from $CD4^+$ T_{eff} by staining for CD90.1/Thy1.1 and exclusion of $CD90.1^+$ cells from final analysis.
6. Cells are acquired using an LSRFortessa (BD Biosciences) and data is analyzed using FlowJo software (v10; Tree Star, Ashland, OR).

3.4 Phenotypic Analysis of IL-33-Expanded Treg by Flow Cytometry

1. Surface Ag expression can be analyzed by multicolor flow cytometry on total splenocytes or CD4-purified cells following 10 day administration of IL-33 or cells harvested from DC:T cell co-culture following in vitro expansion.

3.4.1 Surface Staining

2. Specifically, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC)-, phycoerythrin (PE)-, allophycocyanin (APC)/AlexaFluor647-, Pacific Blue-, PerCP-Cy5.5-, and PE-Cy7-conjugated antibodies are used to stain Treg.
3. Typically, 5×10^5 cells are blocked with 5 % normal goat serum (GS) in Cell Stain Buffer (CSB) (10 min; 4 °C), then stained with appropriate mAbs (30 min; 4 °C) in CSB. Appropriate isotype-matched IgGs should be included as negative controls.
4. The mAbs (clones) used for Treg surface staining are: CD3 (17A2), CD4 (RM 4-5), CD25 (PC61), ST2 (DJ8), CD304/Neuropilin-1 (3E12), CD44 (IM7), and CD278/ICOS (7E.17G9).
5. Wash cells twice in CSB. Data should be acquired immediately if using Foxp3 (FIR) reporter mice (*see* **Note 5**).
6. Data are acquired with a LSRFortessa flow cytometer (BD ImmunoCytometry Systems; San Jose, CA) and analyzed using FlowJo software (v10; Tree Star).

3.4.2 Intracellular Staining

1. To determine expression of transcription factors (from cells stained in 3.4.1 generated using WT mice and not FIR reporter mice), perform intracellular staining immediately following surface staining. The mAbs (clones) used for intracellular staining include: Foxp3 (FJK-16 s), GATA-3 (16E10A23), T-bet (4B10), and Helios (22F6).

2. After the second wash with CSB, resuspend cells in 100 µl Fix/Perm buffer and immediately vortex. Incubate at room temperature (RT) for 45 min, or alternatively, up to 16 h at 4 °C.
3. After the incubation in Fix/Perm buffer, wash the cells with 400 µl permeabilization buffer (PB) and centrifuge at 500 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C. Aspirate the supernatant and resuspend in PB + 3 % GS and desired mAbs. Incubate for 30 min at 4 °C.
4. Wash the cells (2×) with PB.
5. Resuspend cells in CSB and acquire, of fix with 1–2 % paraformaldehyde (PFA).

4 Notes

1. For optimal yield of ST2$^+$Foxp3$^+$ Treg, bulk CD4$^+$ T cells should be used as the starting population during in vitro expansion with CD11c$^+$ BMDC and IL-33. Although they still undergo expansion, we have found that the yield of ST2$^+$ Treg is actually lower when starting with purified CD4$^+$CD25$^+$ T cells.
2. For applications where MHC-mismatch is a factor, in vitro expansion of Treg by IL-33 can be achieved using allogeneic (BALB/c) CD11c$^+$ BMDC in place of syngeneic (B6) CD11c$^+$ BMDC + anti-CD3, with comparable results.
3. ST2$^+$ Treg can be generated in vitro in 5 day culture with CD11c$^+$ BMDC that were exposed to 20 ng/ml IL-33 for 18 h, without the addition of exogenous IL-33 (Fig. 2; [11]). The overall yield of Treg may be lower compared to cultures with IL-33 directly added to BMDC:T cell co-culture; however, the resulting phenotype and suppressor function of Treg generated by either method are comparable.
4. Recombinant IL-2 is not required during in vitro Treg expansion using CD11c$^+$ BMDC and IL-33. We have reported that adding exogenous IL-2 does not augment Treg expansion above levels achieved with CD11c$^+$ BMDC and IL-33 (Fig. 2; [11]), and IL-33 stimulates IL-2 secretion by DC to support Treg expansion (Fig. 1; [11]).
5. For phenotypic analysis of surface markers only on Treg, FIR reporter mice can be used to identify Treg to avoid intracellular staining (identification of Foxp3$^+$/RFP$^+$ cells during flow acquisition). Cells must be acquired immediately following staining, since fixation with PFA will quench RFP fluorescence. For analysis of intracellular proteins, including cytokines and transcription factors, WT mice are used with intracellular Foxp3 staining.

Acknowledgements

Many of these protocols were developed in studies with the support National Institutes of Health (NIH) grants to B.M.M. (T32 AI074490) and H.R.T. (R00 HL097155). H.R.T. was also supported by the American Society of Transplantation (AST) Basic Science Faculty Grant, Roche Organ Transplantation Foundation Grant (ROTRF; 58911427) and the American Heart Association Grant-in-Aid (AHA; 14GRNT20400004).

References

1. Bennett CL, Christie J, Ramsdell F et al (2001) The immune dysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy, X-linked syndrome (IPEX) is caused by mutations of FOXP3. Nat Genet 27(1):20–21
2. Wildin RS, Ramsdell F, Peake J et al (2001) X-linked neonatal diabetes mellitus, enteropathy and endocrinopathy syndrome is the human equivalent of mouse scurfy. Nat Genet 27(1):18–20
3. Fontenot JD, Gavin MA, Rudensky AY (2003) Foxp3 programs the development and function of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. Nat Immunol 4(4):330–336
4. McMurchy AN, Bushell A, Levings MK, Wood KJ (2011) Moving to tolerance: clinical application of T regulatory cells. Semin Immunol 23(4):304–313
5. Tang Q, Bluestone JA, Kang SM (2012) CD4(+)Foxp3(+) regulatory T cell therapy in transplantation. J Mol Cell Biol 4(1):11–21
6. Verbsky JW (2007) Therapeutic use of T regulatory cells. Curr Opin Rheumatol 19(3): 252–258
7. Shevach EM (2011) Biological functions of regulatory T cells. Adv Immunol 112:137–176
8. Campbell DJ, Koch MA (2011) Phenotypical and functional specialization of FOXP3+ regulatory T cells. Nat Rev Immunol 11(2):119–130
9. Almeida AR, Legrand N, Papiernik M, Freitas AA (2002) Homeostasis of peripheral CD4+ T cells: IL-2R alpha and IL-2 shape a population of regulatory cells that controls CD4+ T cell numbers. J Immunol 169(9):4850–4860
10. Hoffmann P, Eder R, Kunz-Schughart LA et al (2004) Large-scale in vitro expansion of polyclonal human CD4(+)CD25high regulatory T cells. Blood 104(3):895–903
11. Matta BM, Lott JM, Mathews LR et al (2014) IL-33 is an unconventional alarmin that stimulates IL-2 secretion by dendritic cells to selectively expand IL-33R/ST2+ regulatory T cells. J Immunol 193(8):4010–4020
12. Turnquist HR, Zhao Z, Rosborough BR et al (2011) IL-33 expands suppressive CD11b+ Gr-1(int) and regulatory T cells, including ST2L+ Foxp3+ cells, and mediates regulatory T cell-dependent promotion of cardiac allograft survival. J Immunol 187(9):4598–4610
13. Brunner SM, Schiechl G, Falk W et al (2011) Interleukin-33 prolongs allograft survival during chronic cardiac rejection. Transpl Int 24(10):1027–1039
14. Schiering C, Krausgruber T, Chomka A et al (2014) The alarmin IL-33 promotes regulatory T-cell function in the intestine. Nature 513(7519):564–568
15. Liew FY, Pitman NI, McInnes IB (2010) Disease-associated functions of IL-33: the new kid in the IL-1 family. Nat Rev Immunol 10(2):103–110
16. Schmitz J, Owyang A, Oldham E et al (2005) IL-33, an interleukin-1-like cytokine that signals via the IL-1 receptor-related protein ST2 and induces T helper type 2-associated cytokines. Immunity 23(5):479–490
17. Liu Q, Turnquist HR (2013) Implications for interleukin-33 in solid organ transplantation. Cytokine 62(2):183–194
18. Humphreys NE, Xu D, Hepworth MR et al (2008) IL-33, a potent inducer of adaptive immunity to intestinal nematodes. J Immunol 180(4):2443–2449
19. Yang Q, Li G, Zhu Y et al (2011) IL-33 synergizes with TCR and IL-12 signaling to promote the effector function of CD8+ T cells. Eur J Immunol 41(11):3351–3360
20. Bourgeois E, Van LP, Samson M et al (2009) The pro-Th2 cytokine IL-33 directly interacts with invariant NKT and NK cells to induce IFN-gamma production. Eur J Immunol 39(4):1046–1055
21. Bonilla WV, Frohlich A, Senn K et al (2012) The alarmin interleukin-33 drives protective antiviral CD8(+) T cell responses. Science 335(6071):984–989

Chapter 4

Standardization, Evaluation, and Area-Under-Curve Analysis of Human and Murine Treg Suppressive Function

Tatiana Akimova, Matthew H. Levine, Ulf H. Beier, and Wayne W. Hancock

Abstract

FOXP3+ T-regulatory (Treg) cells have important roles in immune homeostasis, and alterations in their number and function can predispose to diseases ranging from autoimmunity to allograft rejection and tumor growth. Reliable identification of human Tregs remains a persistent problem due to a lack of specific markers. The most definitive Treg characterization currently involves combined assessment of phenotypic, epigenetic and functional parameters, with the latter typically involving in vitro Treg suppression assays. Unfortunately, suppression assays are frequently performed using differing methods and readouts, limiting comparisons between studies. We provide a perspective on our experience with human and murine Treg suppression assay conditions, including Treg data obtained in clinical transplant studies, Tregs isolated from healthy donors and treated with epigenetically active compounds, and Tregs from standard murine strains (C57BL/6 and BALB/c). We provide detailed descriptions and illustrations of typical problems, shortcomings and troubleshooting; describe new modifications and approaches; and present a new method for calculation of suppressive assay data using a modified area-under-curve (AUC) method. This method allows us to directly compare Treg suppressive function between multiple patients (such as in clinical transplant studies), to reliably track changes in Treg function from the same person over time, or compare effects of Treg-modulating compounds tested with different healthy donors Tregs in separate or combined experimental settings.

Key words FOXP3+ regulatory T cells, Tregs, Suppression assay

1 Introduction

FOXP3+ T-regulatory (Treg) cellscomprise a small subset of CD4+ T cells with bystander suppressor activity. Since their initial characterization as CD4+ CD25+ T cells by Sakaguchi and colleagues in 1995 [1], Tregs have been a focus of interest for the development of new diagnostic and therapeutic strategies for immunologically mediated diseases. FOXP3 is a key marker for use in the identification of murine Tregs [2], and the development of YFP/GFP-Foxp3 knock-in mice facilitated isolation of live murine Tregs for in vitro and in vivo functional studies [3]. However, in addition to Tregs, activated human effector T (Teffs) cells can upregulate FOXP3 [4],

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_4,

such that phenotypic evaluation of human Tregs using FOXP3 alone is not sufficiently specific for clinical studies. To overcome this problem, various additional Treg-associated markers with supposed preferential expression by FOXP3+ cells have been proposed, but in most cases direct validation of their Treg specificity in human clinical samples was not shown. Indeed, FOXP3 is an indispensable, but not sufficient marker of Treg cell fate. Thus, to maintain their Treg function and phenotype, an additional set of FOXP3-independent genes, including *CTLA4* and *IKZF2*, need to be demethylated [5]. Likewise, a quintet of transcription factors, namely IRF4, Eos, Gata1, Satb1, and FOXP3, but not FOXP3 alone, can reproduce Treg-like gene expression in Teff cells [6]. As a result, a "gold standard" for reliable phenotypic Treg evaluation is still lacking, and functional studies remain the most reliable way to confirm that CD4+CD25+FOXP3+ cells under study are indeed Treg cells.

The first in vitro suppression assays were described over a decade ago [7, 8]. Since then, many modifications of activation and co-stimulation conditions, time in culture, methods for readout of T cell proliferation, and calculations of results were developed. These modifications have led to controversy due, in part, to poor reproducibility between different research groups. An "ideal" Treg suppression assay would be sensitive enough to show alteration in suppressive function, and, at the same time, should not be prone to generate misleading results due to small variations in experimental conditions such as different lots of sera, stimulation reagents, etc., altered resistance of Teffs to Treg suppression, or differing characteristics of antigen-presenting cells (APC). For this purpose, each key assay component should be standardized, have minimal assay-to-assay variability, and provide the researcher with data for standardization controls in each experiment.

In this chapter, we discuss various technical considerations that must be taken into account especially when using human Treg suppression assays, since these more challenging and difficult to normalize than murine Treg suppression assays, as well as additional features of Tregs we have noted in ongoing clinical studies. We also discuss the most common pitfalls and drawbacks of this method, and illustrate issues using our data accumulated over 6 years of work with human Tregs, and a decade of work with murine Tregs. Finally, we suggest a new sensitive and reproducible method for calculation of Treg suppressive function that can be used to compare experimental data.

2 Materials

1. Ficoll-Paque PLUS Medium (GE Healthcare).
2. ACCUSPIN™ Tubes Sterile 50 mL (Sigma) or SepMate 50 mL tubes (Stemcell Technologies), or BD Vacutainer CPT tubes, 8 mL.

3. Ca^{2+} and Mg^{2+}-free DPBS.
4. 10× Ca^{2+} and Mg^{2+}-free DPBS or red blood cell lysis buffer.
5. Heat-inactivated fetal bovine serum (FBS).
6. Trypan blue (Sigma).
7. For murine cells and human tissue samples: Cell Strainers 70 μm or Nylon Mesh 70 μm.
8. Cell isolation buffer: DPBS supplemented with 2 mM EDTA and 0.5 % FBS.
9. For human cells: CD4+CD25+ Regulatory T cell isolation kit, human (Miltenyi) and for murine cells: CD4+CD25+ Regulatory T Cell Isolation Kit, mouse (Miltenyi).
10. For human cells: CD3 MicroBeads, human (Miltenyi) and for murine cells: CD90.2 MicroBeads, mouse (Miltenyi). Both reagents are optional.
11. LD columns and LS columns (Miltenyi).
12. T-cell media: RPMI1640 (Invitrogen), supplemented with 10 % heat-inactivated FBS, penicillin and streptomycin, and 2-mercaptoethanol (100 μM).
13. CFSE or CellTrace (Invitrogen).
14. For human cells: MACS GMP CD3 antibody (Miltenyi) and Dynabeads® M-450 Tosylactivated beads (Invitrogen). For murine cells: anti-mouse CD3 functional grade purified antibody.
15. 96-Well U-bottom plates or 96-well V-bottom plates for low cell numbers.
16. (Optional) CryoStor® CS5 cell cryopreservation media (Sigma) and cryovials 1–2 mL.
17. Flow cytometry buffer: DPBS supplemented with 2 % heat-inactivated FBS.
18. Fixable LIVE/DEAD (Invitrogen) or fixable Zombie (Biolegend) or fixable Viability Dye (eBioscience).
19. Transcription Factor Buffer Set (BD Biosciences) or Foxp3/Transcription Factor Staining Buffer Set (eBioscience).
20. Anti-human or anti-mouse CD4, FOXP3, CD8 (optional), CD25 (optional), CD127 (optional) and CTLA4 (optional) antibodies for evaluation of human or murine cells, correspondingly. Ki-67 antibody (optional) from BD Biosciences works for both species.

3 Methods

3.1 Human PBMC Isolation

For blood samples that were collected the same day, use ACCUSPIN, SepMate or CPT tubes according to corresponding manufacturer's instruction. Fill ACCUSPIN or SepMate with

Ficoll-Paque PLUS. You may also isolate PBMC using standard sterile 50 or 15 mL tubes, according to protocol in Ficoll-Paque PLUS package.

If blood has to be kept overnight or was shipped overnight («old» blood), then maintain the room temperature of blood until PBMC is isolated, and follow this modified procedure:

1. Warm, and then keep all reagents for PBMC isolation from «old» blood, at room temperature. It is also important to set up centrifuge for room temperature. Cold may provoke massive hemolysis of «old» erythrocytes which decreases PBMC yield and quality.
2. Evaluate blood volume. Use ACCUSPIN tubes for 15–21 mL of undiluted «old» blood, or SepMate for 16–26 mL of 2×-diluted blood. Dilute blood with DPBS + 2 % FBS. Combine both types of tubes if needed. Alternatively, you may use 2×-diluted blood and standard sterile 50 mL or 15 mL plastic tubes, according to protocol in Ficoll-Paque PLUS package, or combine all types of tubes.
3. Fill ACCUSPIN (by centrifugation at 800 × *g*, 30 s) and SepMate (by pipetting) tubes with room-temperature Ficoll-Paque PLUS, 15–15.5 mL in each 50 mL tube. Avoid air bubbles under the membranes.
4. Add corresponding volume of blood and spin down tubes at room temperature, 400 × *g*, 35 min. Higher speed with «old» blood samples may destroy red blood cells and lead to massive hemolysis. Make sure that centrifuge is set up as «no brake» (no rapid deceleration).
5. Remove plasma layer and collect PBMC cells within mononuclear band.
6. Wash PBMC with room temperature DPBS, 10 min at 300 × *g*.
7. Remove supernatant and evaluate whether red blood cell lysis is required. If not, continue with **step 9**.
8. Proceed with erythrocytes lysis if needed. Human PBMC sustain well the hypotonic shock. For that, tap tube to loosen cell pellet, add 18 mL of sterile DI water, mix for 5–10 s, and add 2 mL of 10× Ca^{2+} and Mg^{2+}-free DPBS. Mix, add sterile DPBS to 50 mL, and wash for 10 min at 300 × *g*.
9. Resuspend cells in cell isolation buffer, and evaluate cell numbers and viability using Trypan blue staining.

3.2 Human Tissue Cell Isolation and Murine Cell Isolation

1. Obtain spleen, peripheral, and mesenteric lymph modes of sacrificed mice and collect them into tubes with 4 °C sterile DPBS. Obtain human lymph modes, collected into tubes with 4 °C cell culture media.
2. Use a plunger of a 5 mL syringe and cell strainer or mesh cuts to prepare single-cell suspension in Petri dishes. Collect cells

into 50 mL tubes with inserted cell strainer (or mesh cuts) to filter cell clumps. Use DPBS for murine cells and cell culture media for human cells.

3. Wash cells at 300 × *g* for 10 min, remove supernatant, tap tube to loosen the pellet, and proceed with red blood cell lysis. Murine cells sustain well hypotonic shock. For that, tap tube to loosen cell pellet, add 18 mL of sterile DI water, mix for 5–10 s, and add 2 mL of 10× Ca^{2+} and Mg^{2+}-free DPBS. Mix, add sterile DPBS to 50 mL, and wash for 10 min at 300 × *g*. For human tissue cells, use homemade or commercial red blood cell lysis buffer according to the manufacturer's instruction.
4. Wash cells at 300 × *g* for 10 min, remove supernatant, resuspend cells in cell isolation buffer, and filter them if needed (using cell strainer or mesh cuts), and/or dissociate clumps by intensive pipetting. Calculate cell numbers and evaluate their viability using Trypan blue staining.

3.3 Human and Murine Treg, Teffs, and APC Isolation

Avoid using samples if more than 10–15 % of dead cells are observed prior to Treg isolation. Such levels require troubleshooting to improve cell isolation techniques and may seriously compromise the purity of isolated cells, especially Tregs. You may apply the Dead cell removal kit (Miltenyi) or dead cell isolation method by Ficoll using corresponding standard protocols (not detailed here), but in most cases it leads to insufficient cell numbers for Treg isolation.

There are three options of experimental setup: first one is to isolate the CD4+CD25+ subset as Tregs, CD4+CD25– as Teffs and CD4– cells as APC. This modification may be performed for both human and murine cells, and requires just a corresponding CD4+CD25+ Regulatory T cell isolation kit (Miltenyi) for human or mouse cells. Follow the manufacturer's instructions and wash out CD4– depleted cells to use them as APC. Then, obtain CD4+CD25– Teffs and CD4+CD25+ Tregs on the second step of isolation.

Second option is to use an additional kit with CD3 MicroBeads (Miltenyi) for human cells, or mouse CD90.2 MicroBeads (Miltenyi) for murine cells. Follow the manufacturer's instructions. In that case APC will be depleted of CD3+CD8+ cells, which are active dividers. As a result, use of CD3-depleted APC instead of CD4-depleted APC will provide with better Treg suppression within the same Treg/Teff ratios. Serious drawbacks of this approach are the need for additional cells that cannot be used for Treg isolation, and the more expensive isolation procedure. However, for most murine experiments starting cell number is not an issue.

In both cases, when CD3- or CD4-depleted APC are used, they may be irradiated (100 Gy) prior to suppression assay. Irradiation of APC cells will help to stop their divisions and therefore will help to improve suppression by Tregs in the given Treg/Teffs ratios. Another way to obtain a better suppression is to

use slightly less APC if they are CD4-depleted, and about 1.3–1.5 times more APC if they are CD3-depleted.

Third option is to use CD4+CD25+ Regulatory T cell isolation kit exclusively to obtain Tregs, and use a bulk of allogeneic or autologous splenocytes or lymph nodes (mouse) or PBMC (human) cells as responders and APC. There are different advantages of this strategy. First of all, it allows to standardize suppression assay by using an aliquoted standardized responders from the same healthy donor (*see* Subheadings 4.2 and 4.3 in Results). Second, the suppression effect of Tregs on CD4+ and CD8+ T cell divisions can be evaluated within the same assay. The drawback of this approach is to higher risk to receive a bad shape of CFSE peaks (*see* Subheading 4.5 in Results). Another drawback is the tendency of bulk cells to be more resistant to Treg suppression in comparison with CD4+CD25− Teffs and APC setup. To overcome this, increase Treg to responders ratio and adjust stimulation to the level of 0.6–0.9 times less from Teffs + APC setup levels (also *see* Subheading 4.3 in Results).

3.4 Labeling of Responder Cells

CD4+CD25− Teffs or PBMC cells should be labeled with CFSE or its analogs according to the manufacturer's instructions. Avoid light exposure of cells. By the end of labeling, no changes in cell viability should be observed. After culture, labeled cells should demonstrate the same number and viability as non-labeled cells within the same experiment. If cells demonstrate decreased viability, then increase concentration of protein in labeling and/or washing buffers. You may also decrease concentration or time of labeling.

3.5 Suppression Assay

1. Calculate number of isolated Tregs, Teffs, and APC (or Tregs and PBMC). Numbers of Teffs and PBMC should be evaluated after CFSE labeling. Teffs and PBMC should be kept in dark after labeling and until plating. Dilute cells to 1×10^6/mL concentration in cell culture media. If low number of cells used, prepare them in 0.5×10^6/mL concentration to decrease pipetting errors (also *see* Subheading 4.3 in Results).
2. In advance, prepare CD3-coated magnetic beads to stimulate human cells by coupling of M-450 Tosylactivated beads (Invitrogen) with MACS GMP CD3 antibody (Miltenyi) according to the manufacturer's instructions in the bead package. Keep sodium azide-preserved sterile aliquots of the CD3-beads at 4 °C. Do not apply vortexing and vigorous pipetting for these beads. Such beads are stable for at least 12 months. In preliminary experiments, find the best stimulation for current experimental conditions (*see* Subheading 4.3 Results for details). Prior to cell culture, take the required volume of CD3 beads and wash them 2–3 times using magnet and cell culture medium. Prepare stock

of anti-mouse CD3 functional grade antibodies (4 μg/mL) in cell culture medium.

3. Plate cells into 96-well U-bottom cell culture plate (if $35–80 \times 10^3$ Tregs used in 1/1 ratios) or into V-bottom plate (if $20–35 \times 10^3$ Tregs used in 1/1 ratios). Prepare serial 2× dilution of Tregs, starting with 2/1 or 1/1 Treg/Teff ratio and until 1/16 to 1/32 ratio. Do not use single Treg/Teff ratio for the experiment (*see* in Subheading 4.3 in Results). Then plate APC and CFSE-labeled CD4– Teffs or CFSE-labeled PBMC, each well should have the same number of labeled cells as the number of Tregs in 1/1 ratio. It is convenient to mix human responder cells (CD4+ Teffs or PBMC cells) with corresponding number of washed CD3-coated beads prior to platting. For murine cells, add corresponding volume of pre-diluted anti-mouse CD3 antibodies to have final concentration about 1 μg/mL. Add cell culture media to have equal total volume in each well, 200 or 250 μL. Also plate cells for positive control (responder cells without Tregs) and negative control (responder cells without Tregs and without stimulation).
4. Incubate cells for 3–4 days (murine) or 4–6 days (human) at 37 °C.

3.6 Purity Control of Isolated Tregs

Immediately after platting of cells for suppression assay, stain leftover Tregs for LIVE/DEAD (Invitrogen), then stain for superficial markers: CD4, CD25, and CD127, and after fixation and permeabilization step, stain for CTLA4 and FOXP3, according to the manufacturer's instruction for FOXP3 antibody. Alternatively, freeze the small aliquots of isolated Tregs, consisting of 2000–10,000 cells, to stain them for listed markers later. This is convenient for clinical trials, when bulk of patients' Tregs evaluation is preferable. Evaluate phenotype of isolated Tregs with flow cytometry. These data serve as Treg purity controls in interpretation of suppression assay results (*see* Subheading 4.1 in Results).

3.7 Cryopreservation of Human and Murine Cells

Use CryoStor® CS5 cell cryopreservation media (Sigma) according to manufacturer's instructions for freezing, storage and thawing [9]. For healthy donor PBMC, the viability just after thawing should be about 98–99 %. Cells should also preserve the same phenotype and same division rate as they had before freezing. As an internal quality control, we use healthy donor PBMC cells in cell culture experiments only if they demonstrated less than 5 % of dead cells by Trypan blue evaluation after CFSE-labeling.

However, in clinical trials, some patients' cells may demonstrate notable levels of apoptosis (10–30 % after thawing), probably due to hyperactivation in vivo or due to the effects of immunosuppressive therapy in transplant recipients.

For Treg cryopreservation using very limited cell numbers, you may exclude all optional washing steps. Thus, 1 mL of CryoStor

media, pre-cooled on ice, can be used directly to wash out all leftover Tregs (it is about 10–50 μl in cell culture media) from their 15 mL tube, and to transfer washouts into cryotube. After thawing, Tregs may be stained in the same 15 ml tubes, to exclude cell losses by transfer. If a washing step could not be excluded, the supernatant should be removed by pipetting instead of pouring. With such modifications, we usually receive at least 500–1000 events in live cell gates for Treg evaluation from any leftover clinical Tregs (*see* Subheading 4.1 in Results).

3.8 Evaluation of Suppression Assay Results

Stain cells with CD4 and (optional) CD8 antibodies, fix them in 1 % formaldehyde if required, and proceed with flow cytometry. Set up FS-SS gate on live cells. CFSE-negative cells are Tregs and APC, and CFSE-labeled cells are responders. Gate on CFSE+CD4+ subset to evaluate CD4+ Teffs divisions, and on CFSE+ CD8+ (or CFSE+CD4−) subset to evaluate CD8+ Teffs divisions. If needed, use additional LIVE/DEAD staining prior to fixation. *See* Subheading 4.5 in Results for details.

3.9 Statistics and AUC Calculation

In Results, data are shown as min-max and mean ± SEM. For continuous variables with normal distribution, statistical significance was assessed by Student's *t*-test to compare two groups, ANOVA with Newman-Keuls multiple comparison post-test to compare three groups, and Pearson correlation assay to test correlations. For data not normally distributed, two groups of continuous variables were compared with the Mann Whitney *U* test, and three groups were compared with the Kruskal-Wallis test with Dunn's multiple comparison post-test. A two-tailed p value of <0.05 was considered statistically significant.

For AUC calculations (*see* details in Subheading 4.6, in Results), we used GraphPad Prism v.5.00. After calculation of standardized or normalized suppression (described in the main text), we chose "XY" table format, and placed numbers of Teffs per Treg as values on X axis and corresponding percent of standardized suppression as Y values column(s) (*see* corresponding examples in Table 3 and Figs. 8 and 9). For the subsequent calculations, we excluded all zero values of suppression in "no Tregs" ratios, and decreased variability of data by replacing all minor suppression data that were 3 % and less, to zero values. Therefore, nonsignificant and biologically irrelevant cellular variability such as 86 % vs. 89 % of divisions giving 1–2 % of standardized suppression had no effect on resulting data. Then we used an option "XY analyses, area under curve" with standard settings to obtain AUCs numbers, listed as "total peak area."

3.10 Ethics Statement

Pediatric liver and kidney allograft clinical studies were approved by the respective Institutional Review Board of each Center: CHOP-08-006311_CR1, CCHMC-2009-0018, and HSC-1000014523.

Adult liver allograft studies were approved by the Institutional Review Board of the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania (#810878). Animal studies (C57BL/6 and BALB/c mice, The Jackson Laboratory, Bar Harbor, ME) were approved by the Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee of The Children's Hospital of Philadelphia (#2010-6-561).

3.11 Processing of Human Cells from Healthy Donors and Transplant Recipients

PBMC-enriched apheresis product was obtained by leukapheresis of healthy volunteer donors, via the University of Pennsylvania Human Immunology Core. Specimens were collected according to the protocol approved by the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania Institutional Review Board, and informed consent was obtained from each donor. For pediatric liver and kidney allograft studies, PBMC were isolated from 32 mL of blood and shipped overnight at 4 °C to the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia (CHOP). For standardization, CHOP samples were also kept at 4 °C overnight. For adult liver allograft studies, PBMC were isolated from 45 to 50 mL of blood within a few hours of venipuncture, and kept overnight at 4 °C in cell culture media plus EDTA.

For all human Treg studies in this chapter, Tregs were isolated from PBMC using CD4+CD25+ regulatory Treg kits (Miltenyi Biotec). CD4+CD25– cells (Teffs) and CD4-depleted cells (APC), isolated with the same kit, were used in experiments with autologous cells. For some experiments, Teffs and APC were further cryopreserved to study combinations of autologous vs. allogeneic responders, or pre-transplant vs. post-transplant responders. In addition, for some experiments with healthy donor Tregs and responders, we used CD3-depleted and irradiated APC, isolated with CD3 MicroBeads (Miltenyi Biotec) according to the manufacturer's instructions. For all clinical studies, we did not irradiate APC.

CD4+CD25– Teffs, or aliquots of cryopreserved healthy donor PBMC, were CFSE-labeled, and stimulated with CD3-coated beads (OKT3 clone from Miltenyi, Dynabeads® M-450 tosylactivated beads from Invitrogen) using a 3.5:1 bead:cell ratio in most cases. With some responder cells, the optimal stimulation was adjusted in additional experiments, as described in Results, Subheading 3.3. Tregs and responder cells were cultured for 3–5 days (for clinical studies, we used 4 days) in cell media, consisting of RPMI-1640 plus 10 % heat-inactivated FBS, penicillin and streptomycin, and 2-mercapto-ethanol (100 μM). CD4+ and CD8+ cell divisions were determined by CFSE dilution. When noted, we co-stained Tregs and responder cells with additional markers of interest after suppression assay or labeled Tregs with CellTrace (Invitrogen) prior to suppression assay. We used 96-well U-bottom plates, and for experiments with low cell numbers (35,000 and less of human Tregs in 1/1 ratio) we used 96-well V-bottom plates.

4 Results

4.1 Treg Isolation and Purity Control

4.1.1 Need to Evaluate FOXP3 in Isolated CD4+CD25+ as Treg Purity Control

For many laboratories, the most common method of Treg isolation involves use of magnetic bead kits with CD4+ and CD25+ (high) markers. In normal murine samples, this method provides a stable and relatively pure (71–81 %, mean 77.1 ± 1.3) population of FOXP3+ cells, and CD4+CD25+ Treg isolation from healthy human donor PBMC can also be performed with satisfactory results (49–79 %, mean 64.7 ± 2.5), as detailed [10]. However, in murine models of autoimmune or inflammatory diseases, a significant percent of CD4+CD25+ cells are FOXP3– activated Teffs. In murine models, use of fluorescent tags, such as YFP/GFP-FOXP3 mice [3], can address this problem, but isolation of Tregs from clinical samples is restricted by use of nonspecific surface markers. Despite this, most human Treg studies do not provide data of FOXP3 expression in isolated human CD4+CD25+ cells, and are thus of limited value. Figure 1a shows two human Treg samples isolated sequentially, as indicated, from the same liver allograft recipient. In both cases, CD4+ and CD25+ purity after isolation was reasonably high and comparable (78–82 %), but the first sample had no suppressive function at all due to a very low percentage of FOXP3+ Tregs within isolated CD4+CD25+ cells (see below). Of note, this patient was diagnosed with acute allograft rejection 7 days after the blood sample collection. This example illustrates the need for human clinical Treg samples to be evaluated for not only CD4+CD25+, but, at least, for FOXP3 purity after isolation, to allow interpretation of suppression assay findings.

The Treg number is usually claimed to be one of the most limiting factors for such additional tests, but in our studies, we found that it is possible to freeze, thaw and evaluate Treg aliquots of just 2000–10,000 cells, and to perform good quality staining for CD4, CD25, and FOXP3 as well as any other Treg-associated markers of interest (*see* Subheading 3.3, and Fig. 1a and [10] for examples). This number of cells typically requires just a washout from tubes after the majority of Tregs were used for suppression assays.

4.1.2 Role of CTLA4 and an Absence of CD127 as Treg-Associated Markers

To improve Treg/FOXP3+ purity in human samples after isolation, some additional and potentially useful markers have been suggested. In our experience, CTLA4+ and CD127– had the most significant correlation with suppressive function of corresponding isolated Tregs (Fig. 1b and [10]), but use of these markers in clinical studies is not reasonable, due to extremely low Treg yield and inconsistent results for corresponding FOXP3+ expression (described in detail [10]). As a compromise, we included CD127 and CTLA4 expression in our current panel evaluating purity of Tregs after isolation. In a study liver transplant recipients, CD127 expression in isolated Tregs inversely correlated with all other Treg-associated markers, including MFI of FOXP3 (Fig. 1b).

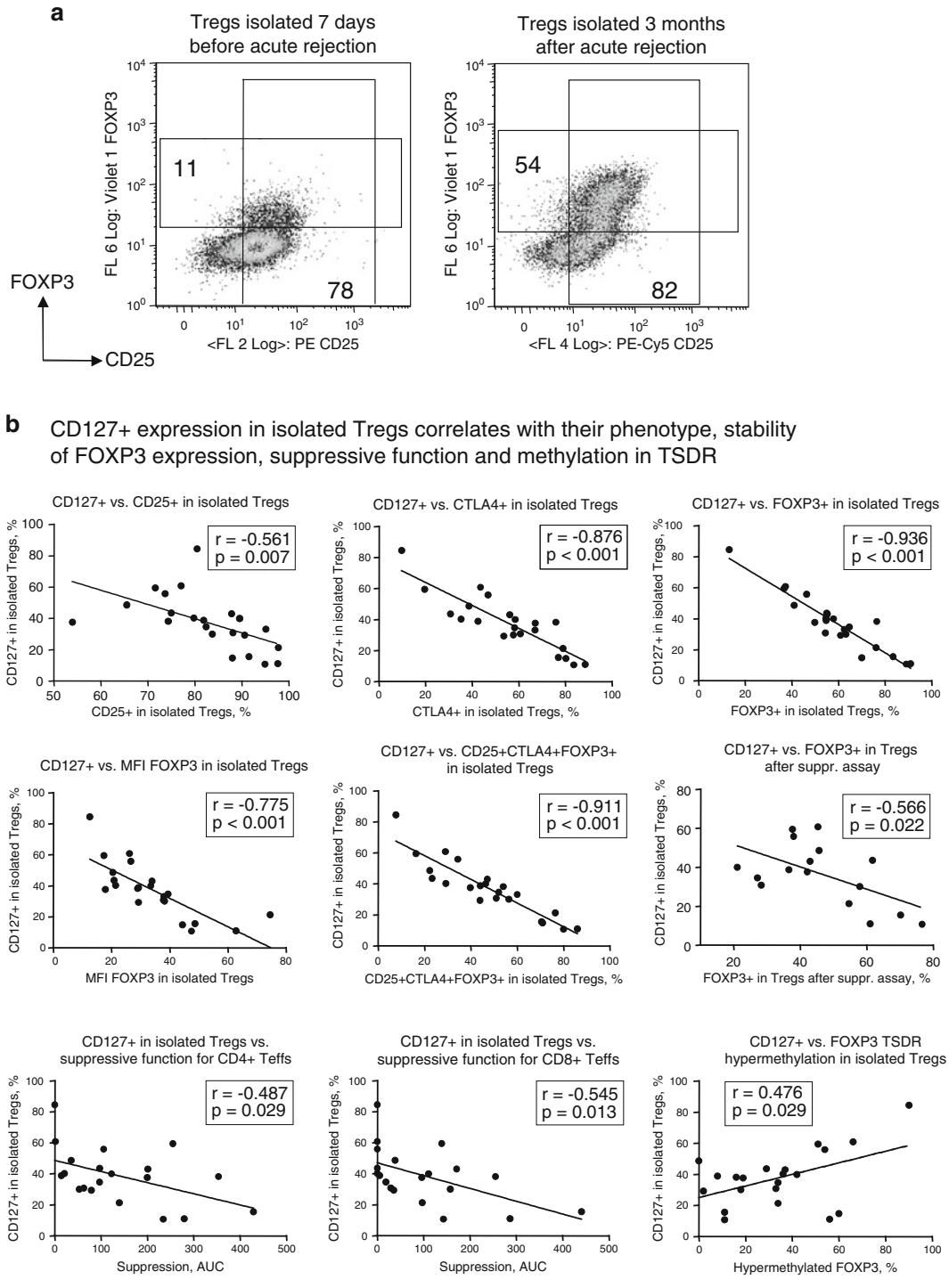


Fig. 1 Treg phenotypes after isolation and assays of their suppressive function. (**a**) Tregs were isolated from the same liver allograft recipient 7 days prior (*left*) and 3 months after an acute rejection episode (*right*) and stained for live/dead, CD4, CD25, and FOXP3. Gated CD4+ cells demonstrate comparable CD25+ expression, but very low FOXP3 level in pre-rejection sample. (**b**) Tregs were isolated from 8 liver allograft recipients pre-transplant, and then at 7–14 days, 3 months, and 1 year post-Tx. Aliquots of isolated Tregs were cryopreserved and stained for live/dead, CD4, CD25, CTLA4, FOXP3, and CD127, while freshly isolated Tregs were used for suppression assays with healthy donor's responder cells (PBMC). CD127 expression in isolated Tregs shows inverse correlations with many important Treg-associated markers and with suppressive function of these cells

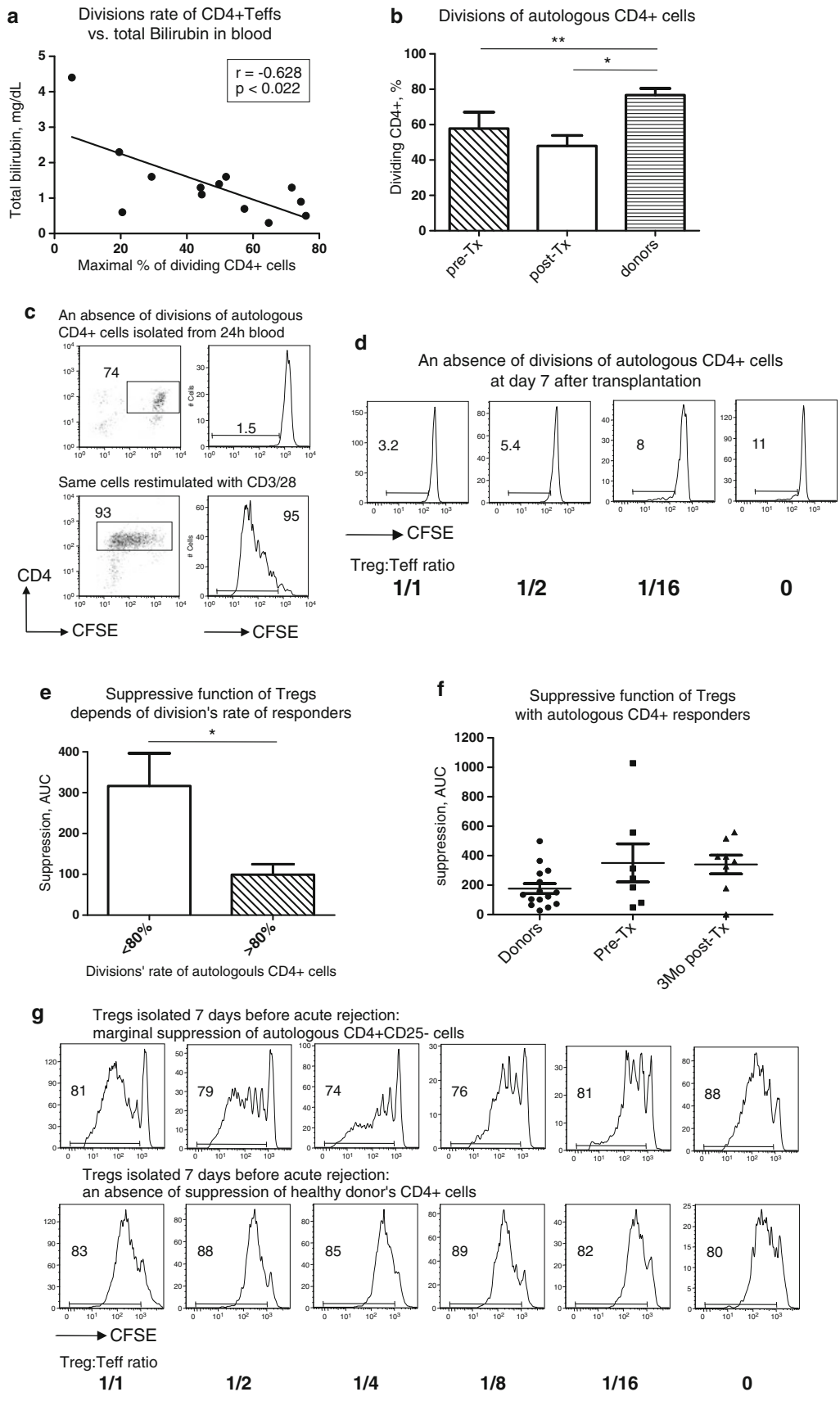
Moreover, CD127 also inversely correlated with stability of FOXP3 expression, evaluated as FOXP3+ in Tregs after 4 days of suppression assay, with suppressive function for CD4+ and CD8+ responders and with FOXP3 demethylation in the Treg-specific demethylated region (TSDR) (Fig. 1b).

4.2 Choice of Responder Cells for Suppression Assay

4.2.1 Problems with Use of Autologous Responder Cells in Clinical Samples

Use of autologous responder cells is often thought to be more physiologically appropriate, and avoids potential alloreactivity. However, autologous responders in Treg suppression assays have grave shortcomings that may lead to unsatisfactory results. First, a disadvantage of autologous responders is their dependence on pre-existing in vivo conditions. Multiple inflammatory and metabolic factors, medications and unidentified factors may affect the ability of CD4+ and CD8+ T cells to divide, as well as their resistance to Treg suppression, and also the costimulatory function of autologous APC. For example, we have noticed in our studies of liver transplant recipients that CD4+ Teff cell division was inversely correlated with total bilirubin levels in corresponding blood samples (Fig. 2a). We also observed a tendency to impaired cellular division in autologous CD4+ Teffs stimulated with CD3 and autologous CD4-depleted irradiated APC in liver transplant patients with hepatitis C, in comparison with the non-hepatitis group (data not shown). As a result of multiple complex factors, CD4+ Teff cellular division from liver transplant recipients did not reach levels obtained with healthy donor controls, before or after transplantation (Fig. 2b). Another problem may arise from

Fig. 2 Problems with use of autologous responder cells in Treg suppression assays. (**a**) Bilirubin levels in blood inversely correlated with Teff proliferation. CD4+CD25– Teffs were isolated from the same liver allograft recipients as in Fig. 1b (7–14 days and 3 months post-Tx), and stimulated with autologous CD4-depleted APC and anti-CD3 beads at 3.5/1 beads/Teff cell ratio for 4 days. Data of Teff proliferation was plotted against corresponding total bilirubin levels obtained at the same time point. (**b**) Allograft recipient CD4+ Teffs demonstrated impaired divisions in comparison with healthy donors cells. CD4+CD25– cells isolated from the same patients as shown at Fig. 1b (pre-Tx or 7–14 days and 3 months post-Tx) were stimulated as in (**a**), and their rates of division were compared with healthy donor CD4+CD25– Teffs stimulated under the same conditions. ANOVA with Newman-Keuls multiple comparison test was used for comparison. (**c**) Whole blood sample from a patient listed for lung transplant was shipped overnight at room temperature, and CD4+CD25– cells were isolated and stimulated as in *panels* (**a**) and (**b**). Four days later, Teffs were alive, but showed a lack of proliferation (*top*). At day 4, CD3/28 beads were added at 1/1 bead/cell ratio, and 4 days later Teffs demonstrated restored proliferation. (**d**) Treg suppression assay was performed with Tregs from liver transplant allograft recipient, with autologous Teffs and APC, stimulated as in *panel* (**a**). Autologous cells, collected 7 days post-Tx, exhibited a lack of proliferation, making evaluation of Tregs suppressive function impossible. (**e**) Results of autologous suppression assays of healthy donors and liver transplant patient Tregs (pre-Tx) were grouped according to maximal rate of CD4+CD25– divisions. When Teffs had impaired proliferation, corresponding Treg function seemed to be higher. Data were analyzed by Mann–Whitney test. (**f**) Results of autologous suppression assays of healthy donors and liver transplant patient Tregs (pre-Tx and 3 months post-Tx) were compared. Healthy donor Tregs tended to demonstrate worse suppressive function than patient Tregs, although data did not reach significant p value (Kruskal-Wallis test). (**g**) Tregs depicted in Fig. 1a on *left*, demonstrated marginal suppression in assay with autologous (*top*), but not with healthy donor responders (*bottom*). For all data, $*p<0.05$ and $**p<0.001$


a
Divisions rate of CD4+Teffs
vs. total Bilirubin in blood
r = -0.628
p < 0.022
Total bilirubin, mg/dL
Maximal % of dividing CD4+ cells
b
Divisions of autologous CD4+ cells
Dividing CD4+, %
pre-Tx
post-Tx
donors
c
An absence of divisions of autologous
CD4+ cells isolated from 24h blood
74
1.5
Same cells restimulated with CD3/28
93
95
CD4
CFSE
CFSE
d
An absence of divisions of autologous CD4+ cells
at day 7 after transplantation
3.2
5.4
8
11
CFSE
Treg:Teff ratio
1/1
1/2
1/16
0
e
Suppressive function of Tregs
depends of division's rate of responders
Suppression, AUC
<80%
>80%
Divisions' rate of autologouls CD4+ cells
f
Suppressive function of Tregs
with autologous CD4+ responders
suppression, AUC
Donors
Pre-Tx
3Mo post-Tx
g
Tregs isolated 7 days before acute rejection:
marginal suppression of autologous CD4+CD25- cells
81
79
74
76
81
88
Tregs isolated 7 days before acute rejection:
an absence of suppression of healthy donor's CD4+ cells
83
88
85
89
82
80
CFSE
Treg:Teff ratio
1/1
1/2
1/4
1/8
1/16
0

technical factors, such as loss of co-stimulatory activity in autologous APC, isolated from overnight-shipped whole blood in multicenter clinical studies (Fig. 2c). The in vivo effects of immunosuppressive therapy in freshly isolated early post-transplant samples can become so prominent that autologous responder cells may become unable to divide with or without the additional impact of Tregs (Fig. 2d).

Importantly, differences in responder cell division rates are problematic in Treg suppression assays, and not off-set by standardization formulas that subtract responder cells divisions in the presence of Tregs from responder cell division in the absence of Tregs, divided by divisions without Treg. By this calculation, the suppressive function of Tregs becomes substantially overestimated in assays with low baseline responder cell division, and vice versa (Fig. 2e and reviewed in ref. 11). Therefore, use of autologous responder cells in clinical Treg studies can be misleading. Any condition that affects the ability of the responder cells to divide can skew the measured suppressive Treg function and lead to overestimation of Treg suppressive function (Fig. 2f).

4.2.2 Use of Healthy Donor Responders

In contrast to autologous Teffs, healthy donor responder cells are convenient for standardization, when multiple small aliquots ($1–3 \times 10^6$ cells per tube, 100–200 vials for study) of PBMC from the same donor may be preserved in liquid nitrogen. In preliminary experiments, we tested PBMC from different donors and the same Tregs, and found that any effect of HLA mismatch for human suppression assays with polyclonal CD3 stimulation was negligible. In other words, "strong" Tregs remained very suppressive with any healthy donor's responder cells, and vice versa. Therefore, to assess patient Treg suppressive function objectively, the suppression assay should be standardized as efficiently as possible, excluding potential confounders from autologous Teffs, leaving patient Tregs to be the only remaining variable in the experimental conditions.

We have noted the practical value of using healthy donor PBMC responder cells in our pediatric allograft cross-sectional study, given the impaired Treg function in patients with higher calcineurin inhibitor (CNI) levels in comparison with low-CNI levels, and correlations of Treg suppressive function with their CTLA4+ and CD127– phenotypes [10]. In addition, ongoing studies of adult liver transplant recipients indicated additional benefits of using standardized, healthy donor PBMC responder cells, Thus, these patients' Tregs showed a marginal suppression with autologous responder cells, but an absence of any suppression, or even some stimulation, with healthy donor PBMC responder cells at 7 days prior to an episode of acute rejection (Fig. 2g). The phenotype of these cells after isolation is shown in Fig. 1a. We found that 10 % of remnant FOXP3+ cells were still able to suppress proliferation of in vivo immunosuppressed autologous responders,

while normal responder cells provided far more plausible and clinically relevant results, namely decreased Treg suppressive function 1 week ahead of an acute rejection episode.

4.2.3 Use of Combinations of Autologous Cells to Obtain Additional Data

Using combinations of a patient's Treg with cryopreserved autologous responder cells can be useful to study the effects of immunosuppression protocols, including responder cell resistance to Treg suppression. Thus, 3 months after the episode of acute rejection, Tregs from the patient depicted at Figs. 1a and 2f were 54 % FOXP3+ after isolation, and restored their suppressive phenotype with healthy donor responder cells (Fig. 3a, top row). A hyper-activated phenotype of cryopreserved pre-rejection CD4+ Teffs from this patient led to substantial apoptotic cell death and impaired cell division using autologous, post-rejection APC (seemingly, due to shortage of co-stimulation for alloreactive clones). However, use of pre-rejection APC in combination with pre-rejection CD4+ Teffs not only improved Teff viability and partially restored their division rate, but also showed enhanced resistance to Treg suppression post-rejection (Fig. 3a, middle and bottom rows, respectively).

Cryopreservation of non-hyper-activated autologous cells is usually free from additional pro-apoptotic effects. These cells survive freezing and thawing well and exhibit neither signs of impaired viability nor defects in proliferation. Thus, comparison of suppression curves of post-transplant CD4+ Teffs with their pre-transplant counterparts (Fig. 3b, top and second rows) clearly shows that post-transplant CNI- and steroid-treated Teffs have diminished capacity for cell division. At the same time, pre-transplant Teff cells do not demonstrate enhanced resistance to post-transplant autologous Treg suppression (i.e., 1/1 and 1/2 ratios are the same despite enhanced proliferation at low Tregs ratios). If post-transplant APC are replaced by pre-transplant APC, free of in vivo immunosuppression effects (Fig. 3b, top vs. third rows), suppression curves show evident increases in cellular resistance to Treg suppression with the same divisional capabilities of post-transplant CD4+ Teffs. This effect can be further studied, e.g., using co-stimulation blocking antibodies, analysis of pre- vs. post-transplant APC phenotypes and their cellular composition, and by investigation of soluble factors released into the cell media. Finally, comparison of suppression curves with post-transplant APC and Teffs vs. pre-transplant APC and Teffs verified these observations, namely that pre-transplant responders had enhanced Teff division and increased resistance to post-transplant autologous Treg suppression. To study these mechanisms in detail, healthy donor Tregs can be used in parallel with patient Tregs and the same combinations of patient responder cells. At the same time, use of healthy donor responder cells can serve as an internal control, providing standardized conditions for evaluation of a patient's "polyclonal" Treg suppressive function.

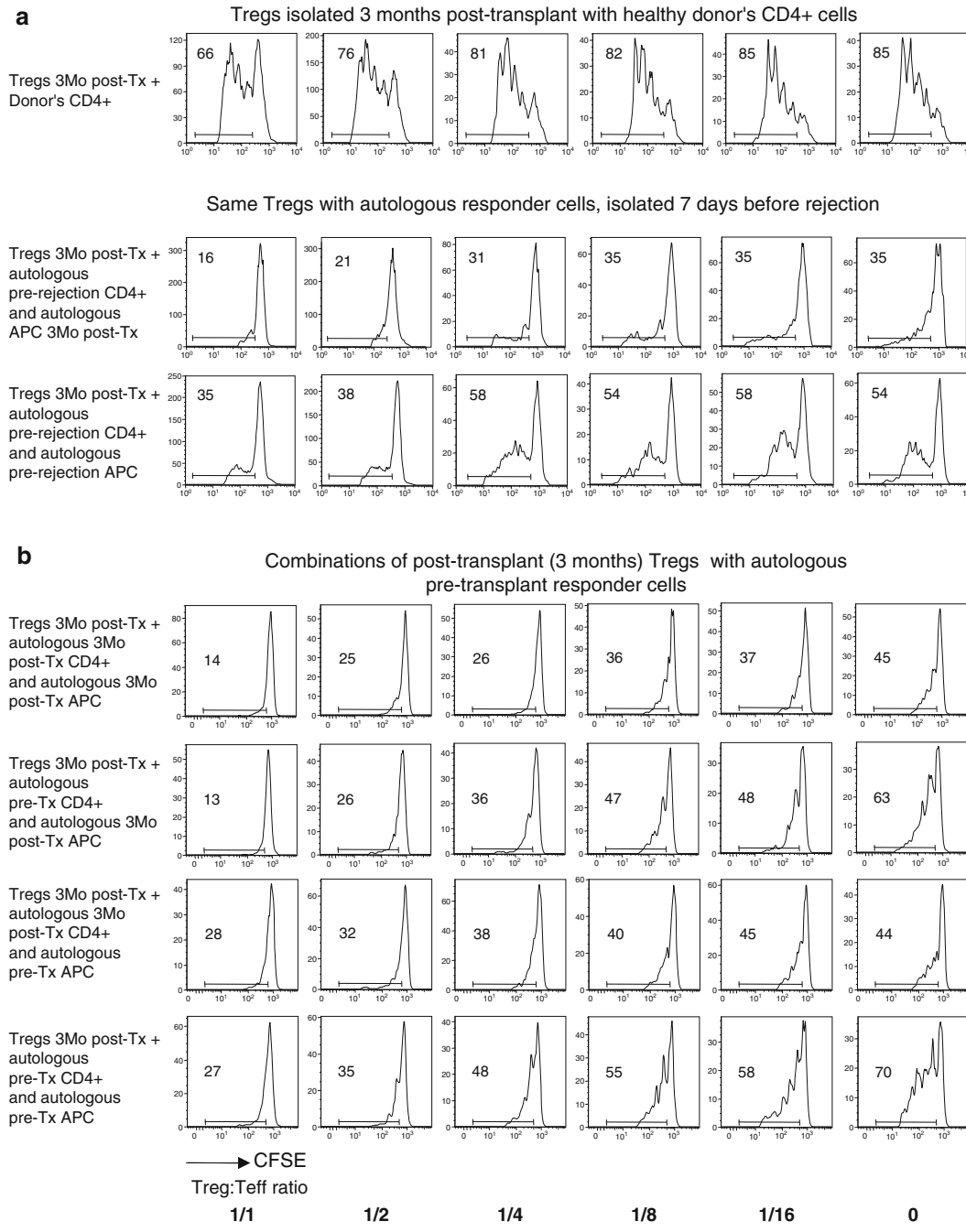


Fig. 3 Use of different combinations of autologous or allogeneic responders to evaluate Treg function (**a**) Tregs shown in Fig. 1a (*right*) demonstrated suppressive function with healthy donor responders (*top*). Combination of pre-rejection autologous Teffs (*middle*) or pre-rejection autologous Teffs and APC (*bottom*) showed that pre-rejection APC provided better co-stimulation for Teffs and some resistance to Treg suppression in comparison with 3 months post-Tx APC. (**b**) Combination of 3 months post-Tx Tregs either with autologous responders collected the same time (*top*) or pre-Tx. Pre-Tx Teffs demonstrate better divisions (*second row*), pre-Tx APC confer increased resistance of Teffs to Treg suppression (*third row*), and combination of both pre-Tx responders (Teffs and APC) demonstrate sufficiently enhanced Teff cell proliferation, as well as increased resistance to Tregs (*bottom row*)

4.3 Standardization of Conditions to Receive Comparable Results of Suppression Assays

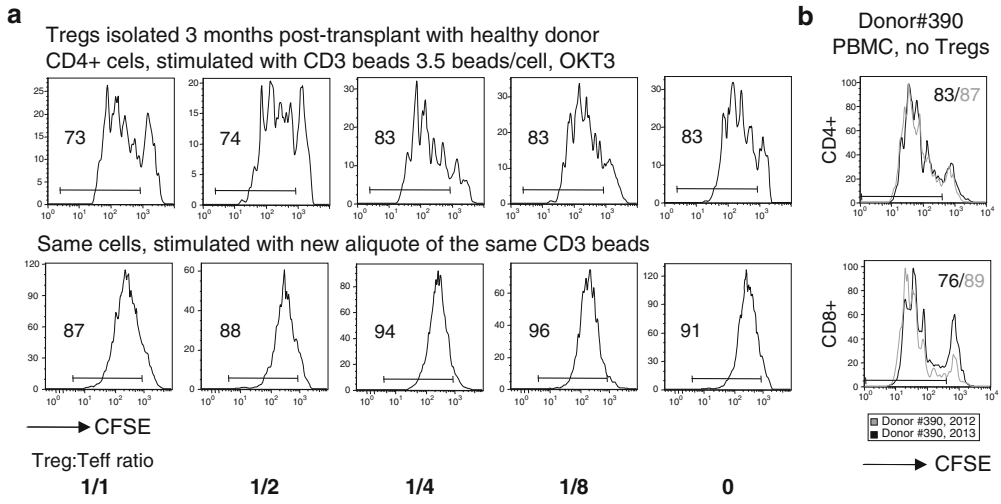
4.3.1 Choice of Healthy Donor and Detection of Optimal Stimulation

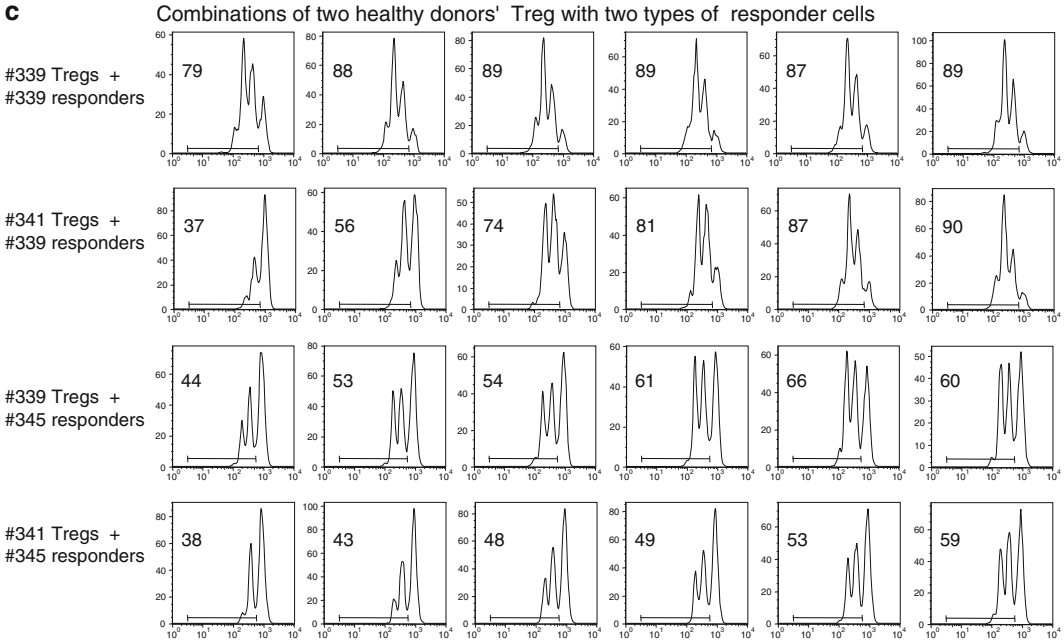
In contrast to the near-uniform proliferative potential of murine responder cells that, under standard conditions, are only affected by technical factors (cell isolation, cell media, CD3 antibody vendor lot), human PBMC responders do not provide such consistency. In our experience, studies involving human Treg suppression assays require serial preliminary tests determining PBMC responsiveness to stimulation, in order to detect the optimum range of stimulation for each donor. The most ideal stimulatory condition for a Treg suppression assay is located slightly below the level where responder PBMC reach a plateau of maximal division. Thus, if a given donor's PBMC divisions are 70 % at 2/1 CD3-bead/cell ratio, 80 % at 2.5/1 and 85 % at 3/1 and above, then 2.5/1 may be the optimal stimulation for a Treg suppression assay.

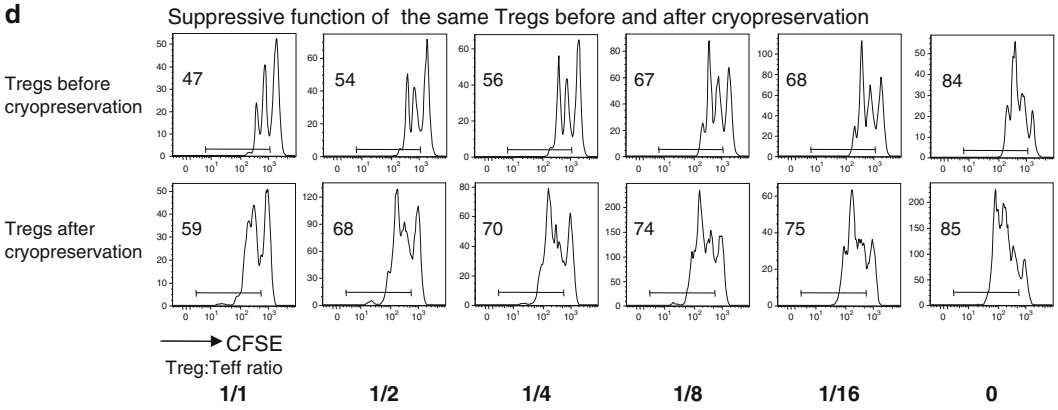
A second important factor for donor selection is the high consistency of his/her PBMC divisions, evaluated in different cryopreserved aliquots obtained from the same blood sample. Moreover, cryopreserved cells should not demonstrate any significant differences from the corresponding freshly isolated cells, which ensure appropriate cryopreservation-thawing techniques and therefore limit inter-assay variability in experimental conditions. In our current cryopreservation method (Materials and Methods), the majority of healthy donors satisfy these criteria. Comparisons of PBMC from 2 to 5 different donors, with a range of stimulatory conditions within the same experiment, will help to detect persons whose cells are mostly distinct from other donors in their stimulation/co-stimulation requirements. Usually, these donors are not an appropriate choice for use as standardized healthy donor responders as they often demonstrate significant variability after cryopreservation, impaired cell division, or enhanced resistance to Treg suppression. When the best donor and range of optimal stimulatory conditions are established, 2–3 suppression assays with autologous and allogeneic Tregs will help to adjust stimulatory requirements to ensure high division rate with low Treg ratio, and with suppression of division with high Treg ratios. In the following clinical study, division of cryopreserved aliquots of responder cells can be used to maintain standardized conditions for subsequent suppression assays. This is very useful when new aliquots of anti-CD3-coated beads need to be re-calibrated (Fig. 4a), or cell culture media or other reagents need to be replaced, etc.

4.3.2 Cryopreserved vs. Freshly Isolated Responder Cells

Taking into account the potential problems related to cryopreservation, the idea of using the same person as a source of freshly prepared standard PBMC responders for small trials (regarding that just 3 mL of blood is usually sufficient for this purpose) may be an attractive alternative. However, in our experience, healthy donor cells serially collected at different times may not be yield comparable results (Fig. 4b). Thus, well-cryopreserved aliquots of the same PBMC specimen remain the better alternative for standardized investigation of Treg function.


a
Tregs isolated 3 months post-transplant with healthy donor
CD4+ cels, stimulated with CD3 beads 3.5 beads/cell, OKT3
73
74
83
83
83
Same cells, stimulated with new aliquote of the same CD3 beads
87
88
94
96
91
CFSE
Treg:Teff ratio
1/1
1/2
1/4
1/8
0
b
Donor#390
PBMC, no Tregs
CD4+
83/87
CD8+
76/89
Donor #390, 2012
Donor #390, 2013
CFSE


c
Combinations of two healthy donors' Treg with two types of responder cells
#339 Tregs +
#339 responders
79
88
89
89
87
89
#341 Tregs +
#339 responders
37
56
74
81
87
90
#339 Tregs +
#345 responders
44
53
54
61
66
60
#341 Tregs +
#345 responders
38
43
48
49
53
59


d
Suppressive function of the same Tregs before and after cryopreservation
Tregs before
cryopreservation
47
54
56
67
68
84
Tregs after
cryopreservation
59
68
70
74
75
85
CFSE
Treg:Teff ratio
1/1
1/2
1/4
1/8
1/16
0

4.3.3 Sensitivity of Suppression Assay Depends of Responders

The optimal power to detect differences in Treg suppressive function may be obtained from responders that showed active divisions without Tregs, and are easily suppressed at high Treg ratios. In Fig. 4c, Tregs from two healthy donors were evaluated in combination with sets of two responder cells. With #339 responders, #341 Tregs demonstrate substantially stronger suppressive function, while #345 responders, due to a "narrow" interval within 1/1-0 Treg/Teffs ratios, cannot serve as a sensitive tool for Treg evaluation. Importantly, as mentioned above, the mutual relation of "stronger" vs. "weaker" Tregs (i.e., #341 and #339 Tregs, respectively, here) did not change when combinations of autologous or allogeneic, resistant or easily suppressed cells were used; therefore, any appropriate healthy donors cells can be used for this analysis, with results differing only in sensitivity.

4.3.4 Use of Cryopreserved Human Tregs

For clinical trials, when arrival of new samples for functional Treg tests is often unpredictable, and can occur after hours or interrupt ongoing experiments, use of cryopreserved PBMC for Treg isolation (or use of isolated cryopreserved Tregs) with later functional evaluation at a convenient time is a highly desirable option. Unfortunately, we have found that while murine Tregs sustain cryopreservation well and do not demonstrate substantial differences in their suppressive function in vitro and in vivo (in this paper [12], part of in vitro tests and all in vivo Tregs tests we performed using cryopreserved murine Tregs), most of freshly isolated human Tregs demonstrate impaired suppressive function after cryopreservation (Fig. 4d). As we were unable to stabilize the suppressive function of cryopreserved human Tregs, even those derived from healthy donors, we aimed to avoid introducing such variability into our clinical trials. However, in our experience, in vitro-expanded human Tregs sustain cryopreservation well, and their suppressive function, as well response to epigenetic compounds, were comparable between fresh and cryopreserved counterparts [13]. Indeterminate changes in functional activity of freshly isolated vs. cryopreserved human

Fig. 4 Factors affecting standardization of Treg suppression assays. (**a**) Tregs isolated at 3 months post-Tx from a liver allograft recipient demonstrated some suppression with healthy donor's responders when stimulated with current aliquot of anti-CD3 beads (*top*), but a new aliquot of anti-CD3 beads used in the same 3.5/1 ratio, clearly over-stimulated responder cells, which led to extinction of Treg suppressive function (*bottom*). (**b**) PBMC from the same healthy donor, collected with 1-year period, demonstrate differences in their divisions. Both PBMC samples were cryopreserved and used within the same experiment. (**c**) Selection of the best responder cells for human Treg suppression assay. While use of both #339 and #345 responders demonstrate that #341 Tregs have better suppressive function than #339 Tregs, responder cells with larger range between 1/1 and 0 Tregs ratios (*top two rows*, #339 responder) provide better sensitivity to discriminate Treg function. (**d**). Impaired function of human Treg function after cryopreservation. While cryopreserved human Tregs were viable and had no evident changes in their phenotype when evaluated by flow cytometry after thawing, they demonstrated impaired suppressive function

Tregs does not preclude their use in experiments where the same cells are using as a control and testing subsets, as for studying of compounds affecting Tregs, providing that fresh Treg cells demonstrate similar results in verification experiments.

4.3.5 Use of Decreased Cell Numbers in Suppression Assay

Importantly, the number of available Tregs is one of the most critical limiting factors not only in clinical trials, but also in some murine disease models. Therefore, we tested suppressive function using different starting Treg numbers, while Treg/Teffs ratios were preserved. In our conditions, murine cells stimulated with irradiated CD3-depleted splenocytes and soluble anti-CD3 antibodies, had markedly diminished proliferation at concentration of APC 30,000 cells/well or less, likely by progressive deficiency of co-stimulation. If the concentration of murine APC was maintained at 50,000 per well, Treg suppression assays showed generally comparable results in conditions from 50,000 to 20,000 cells/well at 1/1 ratios (Table 1). These results also suggest that the standard conditions of a murine Treg suppression assay, soluble factors produced by murine Tregs may operate locally in paracrine manner. However, they are unlikely to play an important role in modification of culture conditions affecting distant responder cells within the same well, since the shapes of Treg suppression curves did not differ when 50,000 or 20,000 Tregs were used in the same 200 μl total volumes.

Results of similar cellular titration with human Tregs do not provide such reproducible results due to high variability, but we

Table 1
Effects of different startingnumbers of cells in murine Treg suppression assays

Concentration, cells per well	Divisions of CD4+ Teffs at corresponding Treg/Teff ratio, %				
	1/1	1/2	1/4	1/8	0
50,000	29	45.4	67.2	77.4	93.7
40,000	27.8	**32.3**	58.1	75.9	94.8
30,000	**20.9**	**35.8**	63.1	80	96.4
25,000	30.8	41.6	**47.5**	73.1	97.3
20,000	26.8	42.5	60	79.8	95.7

Treg suppression assays were performed using 20, 25, 30, 40, and 50×10^3 of Tregs/Teffs per well in 1/1 ratios. Soluble anti-CD3 mAbs were added to final concentration of 1 μg/ml, and each well had 50×10^3 of irradiated CD3-depleted APC. The final volume of culture media in each well was equal to 200 μl, and the same U-bottom plate was used. Values that considerably differ from corresponding counterparts are bolded. This experiment was performed twice with similar results

have not observed significant differences in suppression function at 50,000 to 35,000 cells/well. At smaller numbers, 15,000–20,000 cells/well at 1/1 ratio in V-bottom plates, human Tregs tend to show an enhanced suppression in comparison with higher cellularity controls, but pipetting inaccuracies in serial dilutions, and therefore variability of results within duplicates, increase. As a practical approach, we routinely use 30,000–35,000 human Tregs at a 1/1 ratio, which allows to obtain more data from clinical samples with restricted blood volume or from post-transplant immunosuppression lymphopenic samples, but still provides reasonable accuracy in cell counting and pipetting.

4.3.6 Use of a Single Treg-Responder Cell Ratio if Treg Cell Numbers Are Limiting

Shortage of available Tregs in clinical studies often lead to attempts of researchers to save cells using just one given ratio in suppression assay for all samples. In our opinion, this approach has significant shortcomings. First, equal Treg function at one given ratio does not mean true equal function. Thus, in high Treg/Teffs ratios, when suppression is maximal and responders are not resistant, "weaker" Tregs can reach the same levels of feasible suppression as the "stronger" Tregs, and apparent differences in that case can be observed only when number of Teffs per one Treg increases (examples with raw data, Supplemental materials of [12]). Conversely, at lowest Treg/Teff ratios, suppression curves from Tregs with different suppression capabilities may merge together due to already equally diminished effects of suppression (Fig. 4, C 1/16 ratios at two top rows). Therefore, use of serial Tregs/Teffs dilutions increase the resolution of suppression assays, by increasing data for comparison and by leveling results of small pipetting errors with low cell numbers. Integrating curves of suppressive function over all measured ratios may additionally increase statistical power (see below).

4.4 Common Problems with Drug Testing

4.4.1 Compound Has no Specificity for Tregs

Since therapeutic manipulation of Tregs is an important area of interest, the effects of numerous compounds on Treg function have been tested. Unfortunately, the design of some studies precludes unambiguous interpretation of the results. One of the most frequent problems is the absence of any experiments showing the specificity of a given compound on Tregs vs. other cells, such as Teffs, especially for a compound that compromises Treg function. Figure 5a shows the results of Treg suppression assay with a chemically active compound isolated from Australian pigweed [14] and suggested to have a detrimental effect on Treg functionality. Murine Tregs, preincubated with as little as 400 nM of this compound, demonstrated impaired suppressive function in comparison with Tregs pre-incubated with inactive control. However, such results cannot be interpreted as a Treg-related or Treg-specific effect, as murine Teffs, pretreated with the same compound, also showed impaired division (Fig. 5b). Thus, despite the absence of evident cell toxicity at the tested concentrations of active

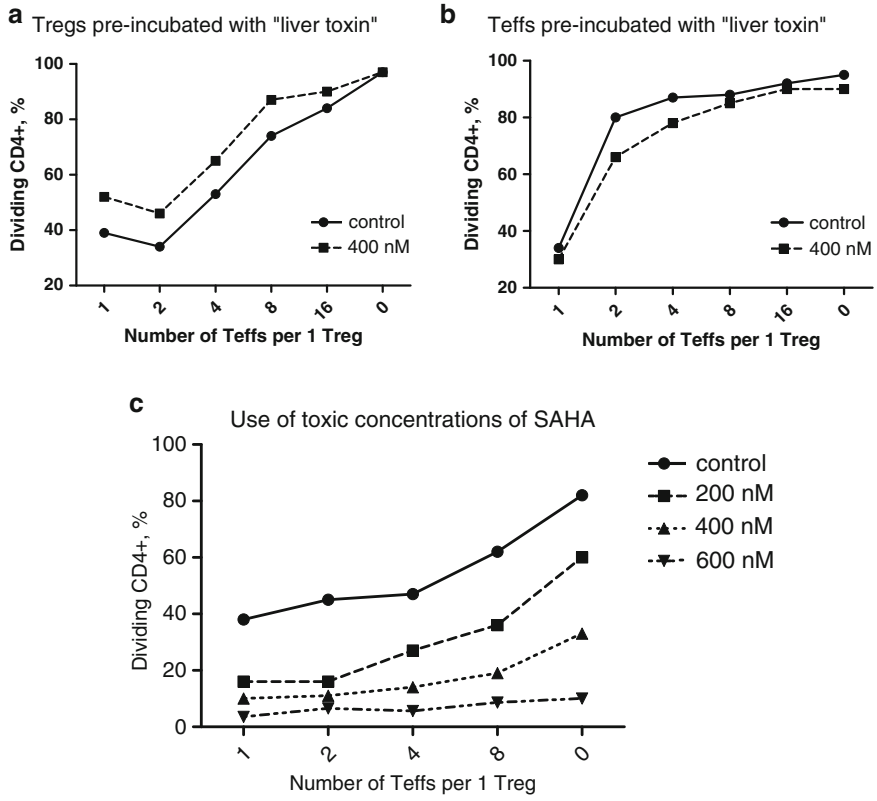


Fig. 5 Use of Treg suppression assay to evaluate compounds suggested to affect Treg function. Murine Tregs (**a**) or Teffs (**b**) were preincubated with a chemically active compound isolated from Australian pigweed plant, or with control inactive compound, for 2 h, washed twice and tested in a Treg suppression assay. In preliminary experiments, 400 nM of compound did not show any evident toxic effects during 3 days of culture of murine splenocytes. While data show impaired Treg suppression (**a**), additional data (**b**) demonstrated impaired division of pretreated CD4+CD25– Teffs, suggesting the effect of the compound is not specific for Tregs. Each experiment was performed twice with different concentrations of compounds and similar results. (**c**) Human Tregs, CD4+CD25– Teffs and CD3-depleted irradiated APC were incubated with different concentrations of SAHA for 4 days. As the concentrations of SAHA used directly inhibited Teff division, a finding of enhanced Treg function due to SAHA treatment cannot be distinguished from direct inhibitory effect of SAHA on responder cells, and therefore no reliable conclusions can be derived from such experiments

compound, a given compound can impair T cell division rate and the functional ability of T cells without compromising their viability, and therefore does not specify a Treg-mediated effect, at least during these preliminary in vitro experiments.

4.4.2 Compound Directly Affects Responder Cells

Another common problem in study design using compounds suggested to enhance Treg function is the use of reagents that directly suppress T cell divisions and/or disrupt APC co-stimulatory function in the suppression assay, when all three cellular participants (Tregs, Teffs, and APC) are treated together. In that case, effects on Tregs (stimulation of function and therefore decrease of

responder cell divisions) cannot be distinguished from effects on responders (direct inhibition of responder divisions). Figure 5c shows results of in vitro human suppression assay with increasing concentrations of the clinically approved HDACi, SAHA. A gradually decreased rate of Teff divisions corresponded with increased direct effect of SAHA on responder cells (clearly seen at zero-Treg ratios, Fig. 5c). Therefore, in this design, the data cannot be attributed to effects of SAHA on Treg function. For such experiments, it is reasonable to perform a series of preliminary tests to establish the concentration of compound that has no obvious effect on responder cell proliferation. For murine cells, these preliminary tests are usually not problematic since they usually yield a reasonably narrow range of optimal concentrations that maintain as long as animals, operator and assay conditions are unchanged. However, with human cells, we found very high individual variability in such concentrations (Table 2). To overcome this problem, in human Treg suppression assays we test each compound at 2–4 different concentrations, and choose the one that shows no effects on

Table 2
Results of preliminary tests to establish range of concentrations of epigenetic compounds that do not affect Teff division in the absence of Treg cells

	Decitabine (DNMTi)				Valproic acid (HDACi)				
	Donor and results: toxic effect, %				Donor and results: toxic effect, %				
	Donor1	Donor 3	Donor 5		Donor 1	Donor 2	Donor 4	Donor 5	Donor 6
15.6 nM	*n/t*	*n/t*	**0**	**15.6 µM**	*n/t*	*n/t*	*n/t*	**0**	*n/t*
31.25 nM	*n/t*	*n/t*	**7.6**	**31.25 µM**	*n/t*	**2.1**	*n/t*	**0**	**3.5**
62.5 nM	*n/t*	*n/t*	**5.8**	**62.5 µM**	*n/t*	**7.6**	*n/t*	**3**	**4**
0.125 µM	*n/t*	*n/t*	**9.34**	**0.125 mM**	*n/t*	**10.5**	*n/t*	**2.7**	**2.7**
0.25 µM	*n/t*	**14.7**	**13.75**	**0.25 mM**	*n/t*	**25.4**	**5.6**	**7.8**	*n/t*
0.5 µM	*n/t*	**17.3**	*n/t*	**0.5 mM**	**11.5**	*n/t*	**13**	*n/t*	*n/t*
1 µM	*n/t*	**19.7**	*n/t*	**1.0 mM**	**46.5**	*n/t*	*n/t*	*n/t*	*n/t*
3.42 µM	**8.4**	*n/t*	*n/t*						
6.84 µM	**14.7**	*n/t*	*n/t*						
13.69 µM	**10.4**	*n/t*	*n/t*						
27.38 µM	**15.5**	*n/t*	*n/t*						
54.75 µM	**17.4**	*n/t*	*n/t*						

Healthy donor's CD4+CD25– Teffs were CFSE labeled, incubated with irradiated autologous CD4-depleted APC and with listed concentrations of compounds. Differences between divisions rate in control (no compound) vs. tested concentrations are shown as "Toxic effect, %." "n/t"—not tested

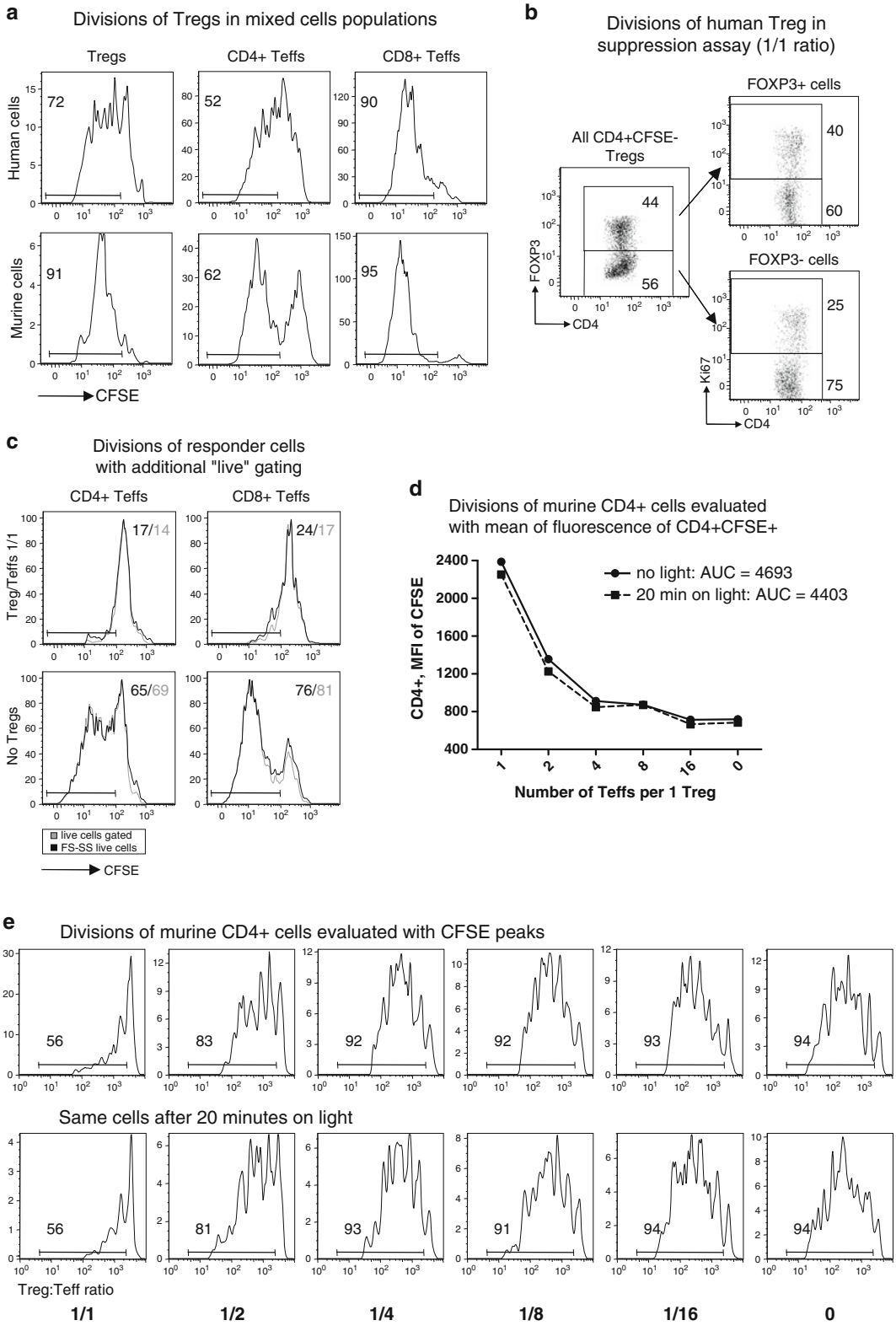
responders in the absence of Tregs. Even this design, carefully controlled for cell viability (toxic effects) and with elimination of results that are not related to Tregs (if direct effects on responders' division rates were observed), it is not ensured that effects are indeed Treg intrinsic. In that case, the validation experiments with Tregs, pretreated separately [13], and/or confirmatory in vivo experiments [12] with similar results, should be performed.

4.5 Readout of Suppression Assay

4.5.1 Thymidine Incorporation vs. CFSE Dilution

For decades, thymidine incorporation has been considered as a "gold standard" for MLR assays, and, subsequently, as a readout for Treg suppression assays. Multiple data showed an absence of Treg divisions upon anti-CD3 stimulation (or even with dual CD3/CD28 stimulation with soluble antibodies, plate-bound antibodies or with CD3/28 beads). These data led to assertions that all divisional activity, evaluated with thymidine incorporation, originated from Teff cells. However, this assumption of Tregs non-division is true only in the absence of Teffs in the suppression assay. In mixed cell populations, such as PBMC, lymph node cells or splenocytes (Fig. 6a), both murine and human Tregs divide well, and their division rate is usually even higher than in CD4+ Teffs, and sometimes approaches the division rate of CD8+ responders. The same is true for Treg suppression assays: use of two different fluorochromes allows for the evaluation of the division of responder and Treg cells in murine or human assays [15]. Similarly to murine cells, Ki-67 staining is also highly positive in human Tregs after suppression assays, especially for cells with stable FOXP3 expression that retain the Treg phenotype during the 4–5 days of assay (Fig. 6b). Therefore, when thymidine incorporation is employed in Treg suppression assays, data reflect division of both Tregs and Teffs, with additional confounding factors such as different Treg/Teffs ratios and level of suppression toward Teffs. These factors cannot be separated by this technique. Another important concern is that thymidine incorporation provides data of cellular division evaluated just within the last day of assay, while maximal suppression may occur within the first hours of Treg/Teff contact [16]. In contrast to thymidine-based assays, dilution of CFSE (or similar reagents) allows evaluation of cell division by responders and also, if needed, Tregs. An investigator can also perform co-staining with

Fig. 6 Different approaches to the analysis of Treg suppression assay data. (**a**) Human (*top*) and murine (*bottom*) Treg division in mixed cell populations consisting of PBMC (*top*) or splenocytes (*bottom*). Cells were stimulated with CD3, without addition of IL-2. Percent of dividing cells is shown. (**b**) Human Treg division in 4 day suppression assays, 1/1 ratio. Tregs with stable FOXP3+ phenotype upregulated Ki-67 better than Tregs that lost FOXP3. (**c**) Differences in cell division when live cells were gated according to FS-SS properties (*black histograms*), or when FS-SS gating was complemented with live/dead staining (*grey histograms*). Differences in CFSE mean fluorescence (**d**) or in percent of dividing cells (**e**) of the same cells after 20 min of light exposure of murine cells in Treg suppression assay


a
Divisions of Tregs in mixed cells populations
Tregs
CD4+ Teffs
CD8+ Teffs
Human cells
Murine cells
72
52
90
91
62
95
CFSE
b
Divisions of human Treg in suppression assay (1/1 ratio)
All CD4+CFSE- Tregs
FOXP3
CD4
44
56
FOXP3+ cells
40
60
FOXP3- cells
25
75
Ki67
CD4
c
Divisions of responder cells with additional "live" gating
CD4+ Teffs
CD8+ Teffs
Treg/Teffs 1/1
No Tregs
17/14
24/17
65/69
76/81
live cells gated
FS-SS live cells
CFSE
d
Divisions of murine CD4+ cells evaluated with mean of fluorescence of CD4+CFSE+
CD4+, MFI of CFSE
no light: AUC = 4693
20 min on light: AUC = 4403
Number of Teffs per 1 Treg
e
Divisions of murine CD4+ cells evaluated with CFSE peaks
56
83
92
92
93
94
Same cells after 20 minutes on light
56
81
93
91
94
94
Treg:Teff ratio
1/1
1/2
1/4
1/8
1/16
0

CD4 or CD8 antibodies, or study additional responder subsets such as naïve/memory populations, subsets of cells with upregulated activation markers, and Tregs after suppression assay for any markers of interest.

4.5.2 Methods to Enhance Quality of CFSE Peaks

Various concerns can also arise using CFSE-based methodology. While forward-scatter/side-scatter (FS-SS) gating after a suppression assay is usually sufficient to discern dead vs. live cells, less satisfactory results may be obtained when biosafety regulations (as for clinical samples) or intracellular co-staining require the use of fixed cells. In these cases, use of fixable live-dead markers prior to fixation (Material and Methods) gives significantly improved flow cytometry data. For unfixed cells, results of cell division, when FS-SS live gated cells or FS-SS + live/dead gating strategy are used, give similar data (Fig. 6c) although FS-SS gating tends to slightly flatten suppressive curves (providing more divisions at high Treg ratios and less divisions in low Treg ratios in comparison with live/dead gated subsets).

Use of pulse width gating to include only single cells for evaluation additionally improves the quality of CFSE peaks, and can be useful when tissue cells (splenocytes, lymph node cells) are used, or when toxic effects are expected. For human PBMC in standard suppression assay conditions, very few cells are not singlets. In our experience, the quality of CFSE peaks, making them still easily distinguishable by the end of an experiment, is usually not an issue in murine Treg suppression assays. However, human PBMC responders from some healthy donors and a considerable percent of patient PBMC do not divide synchronously, and therefore do not provide clearly distinguishable peaks. In that case, use of isolated CD4+ or CD8+ responders with irradiated, CD3-depleted APC, instead of CFSE-labeled PBMC, can improve the shape of CFSE peaks.

Due to difficulties with resolution of peaks, some researchers prefer to use the mean of CFSE fluorescence instead of identification of nondividing subsets. However, this approach suffers from a high level of variability: multiple factors (number of cells for labeling, protein content in cell media during labeling, temperature and time of labeling, age of CFSE aliquot stock solution, light exposure for CFSE and for labeled cells, cell viability and their time in assay) affect the brightness of CFSE signal, making it difficult to perform reliable inter-assays comparisons that are often critical in clinical studies. CFSE brightness may be so labile as to compromise results even in the same experiment, when multiple concentrations of testing compound are compared with controls that were run previously. Here we show comparison of CFSE mean fluorescence (Fig. 6d) vs. CFSE peaks (Fig. 6e) after 20 min of routine room light exposure. When CFSE mean of fluorescence was used for evaluation, nondividing and once divided cells with highest CFSE fluorescent means lost their brightness faster, leading to shrinkage

of suppression curves (and false decreases in Treg suppressive function) within as little as 20 min of light exposure.

For hampered CFSE-peak shapes, an additional co-staining with Ki-67 helps to accurately establish location of nondividing CFSE peak either for murine or human responders (Fig. 7a). A great advantage of this method is there is no need to routinely fix cells and co-stain them with Ki-67, and can be a result-saving strategy when exploratory flow cytometry shows hardly distinguishable CFSE peaks.

4.5.3 Effects of CD4+CD25– Gating on Responders

Since ideally most Teffs are CD4+CD25– and Tregs are CD4+CD25+, some researchers use CD25 co-staining and gate for the CD25– subset in CFSE+ Teffs to evaluate cell division. We consider this approach unsuitable since murine and human Teff cells easily upregulate CD25 after just overnight stimulation. Furthermore, with human T cells, CD25– gating will falsely increase Treg suppressive function since CD25+ Teffs have a greater division rate compared to those that retain the CD25– phenotype (Fig. 7b). The same is true for mouse C57BL/6 cells (Fig. 7c, left), but, interestingly Th2-biased BALB/c mice demonstrate the inverse; in these mice, CD25+ cells showed impaired cellular division during suppression assays, compared to CD25– T cells (Fig. 7c, right). Taken together, the use CD25+ or CD25– gating for responder T cells may provide additional readouts, but should not be used as a method to discern Teffs from Tregs.

4.5.4 Alternative Ways to Evaluate of CFSE Peaks: Division Index and Calculation of Progenitors

Use of division index instead of percent of dividing cells, as described [17], may be an excellent alternative providing higher sensitivity, but it is valid only in conditions where all CFSE peaks are easily visible and distinguishable from each other, which is often not the case with clinical samples. However, our AUC-based method to calculate Treg suppressive function as one number for all Treg/Teffs ratios may be applied for division index data as well as for percent of divisions (see below).

Another readout method in Treg suppression assays came from studies with cell lines and is based on the calculation of progenitors, as reviewed [17]. This method works on the assumption that each cell produces two daughter cells after division, and therefore the final number of cells in the last division peak is the result of this geometric progression with a denominator of 2. This method is appropriate for cell lines, where normally only a very small percent of cells stop division, and few die during an experiment under normal conditions. However, in our experience, primary cells always demonstrate noticeable levels of apoptosis, and also can stop after 1, 2, or 3 rounds of division due to multiple factors, just one of which is suppression by Tregs. The shape of typical CFSE peaks with murine or human primary T cells, with reduced numbers of dividing cells in the last division rounds, demonstrates this point.

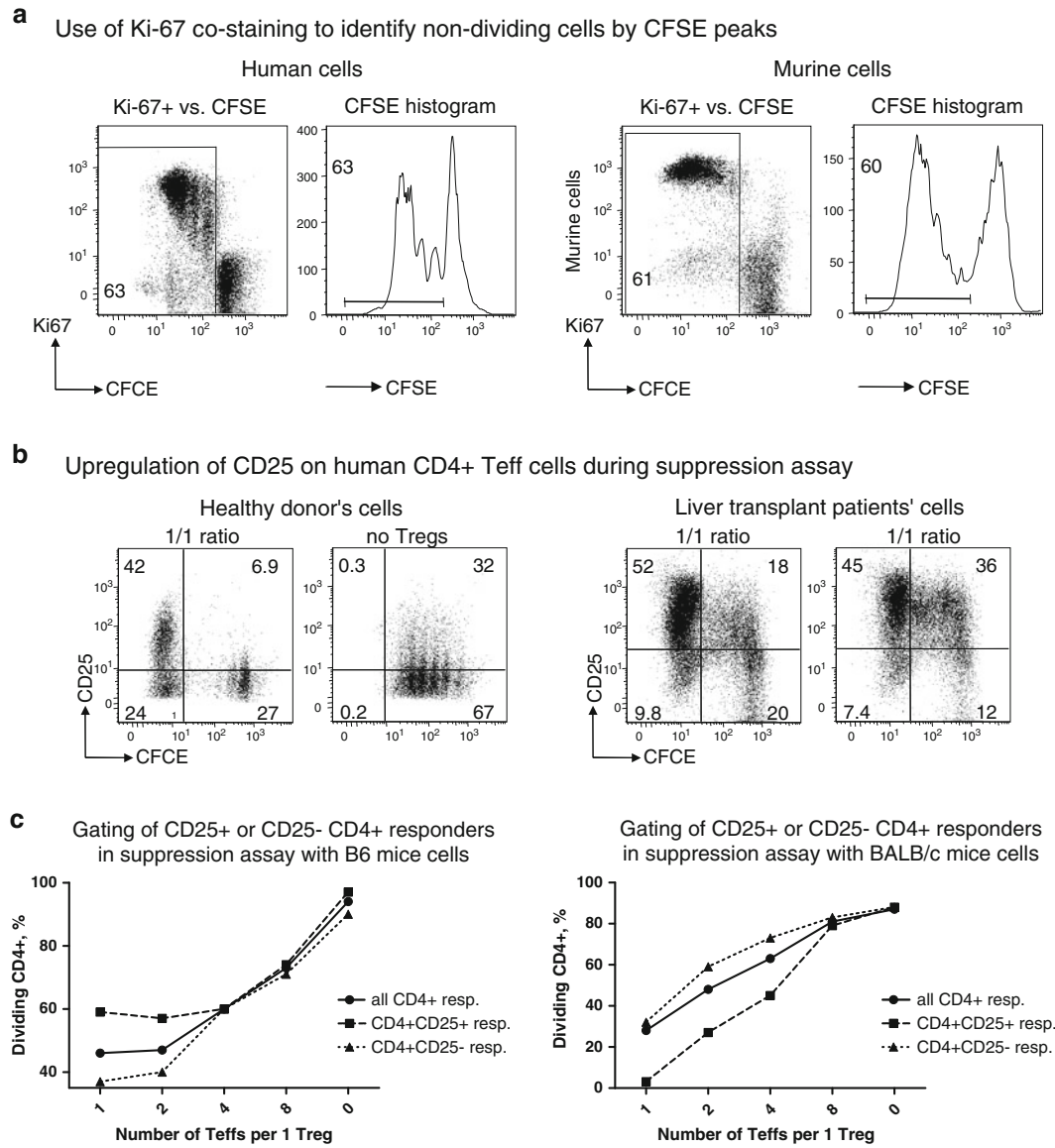


Fig. 7 Readout of CFSE-based suppression assay. (**a**) Co-staining with Ki-67 helps to locate the first CFSE peak of nondividing cells in human (*left*) or murine (*right*) suppression assays. (**b**) In human suppression assays, Teffs cells that upregulated CD25 are better dividers than CD25– cells. Healthy donor (*left*) or pediatric liver allograft patients (*middle* and *right*) Tregs were used in suppression assays with autologous CD4+CD25– Teffs (*left*) or with healthy donor PBMC (*middle* and *right*) as responders cells. 4 days later, cells were stained for CD4 and CD25, and CD25+ cells were plotted vs. CFSE in CD4+ gated cells. Tregs are located on left two quadrants of each dot plot. (**c**) In murine Treg suppression assays using cells from C57BL/6 mice, CD4+CD25+ responder cells demonstrate better divisions than CD25– Teffs (*left*), while using cells from BALB/c mice, cells with upregulated CD25 proliferated less than CD4+CD25– Teffs (*right*). Each murine experiment was performed twice with the same results

4.6 How to Calculate AUC for Treg Suppression Assay

4.6.1 Two Modifications of X-Axis Labeling to Increase Sensitivity of Assay

Area-under-curve (AUC) calculations are commonly used with glucose tolerance tests and in pharmacokinetic studies. Mathematically, it is a definite integral, but for practical purposes most statistical software use trapezoidal approximations for calculation. Any standard statistical package can be used to obtain results of Treg suppressive function as a standard calculation of AUC. For this method, we use an assumption that serial dilution of Tregs in Treg/Teffs ratios is the equivalent of a time function on the *x*-axis, where concentration of a given medication in patient's plasma gradually decreases. Therefore, Treg suppression at any given ratio from 1/1 to 1/16 (number of Teffs per Treg) or lower, if needed, is plotted on the *y*-axis against corresponding ratio. It should be noted that in this modification, AUC is sensitive to variability of results in low Treg/Teffs ratios and therefore good for Treg suppressive curves where the greatest differences occur at low ratios. Conversely, if responder cells are sensitive to suppression, and raw Treg curves demonstrate the highest differences in suppression in high Treg/Teffs ratios such as 1/1 and 1/2 (or even 2/1), it may be reasonable to replace "number of Teffs per 1 Treg" on *x*-axis to numbers equivalent to degrees of Treg dilutions. Therefore, in first scenario (AUC is sensitive to low ratios) the x-axis is labeled as 1, 2, 4, 8 and 16, while in second scenario the x-axis has numbers 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4. Both modifications will yield similar results in terms of discrimination of "weaker" vs. "stronger" Tregs, but the degree of these differences would differ according to the initial shape of the raw Treg curves.

4.6.2 AUCs for Drug Use vs. AUCs in Clinical Treg Studies

Two additional modifications of AUC calculations of suppressive function include experimental designs with internal controls vs. serial assessments of Treg function. Examples of the latter are evaluations of Treg suppressive functions in cross-sectional clinical studies [10], or calculations of Treg suppressive function in follow-up clinical studies, whereeach patient provides Treg samples at different times. For such studies, Tregs assays should be highly standardized within their conditions (see above) to ensure that resulting data will be intercomparable, and patient's Tregs would be the single main factor that differs between experiments. An example of AUC calculation for this type of studies is shown in Fig. 8. Here, raw data of four Treg suppression assays, evaluating Tregs from the same liver allograft recipient at different time points are shown. For these experiments, autologous CD4+CD25– responders were used, and 7 day post-transplant (post-Tx) data with maximal levels of immunosuppression clearly show impaired CD4+ division. Interestingly, in this patient, CD4+ T cells recovered their proliferative activity by 3 months post-Tx (Fig. 8a). Then, raw suppression data were re-calculated as standardized suppression using the formula $S = ((\text{divisions without Tregs} - \text{divisions}$

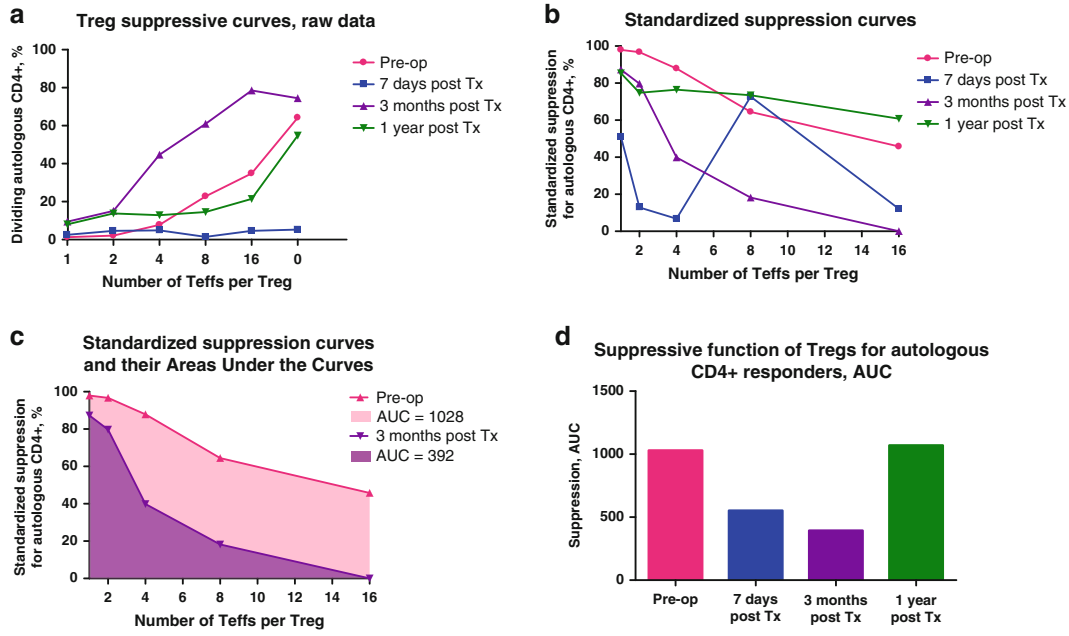


Fig. 8 Calculation of standardized suppression and AUC for Treg assays in clinical Treg studies. (**a**) Raw data showing CD4+ Teff proliferation in four autologous suppression assays, performed with samples from the same liver allograft recipient. Cells were isolated preoperative (Pre-op), and at 7 days, 3 months, and 1 year post-Tx. (**b**) Standardized suppression (*S*) was calculated using $S = ((\text{divisions without Tregs} - \text{divisions in current ratio})/\text{divisions without Tregs}) \times 100$. (**c**) Two areas under the standardized suppression curves, as in (**b**), are shaded for illustrative purposes. Corresponding AUC values are shown in graph legend on *right*. (**d**) Suppressive function of four Treg samples for autologous CD4+ responders, calculated as AUCs

in current ratio)/divisions without Tregs) × 100, where *S* is standardized suppression [18]. Due to significantly impaired division of autologous cells at 7 days post-Tx, standardized suppression is evidently compromised: the small variability in cell divisions occurred at 1/8 Treg/Teffs ratio turned out to produce a high suppression peak after re-calculation (Fig. 8b). This example illustrates the trial design issues discussed above, where autologous cells, if they have impaired division, cannot provide reliable Treg data but rather tend to lead to false-positive suppression findings, and, conversely, resistant autologous Teffs tend to lead to false negative assessment of Treg suppressive function. Figure 8c uses the same data as for Fig. 8b, but actual areas under two suppressive curves are shaded for illustrative purposes, and two corresponding AUCs values are provided in the legend. Clearly pre-Tx Treg suppressive function was better, although autologous cell results have to be validated with standardized conditions, i.e., with healthy donor responder cells. Finally, Fig. 8d shows results for all four suppressive curves calculated as AUCs.

Examples of experimental design with internal controls are tests with epigenetically active compounds [13], or WT vs. different KO mice [19], or control vs. disease groups of mice, i.e., experiments where Treg function is compared in experimental vs. control conditions. The experimental conditions for each independent experiment in that design may be not comparable with each other. Thus, different healthy donors Tregs with their own autologous responders may be used each time, mouse groups can differ in age, gender, duration of experiment, etc., but within a given experiment, all cells (except for Tregs) are the same. In that case, standardization of raw Tregs suppression curves may be calculated firstly as min-max normalization (*see* Fig. 9a and Table 3, Steps 1 and 2), and then transformed into standardized suppression using $\Upsilon_t = 100 - \Upsilon$ formula for standardization, where Υ_t is standardized transformed suppression (in %), and Υ is normalized suppression (*see* Fig. 9a–c and Table 3, Steps 2 and 3 for detailed example). Resulting AUCs (Fig. 9d) may be additionally calculated as a fold ratio to control Tregs' AUC (Fig. 9e), which provides an option to group results of different experiments into the final groups with p value calculations for statistical differences [13].

In summary, we have used this described AUC calculation method in murine and human studies for over 6 years, and found it to be convenient, sensitive and reproducible in any given Treg suppression assay design, as well as a viable method to standardize between different investigators.

5 Discussion

Assessment of Treg suppressive function remains one of the most reliable methods for identification of Tregs ex vivo, and also facilitates the evaluation of new Treg-associated markers, including surface molecules, cytoplasmic or nuclear factors, and epigenetic modifications. Within the past several years, many detailed and thoughtful protocols on the essential elements of Treg suppression assays have been published [11, 17, 18, 20–26]. Therefore, we focused this work on features of Treg suppression assays, especially with regard to clinical samples. We have described the importance of assay standardization, and provided a new method for reliably measuring and calculating Treg suppressive function.

There is a great variability in conditions of Treg suppression assays [17], and multiple factors may affect the results [11]. Historically, most Treg assays employed thymidine incorporation, which has exquisite sensitivity to detect differences using low cell numbers, and does not require access to a flow cytometer. Unfortunately, this method involves the false assumption that Treg divisions do not compromise the final results due to their

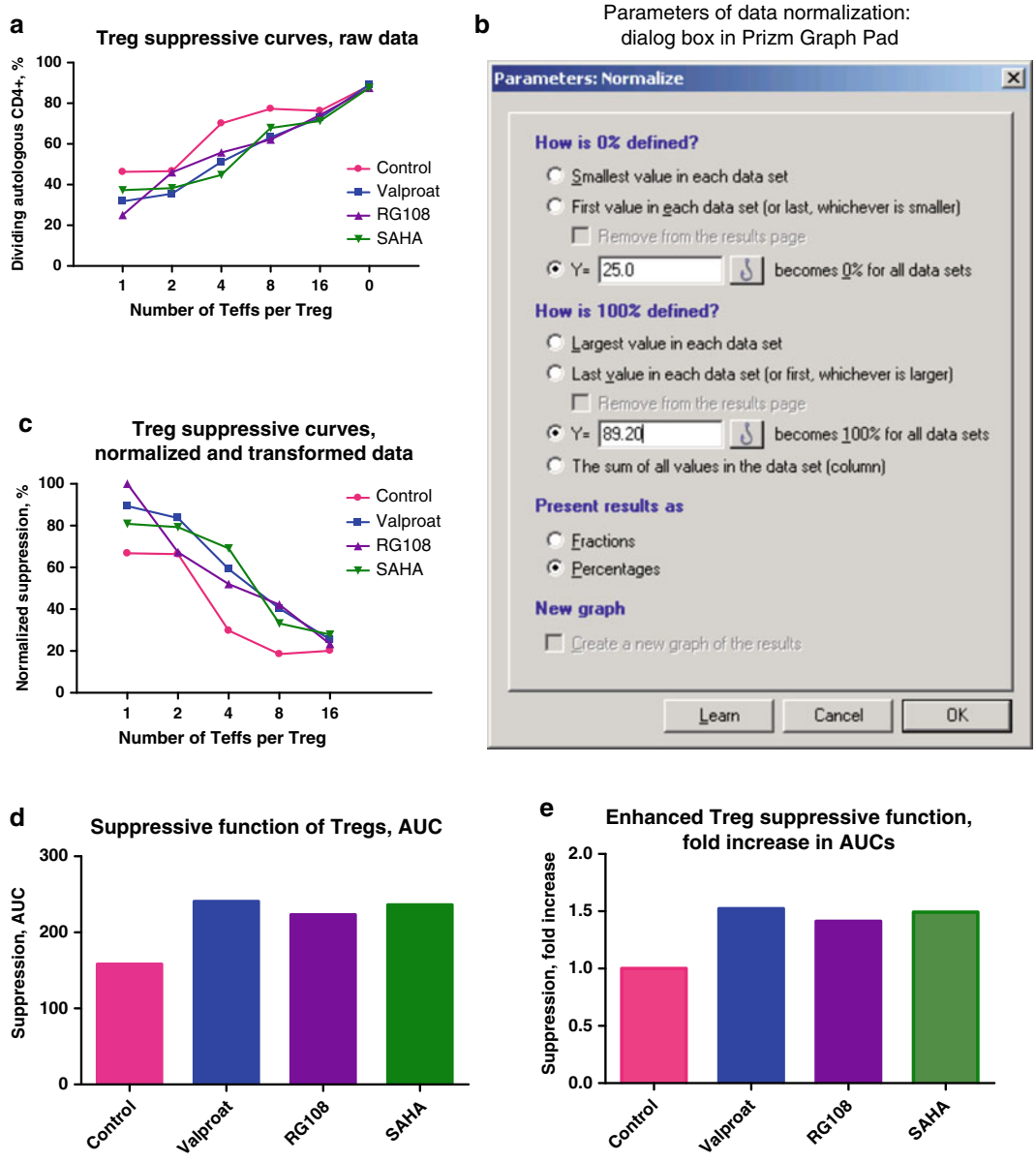


Fig. 9 Calculation of standardized suppression and AUC for Treg assays with epigenetic compounds. Healthy donor CD4+CD25+ Tregs, CD4+CD25– Teffs, and CD4-depleted irradiated APC were used in a suppression assay with different concentrations of valproic acid (HDACi), RG108 (DNMTi), and SAHA (HDACi). Then, one concentration of each compound, which demonstrated no direct inhibitory effect of given compound on Teff divisions, was chosen for following calculations. (**a**) Raw data show division of CD4+ Teffs at corresponding Treg/Teff ratios. Data are plotted as number of Teffs per (one) Treg vs. corresponding division of CD4+ Teffs. Table 3, Step 1 shows the same data as % of dividing CD4+ Teffs. (**b**) Within this experiment, the lowest and the highest divisions (bolded in Table 3, Steps 1 and 2) were used to define 0 and 100 % for percentage normalization. A screenshot of the dialog box from GraphPad Prism with corresponding data is shown. (**c**) Data from Table 3, Step 3, are plotted. Normalized suppression data were transformed using formula: $Y_t = 100 - Y$, where Y_t is transformed normalized suppression, and Y is normalized division. Y values show normalized and transformed suppression. All values in ratios without Tregs were excluded from further AUC calculations. (**d**) Treg suppressive function, calculated in AUCs units, is shown. All compounds clearly enhance Treg suppressive function. (**e**) The same data as (**d**) were re-calculated with control Treg suppressive function as denominator. As a result, data shown fold increase of Treg suppressive function for each compound vs. control (which is 1). These data may be further grouped with results of similar suppression assays with other Tregs and responders, to compare means of enhanced Treg function and p value for differences

Table 3
Calculation of enhanced Treg suppressive function in an experiment with epigenetic compounds

Step 1. Raw data: divisions of CD4+ cells				
Number of Teffs per Treg	*Divisions of CD4+, %*			
	Control	*Valproate*	*RG108*	*SAHA*
1	46.30	31.80	**25.0**	37.30
2	46.60	35.50	46.0	38.30
4	70.10	51.20	55.8	44.80
8	77.30	63.30	62.1	67.90
16	76.30	72.80	74.2	71.30
0	88.70	**89.20**	87.5	87.60
Step 2. 0–100 % Normalized data				
Number of Teffs per Treg	*Normalized divisions of CD4+, %*			
	Control	*Valproate*	*RG108*	*SAHA*
1	33.18	10.59	**0.00**	19.16
2	33.64	16.36	32.71	20.72
4	70.25	40.81	47.98	30.84
8	81.46	59.66	57.79	66.82
16	79.91	74.45	76.64	72.12
0	99.22	**100.00**	97.35	97.51
Step 3. Transformed data				
Number of Teffs per Treg	*Transformed normalized data, suppression, %*			
	Control	*Valproate*	*RG108*	*SAHA*
1	66.82	89.41	100.00	80.84
2	66.36	83.64	67.29	79.28
4	29.75	59.19	52.02	69.16
8	18.54	40.34	42.21	33.18
16	20.09	25.55	23.36	27.88
0	*0.78*	*0.00*	*2.65*	*2.49*

Healthy donor CD4+CD25+ Tregs, CD4+CD25− Teffs, and CD4-depleted irradiated APC were used in a suppression assay with different concentrations of valproic acid (HDACi), RG108 (DNMTi), and SAHA (HDACi). Then, one concentration of each compound, which demonstrated no direct inhibitory effect of given compound on Teff divisions, was chosen for following calculations. In Step 1, raw data show division of CD4+ Teffs at corresponding Treg/Teff ratios. Within this experiment, the lowest and the highest divisions (bolded) were used to define 0 and 100 % for percentage normalization in the next step. For Step 2, the smallest CD4+ division value in current experiment defined as 0 % and biggest one as 100 % (both are bolded). Corresponding dialog box in Prizm Graph Pad is shown at Fig. 9b. For Step 3, data transformed as $\Upsilon_t = 100 - \Upsilon$, where Υ_t is transformed normalized suppression, and Υ is normalized division. For further calculations, data of "0 Treg" ratios are excluded (shown in italic)

"anergic" status in vitro. In the current manuscript, and previously [15], we showed that murine and human Tregs indeed divide vigorously during Treg suppression assays, and the level of IL-2 produced by Teffs, even at a 1:1 Treg:Teffs ratio, is sufficient to overcome any "anergic" Treg state in vitro. Thus, only CFSE-based suppression assays [26] or analogs provide data on responder cell divisions that are free of contamination by Treg division. With regard to concerns of the sensitivity of CFSE-based assays,

we showed that cell numbers can be reduced to 20,000–25,000 of responders/Tregs in 1/1 ratios without any adverse effects, provided cell numbers are consistent between different experiments in the same study. Moreover, with relatively low cell numbers (40,000 and less), we never observed artifactual suppression due to the competition of highly activated CD25+ non-regulatory T cells, isolated as Tregs, with responder cells for growth factors or stimulation, as discussed [17]. Conversely, in our studies, highly activated human non-regulatory T cells stimulated healthy donor responder cells to divide, or had no effect. Use of flow-based assays for evaluation of division of responder cells can provide researchers with opportunities to obtain significant additional data. Cell culture media may be collected to evaluate soluble factors (IL-10, IL-2, IFN-γ, IL-17), cells may be fixed and co-stained with antibodies against cytokines and for transcriptional factors, and they may also be studied for expression of maturation and cell lineage markers. For example, staining cells at the end of the Treg suppression assay for Helios allowed us to study the effect of the presence or absence of Helios on Treg and Teff cell function, proliferation, and Teff susceptibility to Treg suppression [15].

As Tregs employ diverse mechanisms for their suppression, which may be regulated by cytokine milieu and other uncharacterized environmental factors [27], and depend on the type of responder cells and ongoing immune processes [28], Treg suppression assays can be modified accordingly, allowing a focus on defined conditions. Use of allergens for stimulation in order to study allergies [23], or use of donor-specific alloantigens to study Treg abilities to suppress anti-donor immune response in transplant studies [29, 30] are examples of such modifications. However, the results of these modifications should be interpreted with caution, as they may not reflect true in vivo situations. Thus, direct alloantigen recognition plays a major role only in early stage of alloantigen responses, and is then replaced by indirect recognition [31, 32], and alloantigen repertories may be significantly modified by post-ischemic transplant events and chronic graft deterioration. Outcomes may also vary based on use of a donor's native APC, or donor-antigen loaded APC isolated post-Tx. By contrast, use of standard polyclonal stimulation, which affects all Teff and Treg subsets, in comparison with healthy controls or pre-Tx cells, may provide more reliable evidence of alterations in Treg functionality, and should be performed at least as a control in any types of specifically modified Treg suppression assays.

To conclude, we propose that the utilization of standardized and carefully controlled conditions of Treg suppression assays, along with AUC calculations, may significantly improve the reproducibility of published results and therefore help to further improve our knowledge of Tregs and their suppressive mechanisms.

Acknowledgement

This work was supported by funding from the National Institutes of Health (DK087270, AI073489, UL1-RR026314 NCRR/NIH to WWH, K08DK092282 to MHL, and K08AI095353 to UHB). The funders had no role in study design, data collection and analysis, decision to publish, or preparation of the manuscript.

Competing interests: The authors have declared that no competing interests exist.

References

1. Sakaguchi S, Sakaguchi N, Asano M, Itoh M, Toda M (1995) Immunologic self-tolerance maintained by activated T cells expressing IL-2 receptor alpha-chains (CD25). Breakdown of a single mechanism of self-tolerance causes various autoimmune diseases. J Immunol 155: 1151–1164
2. Fontenot JD, Gavin MA, Rudensky AY (2003) Foxp3 programs the development and function of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. Nat Immunol 4:330–336
3. Rubtsov YP, Rasmussen JP, Chi EY, Fontenot J, Castelli L, Ye X, Treuting P, Siewe L, Roers A, Henderson WR Jr, Muller W, Rudensky AY (2008) Regulatory T cell-derived interleukin-10 limits inflammation at environmental interfaces. Immunity 28:546–558
4. Allan SE, Crome SQ, Crellin NK, Passerini L, Steiner TS, Bacchetta R, Roncarolo MG, Levings MK (2007) Activation-induced FOXP3 in human T effector cells does not suppress proliferation or cytokine production. Int Immunol 19:345–354
5. Ohkura N, Kitagawa Y, Sakaguchi S (2013) Development and maintenance of regulatory T cells. Immunity 38:414–423
6. Fu W, Ergun A, Lu T, Hill JA, Haxhinasto S, Fassett MS, Gazit R, Adoro S, Glimcher L, Chan S, Kastner P, Rossi D, Collins JJ, Mathis D, Benoist C (2012) A multiply redundant genetic switch 'locks in' the transcriptional signature of regulatory T cells. Nat Immunol 13:972–980
7. Takahashi T, Kuniyasu Y, Toda M, Sakaguchi N, Itoh M, Iwata M, Shimizu J, Sakaguchi S (1998) Immunologic self-tolerance maintained by CD25+CD4+ naturally anergic and suppressive T cells: induction of autoimmune disease by breaking their anergic/suppressive state. Int Immunol 10:1969–1980
8. Thornton AM, Shevach EM (1998) CD4+CD25+ immunoregulatory T cells suppress polyclonal T cell activation in vitro by inhibiting interleukin 2 production. J Exp Med 188:287–296
9. Mathew A (2011) CryoStor Cryopreservation Protocol. J Vis Exp https://www.jove.com/video/2206/cryostor-cryopreservation-protocol
10. Akimova T, Kamath BM, Goebel JW, Meyers KE, Rand EB, Hawkins A, Levine MH, Bucuvalas JC, Hancock WW (2012) Differing effects of rapamycin or calcineurin inhibitor on T-regulatory cells in pediatric liver and kidney transplant recipients. Am J Transplant 12:3449–3461
11. McMurchy AN, Levings MK (2012) Suppression assays with human T regulatory cells: a technical guide. Eur J Immunol 42:27–34
12. Kalin JH, Butler KV, Akimova T, Hancock WW, Kozikowski AP (2012) Second-generation histone deacetylase 6 inhibitors enhance the immunosuppressive effects of Foxp3+ T-regulatory cells. J Med Chem 55:639–651
13. Akimova T, Ge G, Golovina T, Mikheeva T, Wang L, Riley JL, Hancock WW (2010) Histone/protein deacetylase inhibitors increase suppressive functions of human FOXP3+ Tregs. Clin Immunol 136:348–363
14. Kristin Lorent KAK, Gong W, Whittaker S, Porter JR, Wells R, Pack M (2012) Isolation and identification of a plant toxin that induces biliary atresia in livestock and zebrafish. Abstracts of the 63rd Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. November 9-13, 2012. Boston, Massachusetts, USA. Hepatology 56(Suppl 1):198A
15. Akimova T, Beier UH, Wang L, Levine MH, Hancock WW (2011) Helios expression is a marker of T cell activation and proliferation. PLoS One 6:e24226

16. Schmidt A, Oberle N, Weiss EM, Vobis D, Frischbutter S, Baumgrass R, Falk CS, Haag M, Brugger B, Lin H, Mayr GW, Reichardt P, Gunzer M, Suri-Payer E, Krammer PH (2011) Human regulatory T cells rapidly suppress T cell receptor-induced Ca(2+), NF-kappaB, and NFAT signaling in conventional T cells. Sci Signal 4:ra90
17. Brusko TM, Hulme MA, Myhr CB, Haller MJ, Atkinson MA (2007) Assessing the in vitro suppressive capacity of regulatory T cells. Immunol Invest 36:607–628
18. Schneider A, Buckner JH (2011) Assessment of suppressive capacity by human regulatory T cells using a reproducible, bi-directional CFSE-based in vitro assay. Methods Mol Biol 707:233–241
19. Beier UH, Wang L, Han R, Akimova T, Liu Y, Hancock WW (2012) Histone deacetylases 6 and 9 and sirtuin-1 control Foxp3+ regulatory T cell function through shared and isoform-specific mechanisms. Sci Signal 5:ra45
20. Boks MA, Zwaginga JJ, van Ham SM, ten Brinke A (2010) An optimized CFSE-based T-cell suppression assay to evaluate the suppressive capacity of regulatory T-cells induced by human tolerogenic dendritic cells. Scand J Immunol 72:158–168
21. Collison LW, Vignali DA (2011) In vitro Treg suppression assays. Methods Mol Biol 707:21–37
22. Hilchey SP, Bernstein SH (2007) Use of CFSE to monitor ex vivo regulatory T-cell suppression of CD4+ and CD8+ T-cell proliferation within unseparated mononuclear cells from malignant and non-malignant human lymph node biopsies. Immunol Invest 36:629–648
23. Jeal H (2008) Isolation, flow cytometric analysis, and suppression assay of CD4+ CD25+ T-regulatory cells. Methods Mol Med 138:85–96
24. Su H, Longhi MS, Wang P, Vergani D, Ma Y (2012) Human CD4+CD25(high)CD127 (low/neg) regulatory T cells. Methods Mol Biol 806:287–299
25. Tran DQ (2013) In vitro suppression assay for functional assessment of human regulatory T cells. Methods Mol Biol 979:199–212
26. Venken K, Thewissen M, Hellings N, Somers V, Hensen K, Rummens JL, Stinissen P (2007) A CFSE based assay for measuring CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cell mediated suppression of auto-antigen specific and polyclonal T cell responses. J Immunol Methods 322:1–11
27. Sojka DK, Huang YH, Fowell DJ (2008) Mechanisms of regulatory T-cell suppression - a diverse arsenal for a moving target. Immunology 124:13–22
28. Chaudhry A, Rudensky AY (2013) Control of inflammation by integration of environmental cues by regulatory T cells. J Clin Invest 123:939–944
29. Taylor PA, Noelle RJ, Blazar BR (2001) CD4(+)CD25(+) immune regulatory cells are required for induction of tolerance to alloantigen via costimulatory blockade. J Exp Med 193:1311–1318
30. Kitazawa Y, Fujino M, Wang Q, Kimura H, Azuma M, Kubo M, Abe R, Li XK (2007) Involvement of the programmed death-1/programmed death-1 ligand pathway in CD4+CD25+ regulatory T-cell activity to suppress alloimmune responses. Transplantation 83:774–782
31. Hernandez-Fuentes MP, Salama A (2006) In vitro assays for immune monitoring in transplantation. Methods Mol Biol 333:269–290
32. Gokmen MR, Lombardi G, Lechler RI (2008) The importance of the indirect pathway of allorecognition in clinical transplantation. Curr Opin Immunol 20:568–574

Chapter 5

Characterization and Immunoregulatory Properties of Innate Pro-B-Cell Progenitors

Flora Zavala, Sarantis Korniotis, and Ruddy Montandon

Abstract

Control of T-cell responses can be achieved by several subsets of B cells with immunoregulatory functions, mostly acting by provision of the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10 or exhibiting killing properties through Fas ligand (Fas-L) or granzyme B-induced cell death. We herein describe the characterization as well as the cellular and molecular mechanisms mediating the suppressive properties of bone marrow immature innate pro-B cell progenitors that emerge upon transient activation of Toll-like receptor 9. They are licensed by activated T-cell-derived IFN-γ to become suppressive by up-regulating their Fas-L expression and inducing effector $CD4^+$ T-cell apoptosis. They also up-regulate their own IFN-γ production which dramatically reduces T-cell production of a major pathogenic cytokine, IL-21. A single adoptive transfer of as little as 60,000 of them efficiently prevents the onset of spontaneous type 1 diabetes in recipient nonobese diabetes (NOD) mice, highlighting the remarkable regulatory potency of these so-called CpG-proB cell progenitors compared to regulatory cells of diverse lineages so far described. The CpG-proB cell activity is prolonged in vivo by their differentiation after migration in the pancreas and the spleen into B-cell progeny with high Fas-L expression that can keep up inducing apoptosis of effector T cells in the long term.

Key words Regulatory B cells, B-cell progenitors, Toll-like receptors, IFN-γ, Killer B lymphocytes, Fas-L, IL-21, Type 1 diabetes, Cell therapy, Tolerance

1 Introduction

The participation of B cells in various immunopathologic settings, particularly in autoimmune diseases, has been amply documented. Today, it is well known that their function is not limited exclusively to the secretion of antibodies since they have been shown to display influence on T-cell-driven diseases either acting as antigen-presenting cells or through their ability to produce various cytokines. These properties have led to the implementation of various B-cell-targeted depletion strategies as a mean for potential treatment. Paradoxically, in autoimmune encephalomyelitis, an experimental model of multiple sclerosis, an autoimmune disease targeting the myelin components and leading to demyelination and subsequent paralysis, B-cell depletion could trigger different

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_5,

effects depending on the time of depletion. Matsushita et al. showed that when B-cell depletion, using antibodies targeted against CD20, was accomplished at the peak of the disease or afterwards at the recovery phase, it was associated with reduced disease scores, whereas worsening of disease scores were reported when depletion took place at the immunization phase, thereby suggesting that B cells at the initiation phase of the disease exhibited regulatory properties in vivo. Additionally, the same group provided evidence also for the protective B-cell type identifying a new rare subset expressing the $B220^{+}CD5^{+}CD1d^{hi}$ phenotype, exerting immune regulation through the production of the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10 (thereafter named B10 cells) [1, 2].

Different subsets of B cells have since been reported to display immunoregulatory properties (see for review [3–9]), including the above cited $CD19^{+}CD5^{+}CD1d^{hi}$ cells [2], transitional type 2 marginal zone precursor B cells (T2-MZP-Bs) in mice with arthritis [10], follicular B cells and marginal zone B cells and, more recently, $CD138^{+}$ plasma cells [11]. These various B-cell subpopulations at diverse maturation stages can acquire regulatory properties provided they receive several activation signals including both innate and adaptive signals. These signals include either stimulation through Toll-like receptor (TLR) associated with B-cell receptor signaling, cognate interactions with T cells through CD40, as well as provision of several cytokines [11–16]. Even though these diverse signals are effectively provided, only a small percentage of B cells gain regulatory properties, for instance the capacity to secrete the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10, questioning the efficiency of this process. Although today it is believed that regulatory B cells do not form a separate lineage, at variance with regulatory T cells, whether a particular stage of differentiation in the B-cell lineage is more prone to acquire regulatory properties and whether immature B-cell progenitors can exhibit tolerogenic properties and differentiate into mature regulatory B cells has not been investigated so far.

Interestingly, it has been shown that TLRs are expressed even on highly immature cells such as hematopoietic stem cells and progenitors that upon stimulation by innate or danger signals do not remain confined within the bone marrow. They can traffic throughout the body, even within tissues, towards infectious and inflammatory signals [17, 18]. It was demonstrated that common lymphoid progenitors (CLP) stimulated via their TLR receptors are diverged from the B-cell lineage and instead differentiate into myeloid dendritic cells that actively take part in the anti-infectious defense [19]. Based on previous demonstrations that mobilized [20, 21] or activated bone marrow progenitors, in tumoral and inflammatory settings [22] as well as in parasite infection [23] can acquire tolerogenic properties, we hypothesized that TLR signals could instead promote the emergence of hematopoietic progenitor

cell populations with tolerogenic properties that could be valuable for cell therapy for the control of unwanted T-cell responses and particularly autoimmune diseases.

2 Characterization of TLR-Activated B-Cell Progenitors with Tolerogenic Properties

To test this hypothesis, we performed total bone marrow cell culture with TLR agonists and investigated whether new c-kit$^+$ progenitor populations with immunoregulatory properties could emerge. Indeed, we showed that within CpG-activated bone marrow cells emerged a new population of tolerating progenitor cells able to provide protection against nonobese diabetic (NOD) mice, an experimental model for type 1 diabetes upon their adoptive transfer.

The following conditions permitted the emergence and isolation of this protective population: incubation of total bone marrow cells for 18 h at 37 °C in 5 % CO_2 in RPMI 1640 medium supplemented with 10 % fetal calf serum and antibiotics, in the presence of 10 μM CpG-B (CpG 1668). We then performed a positive selection of c-kit$^+$ cells using automated magnetic selection (Robosep, StemCell Technologies) and thereof electronically cell-sorted c-kit$^+$ Sca-1$^+$ B220$^+$ IgM$^-$ cells of small size with a FACS Aria cell sorter (Becton Dickinson). As the phenotype of these progenitors—CD127$^+$ CD24$^+$ but also CD43$^+$, CD1d$^+$ and Sca-1$^+$—appeared close to that of a pro-B-cell stage of differentiation although with some differences likely to result from CpG-stimulation, and based on preliminary evidence of their differentiation into the B-cell lineage, we named them CpG-proB cells as a population which emerges upon activation with CpG [24].

An adoptive transfer of only about 60,000 cells by i.v. injection at 6 weeks of age in NOD mice was able to provide significant and dose-dependent protection against T1D whereas transfer of only 12,500 of the same population of cells had no similar protective effect. Furthermore, these cells still protected 50 % of mice from T1D onset even if injected in 16-week-old recipients, just before disease onset. Therefore, these CpG-proB cell progenitors are far more active at a per cell basis than any other previously reported immunoregulatory cell subset and their regulatory potential thus appears inversely correlated to their frequency. In the NOD mice, in our hands, approximately 50,000 CpG-proB cells can be obtained from a single donor mouse when using bone marrow recovered from tibiae and femurs. Interestingly, injection of non-stimulated control pro-B cells had no protective effect against T1D suggesting that TLR-9 signaling may confer tolerating inprinting.

To investigate whether cell populations with the phenotype of CpG-proBs can also transiently emerge after stimulation with other

known TLR-agonists, we performed the same bone marrow cell cultures in the presence of a large array of TLR ligands. Only MyD88-dependent TLR agonists efficiently promoted the emergence of a CpG-proB like cell subset and additionally, CpG-B was unable to trigger CpG-proB cell accumulation in the bone marrow derived from MyD88-deficient NOD mice. CpG likewise prompted the emergence of the same B-cell progenitors within the bone marrow 18 h post-injection (i.p.) in NOD mice, suggesting that such highly potent regulatory population might play a role in vivo as well.

3 Migration and Differentiation Properties

In order to assess the life-span, migration and differentiation properties of the adoptively transferred CpG-proBs in NOD mice that develop spontaneous type 1 autoimmune diabetes, we used CD45.2 congenic donor mice and traced the adoptively transferred progenitors into $CD45.1^+$recipient NOD mice. We observed that the injected progenitor cells migrated within the first 5 days to the pancreas, which is the target tissue of the autoimmune response in NOD mice. A more detailed follow-up showed that they can be recovered also within the pancreatic draining lymph nodes at approximately 3 times less cell counts than in the pancreas, staying in these organs for about 15 days. Later on and only 20 days after injection, they finally accumulated in the spleen where they persisted at least 1 month after injection. The total number of recovered $CD45.2^+$ cells found in the recipient mice corresponded approximately to the number of injected cells, an observation which, taking into account the inevitable cell loss, suggested that some proliferation had occurred.

Along with their migration, differentiation of the progenitors occurred, exclusively into more mature cells of the B-cell lineage but not into any other hematopoietic lineage. While the progeny that initially migrated to the pancreas still expressed c-kit, as did the injected progenitors, when reaching the pancreatic lymph nodes they gradually lost c-kit expression and in the spleen developed into different stages of B-cell maturation including transitional type 2 marginal zone precursor B cells as well as follicular and marginal zone B cells.

4 Cellular and Molecular Mechanisms of Action: CpG-proBs Trigger Effector T-Cell Apoptosis and Dramatically Reduce Their Production of a Major Pathogenic Cytokine in T1D, IL-21

In order to clarify the protective mechanism of CpG-proBs, we investigated whether these cells had a direct effect on either the pathogenic $CD4^+$ T cells or on regulatory T cells. Isolated

CpG-proBs had no effect on the proliferation of anti-CD3 + anti-CD28-activated $CD4^+CD25^+$ (all $Foxp3^+$) regulatory T cells in a cell culture in vitro. Conversely, CpG-proBs were efficient in inhibiting the proliferation of activated $CD4^+CD25^-$ cells at a 1:1 and 1:2 T-cell:CpG-proB ratio. This inhibition of proliferation was correlated with enhanced apoptosis of co-cultured T cells. Although CpG-proB cells expressed a number of death-inducing molecules including TRAIL, PDL1, and PDL2 as well as FasL, their capacity to trigger apoptosis of the co-cultured $CD4^+$ T cells was Fas-FasL dependent, being only inhibited by co-incubation with a neutralizing anti-FasL antibody but none of the other corresponding antibodies.

Moreover, qPCR array analysis of T cells that had escaped apoptosis in the co-culture assay with CpG-proBs demonstrated that they had up-regulated by 55-fold their expression of Fas-ligand, in keeping with their propensity to apoptosis, and additionally had considerably enhanced their pro-Th1 and cytotoxic profile at the expense of a Th2-profile with increased expression of IFN-γ, t-Bet and decreased levels of IL-13 and Gata3. They also concomitantly up-regulated eomesodermin and downregulated ICOS levels, together resulting in the dramatic 77-fold reduction of IL-21 transcript levels.

These molecular pathways were likewise modulated in vivo in T cells from CpG-proB NOD recipients. The $CD4^+$ T-cell pancreatic infiltrates showed a dramatic reduction of $CD44^{hi}CD62L^-CD4^+$ effector memory T cells correlated with reduced IL-21 production capacity contrasting with enhanced IFN-γ intracytoplasmic production. Pancreatic homogenates of CpG-proB recipients likewise displayed significantly reduced IL-21 protein levels relative to control mice with T1D. Therefore, CpG-proBs target pathogenic cellular and molecular mechanisms in T1D, by killing effector T cells and controlling their production of IL-21, a major pathogenic cytokine in T1D [25–27] with *IL-21* representing a susceptibility gene for type 1 diabetes in both mice and humans [28, 29].

5 An IFN-γ Driven Interplay but No Role for IL-10 in the Suppressive Effect of CpG-proBs on Their Target T Cells

One of the most common functional properties of so far described B regulatory cells is their capacity to secrete the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10. However, CpG-proBs did not produce IL-10 and neither $CD4^+$ T nor $CD19^+$B cells in CpG-proB recipient mice were displaying enhanced production of IL-10.

Instead, CpG-proBs, constitutively after their isolation, massively produced IFN-γ, proposing a crucial role for this cytokine in their protective mechanism of action. The important role of IFN-γ produced either by T cells or the CpG-proBs was shown with the use of mice deficient for IFN-γ. None of the previously

described effects, induction of apoptosis or reduction of the pathogenic cytokine IL-21 occurred in the absence of IFN-γ in either T cells or CpG-proB cells. When co-cultured with $CD4^{+}CD25^{-}$ T cells isolated from IFN-γ-deficient donors, INF-γ-competent CpG-proB cells (isolated from wild-type (WT) NOD donors) were unable to inhibit the T-cell proliferation or to trigger T-cell apoptosis and to up-regulate their own expression of Fas-L, suggesting that the provision of IFN-γ by activated T cells was the signal responsible for conferring suppressive properties onto CpG-proBs. Moreover, during the co-culture with WT T cells, CpG-proBs up-regulated their own IFN-γ production. In turn, IFN-γ deficient CpG-proB cells did not enhance IFN-γ production by T cells and did not reduce their IL-21 production. This mechanism of action points out the regulatory role of IFN-γ—either direct or indirect through IFN-γ dependent gene-encoded molecules, yet to be identified—since its enhanced production by both T and CpG-proB cells was necessary for achieving a complete suppressive effect *in vitro*. In addition, its regulatory role in vivo as well was demonstrated by the incapacity of CpG-proB cells isolated from the bone marrow of IFN-γ-deficient donor NOD mice to prevent T1D onset in vivo after their adoptive transfer in NOD mice (Fig. 1).

The production of IFN-γ by B cells has been described in various settings. Constitutive production of low levels IFN-γ by immature bone marrow B cells [30] and IFN-γ production by TLR-activated follicular and marginal zone B cells have been previously reported [31, 32], the latter with functional outcomes such as regulation of the Th1 response to *Salmonella enterica* infection [33]. Mature follicular B cells from *Toxoplasma gondii*-infected mice were shown to produce IFN-γ upon ex vivo restimulation with pathogen extracts [34]. Bao et al. [35] recently reported that innate B cells with a $CD11a^{hi}$ $CD16/32^{hi}$ phenotype emerged from follicular B cells 3 days post-infection with bacterial and viral agents, even in IFN-γR deficient mice. Upon ex vivo restimulation with anti-CD40, these innate B cells produced as much IFN-γ as NK cells. Their provision of IFN-γ was required for protection against *L. monocytogenes* infection and depended on activation of the Bruton's tyrosine kinase (*btk*)—but not the*t-Bet*-dependent pathway-, as *btk*-deficient mice lacked these $CD11a^{hi}$ $CD16/32^{hi}$B cells and did not clear *L. monocytogenes* infection. Therefore, IFN-γ production by CpG-proBs as well as other described B cells has functional role and may link innate and adaptive immune responses.

6 CpG-proB Cell Progenitors Mature into FasL-Expressing Immunoregulatory Progeny

The limited life-span of hematopoietic progenitors contrasted with the long-lasting protection against spontaneous T1D provided by a single injection of only 60,000 CpG-proBs and suggested that

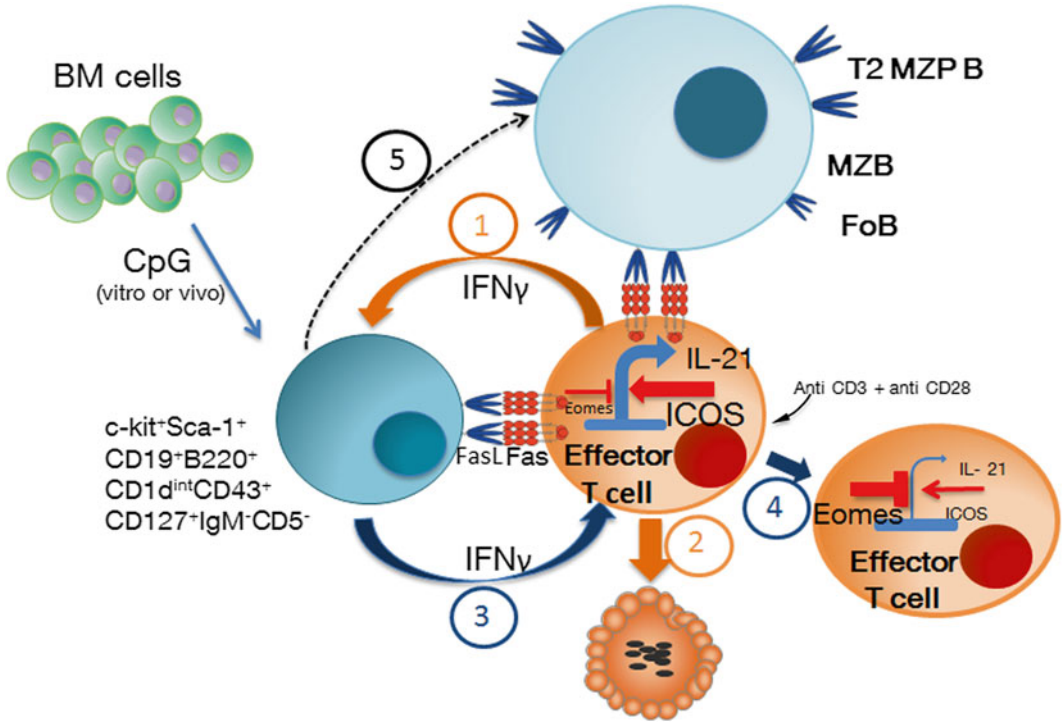


Fig. 1 Cellular and molecular mechanisms underlying the protective effects of adoptively transferred CpG-proB cells against type 1 diabetes in NOD mice. (1) IFN-γ derived from TCR-activated T cells promotes expression of Fas-L on CpG-proB cells. (2) FasL-expressing CpG-proB cells trigger $CD4^+$ T-cell apoptosis. (3) IFN-γ derived from activated T cells also enhances IFN-γ levels produced by CpG-proB cells, which (4) enhances within spared $CD4^+$ T-cells eomesodermin and ICOS levels, resulting in the dramatic reduction within T-cells of the production of IL-21, a cytokine playing a major role in T1D pathogenesis. (5) CpG-proB cells migrate to the pancreas, the pancreatic lymph nodes and the spleen sequentially where they differentiate into various B-cell mature subsets (T2-MZP-Bs, MZ, and FO B cells) all expressing higher FasL levels than the recipient's B cells in the corresponding tissues and able to trigger apoptosis of T cells in the long term

the influence of the B-cell progenitors was somehow prolonged over time. Indeed, we showed that their more mature B-cell progeny could contribute to the protection. These mature B cells, recovered either from the pancreas or the spleen of $CD45.1^+$ CpG-proB recipients, maintained a remarkably high FasL expression—higher than that of the host $CD45.2^+$B cells in the same compartments—and remained able to trigger the apoptosis of $CD4^+$ T cells, even if recovered as far as 1 month after the adoptive transfer of CpG-proBs. Therefore, a long-term control of effector diabetogenic T cells which was initially operated by the acquired FasL expression in CpG-proB cells in contact with activated T cells is further maintained in vivo through the differentiation of CpG-proBs into $FasL^{hi}$ mature B-cell progeny in both pancreas and spleen (Fig. 1). CpG-proB cells and their mature B-cell progeny thereby share the cytotoxic properties originally described in PMA + ionomycin-activated spleen B cells [30], in LPS-treated NOD mice based on FasL expression of mature B cells [36] and in

Shistosoma infection by splenic CD5⁺ B1a cells expressing high levels of FasL that triggered CD4⁺ T-cell apoptosis [37, 38]. In humans, regulatory B cells with cytotoxic activity have been reported. Leukemic, myeloma cells and EBV- and HIV-infected cells were shown to express FasL allowing them to escape immune surveillance [39, 40]. B cells producing instead granzyme B, under the influence of IL-21 production by T cells, were likewise shown to inhibit tumor defense [41].

The capacity of TLR-activated B-cell progenitors to migrate into the autoreactive inflammatory target site, develop into an immunoregulatory mature B-cell progeny that ensures long-term targeting of effector T cells represent remarkable properties than might be harnessed in cell therapy for controlling unwanted T-cell immune responses and establishing long-lasting immune tolerance.

Acknowledgements

We are indebted to Christophe Gras for technical assistance and thank Jérôme Mégret for expert cell-sorting. This work was supported by institutional grants from Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique and Institut National de la Recherche Médicale, and by grants from Humanis, IKY (State Scholarship Foundation, Greece), Juvenile Diabetes Research Foundation, Fondation de la Recherche Médicale Prix Mescle and Association Française pour la Recherche sur la Sclérose en Plaques (ARSEP). R.M. was recipient of a doctoral grant from the Ministry of Education and Research, France, and subsequently from Ligue Nationale Française contre le Cancer. S.K. was supported by a grant from Domaine d'Intérêt Majeur StemPôle, Région Ile de France and subsequently from Association Française pour la Recherche sur la Sclérose en Plaques (ARSEP).

References

1. Matsushita T, Yanaba K, Bouaziz JD, Fujimoto M, Tedder TF (2008) Regulatory B cells inhibit EAE initiation in mice while other B cells promote disease progression. J Clin Invest 118(10):3420–3430
2. Yanaba K, Bouaziz JD, Haas KM, Poe JC, Fujimoto M, Tedder TF (2008) A regulatory B cell subset with a unique CD1dhiCD5+ phenotype controls T cell-dependent inflammatory responses. Immunity 28(5):639–650. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2008.03.017
3. Mauri C, Bosma A (2012) Immune regulatory function of B cells. Annu Rev Immunol 30:221–241. doi:10.1146/annurev-immunol-020711-074934
4. Chesneau M, Michel L, Degauque N, Brouard S (2013) Regulatory B cells and tolerance in transplantation: from animal models to human. Front Immunol 4:497. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2013.00497
5. Hilgenberg E, Shen P, Dang VD, Ries S, Sakwa I, Fillatreau S (2014) Interleukin-10-producing B cells and the regulation of immunity. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 380:69–92. doi:10.1007/978-3-662-43492-5_4
6. Dang VD, Hilgenberg E, Ries S, Shen P, Fillatreau S (2014) From the regulatory functions of B cells to the identification of cytokine-producing plasma cell subsets. Curr Opin Immunol 28:77–83. doi:10.1016/j.coi.2014.02.009
7. Shen P, Lampropoulou V, Stervbo U, Hilgenberg E, Ries S, Mecqinion A, Fillatreau S (2013) Intrinsic Toll-like receptor signalling

drives regulatory function in B cells. Front Biosci (Elite Ed) 5:78–86

8. Fillatreau S (2011) Novel regulatory functions for Toll-like receptor-activated B cells during intracellular bacterial infection. Immunol Rev 240(1):52–71. doi:10.1111/j.1600-065X.2010.00991.x
9. Tedder TF, Leonard WJ (2014) Autoimmunity: regulatory B cells – IL-35 and IL-21 regulate the regulators. Nat Rev Rheumatol 10(8):452–453. doi:10.1038/nrrheum.2014.95
10. Evans JG, Chavez-Rueda KA, Eddaoudi A, Meyer-Bahlburg A, Rawlings DJ, Ehrenstein MR, Mauri C (2007) Novel suppressive function of transitional 2 B cells in experimental arthritis. J Immunol 178(12):7868–7878
11. Shen P, Roch T, Lampropoulou V, O'Connor RA, Stervbo U, Hilgenberg E, Ries S, Dang VD, Jaimes Y, Daridon C, Li R, Jouneau L, Boudinot P, Wilantri S, Sakwa I, Miyazaki Y, Leech MD, McPherson RC, Wirtz S, Neurath M, Hoehlig K, Meinl E, Grutzkau A, Grun JR, Horn K, Kuhl AA, Dorner T, Bar-Or A, Kaufmann SH, Anderton SM, Fillatreau S (2014) IL-35-producing B cells are critical regulators of immunity during autoimmune and infectious diseases. Nature 507(7492):366–370. doi:10.1038/nature12979
12. Lampropoulou V, Hoehlig K, Roch T, Neves P, Calderon Gomez E, Sweenie CH, Hao Y, Freitas AA, Steinhoff U, Anderton SM, Fillatreau S (2008) TLR-activated B cells suppress T cell-mediated autoimmunity. J Immunol 180(7):4763–4773
13. Rosser EC, Oleinika K, Tonon S, Doyle R, Bosma A, Carter NA, Harris KA, Jones SA, Klein N, Mauri C (2014) Regulatory B cells are induced by gut microbiota-driven interleukin-1beta and interleukin-6 production. Nat Med 20(11):1334–1339. doi:10.1038/nm.3680
14. Yoshizaki A, Miyagaki T, DiLillo DJ, Matsushita T, Horikawa M, Kountikov EI, Spolski R, Poe JC, Leonard WJ, Tedder TF (2012) Regulatory B cells control T-cell autoimmunity through IL-21-dependent cognate interactions. Nature 491(7423):264–268. doi:10.1038/nature11501
15. Matsumoto M, Baba A, Yokota T, Nishikawa H, Ohkawa Y, Kayama H, Kallies A, Nutt SL, Sakaguchi S, Takeda K, Kurosaki T, Baba Y (2014) Interleukin-10-producing plasmablasts exert regulatory function in autoimmune inflammation. Immunity. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.10.016
16. Mann MK, Maresz K, Shriver LP, Tan Y, Dittel BN (2007) B cell regulation of CD4+CD25+ T regulatory cells and IL-10 via B7 is essential for recovery from experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol 178(6):3447–3456
17. Massberg S, Schaerli P, Knezevic-Maramica I, Kollnberger M, Tubo N, Moseman EA, Huff IV, Junt T, Wagers AJ, Mazo IB, von Andrian UH (2007) Immunosurveillance by hematopoietic progenitor cells trafficking through blood, lymph, and peripheral tissues. Cell 131(5):994–1008
18. Nagai Y, Garrett KP, Ohta S, Bahrun U, Kouro T, Akira S, Takatsu K, Kincade PW (2006) Toll-like receptors on hematopoietic progenitor cells stimulate innate immune system replenishment. Immunity 24(6):801–812
19. Welner RS, Pelayo R, Nagai Y, Garrett KP, Wuest TR, Carr DJ, Borghesi LA, Farrar MA, Kincade PW (2008) Lymphoid precursors are directed to produce dendritic cells as a result of TLR9 ligation during herpes infection. Blood 112(9):3753–3761
20. Kared H, Adle-Biassette H, Fois E, Masson A, Bach JF, Chatenoud L, Schneider E, Zavala F (2006) Jagged2-expressing hematopoietic progenitors promote regulatory T cell expansion in the periphery through notch signaling. Immunity 25(5):823–834
21. Kared H, Leforban B, Montandon R, Renand A, Layseca Espinosa E, Chatenoud L, Rosenstein Y, Schneider E, Dy M, Zavala F (2008) Role of GM-CSF in tolerance induction by mobilized hematopoietic progenitors. Blood 112(6):2575–2578
22. Gabrilovich DI, Nagaraj S (2009) Myeloid-derived suppressor cells as regulators of the immune system. Nat Rev Immunol 9(3):162–174
23. Saenz SA, Siracusa MC, Perrigoue JG, Spencer SP, Urban JF Jr, Tocker JE, Budelsky AL, Kleinschek MA, Kastelein RA, Kambayashi T, Bhandoola A, Artis D (2010) IL25 elicits a multipotent progenitor cell population that promotes T(H)2 cytokine responses. Nature 464(7293):1362–1366
24. Montandon R, Korniotis S, Layseca-Espinosa E, Gras C, Megret J, Ezine S, Dy M, Zavala F (2013) Innate pro-B-cell progenitors protect against type 1 diabetes by regulating autoimmune effector T cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110 (24):E2199–2208. doi:10.1073/pnas.1222446110
25. Spolski R, Kashyap M, Robinson C, Yu Z, Leonard WJ (2008) IL-21 signaling is critical for the development of type I diabetes in the NOD mouse. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105(37):14028–14033
26. Sutherland AP, Van Belle T, Wurster AL, Suto A, Michaud M, Zhang D, Grusby MJ, von

Herrath M (2009) Interleukin-21 is required for the development of type 1 diabetes in NOD mice. Diabetes 58(5):1144–1155

27. McGuire HM, Vogelzang A, Hill N, Flodstrom-Tullberg M, Sprent J, King C (2009) Loss of parity between IL-2 and IL-21 in the NOD Idd3 locus. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106(46):19438–19443
28. McGuire HM, Walters S, Vogelzang A, Lee CM, Webster KE, Sprent J, Christ D, Grey S, King C (2011) Interleukin-21 is critically required in autoimmune and allogeneic responses to islet tissue in murine models. Diabetes 60(3):867–875
29. Asano K, Ikegami H, Fujisawa T, Nishino M, Nojima K, Kawabata Y, Noso S, Hiromine Y, Fukai A, Ogihara T (2007) Molecular scanning of interleukin-21 gene and genetic susceptibility to type 1 diabetes. Hum Immunol 68(5):384–391
30. Hahne M, Renno T, Schroeter M, Irmler M, French L, Bornard T, MacDonald HR, Tschopp J (1996) Activated B cells express functional Fas ligand. Eur J Immunol 26(3): 721–724
31. Gray M, Miles K, Salter D, Gray D, Savill J (2007) Apoptotic cells protect mice from autoimmune inflammation by the induction of regulatory B cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104(35):14080–14085
32. Lund FE, Randall TD (2010) Effector and regulatory B cells: modulators of CD4+ T cell immunity. Nat Rev Immunol 10(4):236–247. doi:10.1038/nri2729
33. Morrison VL, Barr TA, Brown S, Gray D (2010) TLR-mediated loss of CD62L focuses B cell traffic to the spleen during Salmonella typhimurium infection. J Immunol 185(5):2737–2746. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1000758
34. Harris DP, Haynes L, Sayles PC, Duso DK, Eaton SM, Lepak NM, Johnson LL, Swain SL, Lund FE (2000) Reciprocal regulation of polarized cytokine production by effector B and T cells. Nat Immunol 1(6):475–482. doi:10.1038/82717
35. Bao Y, Liu X, Han C, Xu S, Xie B, Zhang Q, Gu Y, Hou J, Qian L, Qian C, Han H, Cao X (2014) Identification of IFN-gamma-producing innate B cells. Cell Res 24(2):161–176. doi:10.1038/cr.2013.155
36. Tian J, Zekzer D, Hanssen L, Lu Y, Olcott A, Kaufman DL (2001) Lipopolysaccharide-activated B cells down-regulate Th1 immunity and prevent autoimmune diabetes in nonobese diabetic mice. J Immunol 167(2):1081–1089
37. Lundy SK, Boros DL (2002) Fas ligand-expressing B-1a lymphocytes mediate CD4(+)-T-cell apoptosis during schistosomal infection: induction by interleukin 4 (IL-4) and IL-10. Infect Immun 70(2):812–819
38. Lundy SK, Lerman SP, Boros DL (2001) Soluble egg antigen-stimulated T helper lymphocyte apoptosis and evidence for cell death mediated by FasL(+) T and B cells during murine Schistosoma mansoni infection. Infect Immun 69(1):271–280. doi:10.1128/IAI.69.1.271-280.2001
39. Klinker MW, Lizzio V, Reed TJ, Fox DA, Lundy SK (2014) Human B cell-derived lymphoblastoid cell lines constitutively produce Fas ligand and secrete MHCII(+)FasL(+) killer exosomes. Front Immunol 5:144. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2014.00144
40. Lundy SK (2009) Killer B lymphocytes: the evidence and the potential. Inflamm Res 58(7):345–357. doi:10.1007/s00011-009-0014-x
41. Lindner S, Dahlke K, Sontheimer K, Hagn M, Kaltenmeier C, Barth TF, Beyer T, Reister F, Fabricius D, Lotfi R, Lunov O, Nienhaus GU, Simmet T, Kreienberg R, Moller P, Schrezenmeier H, Jahrsdorfer B (2013) Interleukin 21-induced granzyme B-expressing B cells infiltrate tumors and regulate T cells. Cancer Res 73(8):2468–2479. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-12-3450

Chapter 6

Generation and Characterization of Mouse Regulatory Macrophages

Laura Carretero-Iglesia, Marcelo Hill, and Maria Cristina Cuturi

Abstract

In the last years, cell therapy has become a promising approach to therapeutically manipulate immune responses in autoimmunity, cancer, and transplantation. Several types of lymphoid and myeloid cells origin have been generated in vitro and tested in animal models. Their efficacy to decrease pharmacological treatment has successfully been established. Macrophages play an important role in physiological and pathological processes. They represent an interesting cell population due to their high plasticity in vivo and in vitro. Here, we describe a protocol to differentiate murine regulatory macrophages in vitro from bone marrow precursors. We also describe several methods to assess macrophage classical functions, as their bacterial killing capacity and antigen endocytosis and degradation. Importantly, regulatory macrophages also display suppressive characteristics, which are addressed by the study of their hypostimulatory T lymphocyte capacity and polyclonal T lymphocyte activation suppression.

Key words Regulatory macrophages (Mreg), Cell therapy, In vitro differentiation, Bacterial killing assay (BKA), Suppression

1 Introduction

Pharmacological and biological compounds are widely used to treat immunological disorders that lead to an excessive response of the immune system. However, those agents unselectively target important cellular and molecular pathways, leading to undesired side effects. Therefore, cell therapy arises as a good strategy to modulate immune responses by induction of specific peripheral tolerance [1].

Macrophages constitute a highly heterogeneous cell subset, comprising cells derived from different embryonic and adult precursors. Macrophages are involved in both physiological and pathological processes [2]. In steady state, macrophages are responsible of maintaining homeostasis in a variety of peripheral tissues (dermis, bone, lungs, spleen, adipose tissue …) by clearance of apoptotic cells, development and metabolic regulation. They also play fundamental roles as immune sentinels. After pathogen

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_6,

encounter, macrophages get activated and are responsible of the initiation of an inflammatory microenvironment which triggers the recruitment of other immune cell types, which perpetuate inflammation. Meanwhile, macrophages are also involved in the resolution of inflammatory processes, through phagocytosis of cellular debris and tissue reconstitution [3].

Those antagonistic functions displayed by macrophages in vivo give a hint of the plasticity of this population. Therefore, in vitro differentiation of macrophages from precursor cells or ex vivo modification of isolated macrophages can be a good strategy to polarize macrophages towards a regulatory profile for their use in clinical practise.

Regulatory macrophages (Mreg) have already been generated in mouse [4] and humans [5]. In the setting of transplantation, those Mreg have successfully been able to prolong cardiac graft survival in a fully mismatched mouse transplant model. A clinical trial including two patients has also shown their capacity to maintain graft functionality with only tacrolimus monotherapy after Mreg administration [6].

In this chapter, we describe a methodology to generate in vitro another subset of Mreg using only low doses of M-CSF. Mreg conserve the functional characteristics of classical macrophages while being able to suppress polyclonal T lymphocytes activation and to be hypostimulatory in in vitro allogeneic co-cultures.

2 Materials

2.1 General Materials

- Complete medium: 1× DMEM medium (Gibco) supplemented with 10 % FCS (Lonza), 0.05 mM β-ME (Sigma-Aldrich), 2 mM L-glutamine, 1 mM sodium pyruvate, 10 mM HEPES, 1× MEM NEAA, 100 U/ml penicillin, 0.1 mg/ml streptomycin (all from Gibco).
- Sterile PBS 1× (Phosphate saline buffer, pH 7.2–7.4).
- PFE: sterile PBS 1× supplemented with 2 % FCS and 2 mM EDTA.
- Vacuum-driven filtration system, 0.22 μm (Millipore).
- 15 and 50 ml centrifuge tubes (Greiner bio-one).
- 24-Well flat-bottom plates and 96-well round-bottom plates (BD Falcon).

2.2 Material for In Vitro Mregs Generation

- Complete medium.
- Mouse recombinant M-CSF (mrM-CSF) (Peprotech).
- 6- to 8-Week-old C57BL/6 mice (Janvier, France).
- 2.5 ml syringe and 26G needle.

- RBCL (Red Blood Cell Lysis) solution: 0.15 M NH_4Cl, 0.01 M $KHCO_3$ and 100 μM Na_2EDTA, filtered and adjusted to pH 7.4.
- 100 μm nylon filters (BD Falcon).
- Non-culture-treated 10 cm Petri dishes (VWR).

2.3 Material for Bacterial Killing Assay

- Antibiotic-free complete medium: complete medium without penicillin and streptomycin.
- FCS (Lonza).
- *E. coli* bacteria (Agilent Technologies).
- Liquid LB médium (Sigma-Aldrich).
- LB-agar plates (Sigma-Aldrich).
- Gentamicin (Sigma-Aldrich).
- 0.5 % Sodium Deoxycholate (Sigma-Aldrich).

2.4 Material for Endocytosis and Antigen Degradation

- OVA-Alexa Fluor647 (Invitrogen).
- DQ-OVA (Invitrogen).
- PFA 2 % (Paraformaldehyde 2 %).

2.5 Material for Allogeneic Co-culture and Suppression Test

- 6- to 8-Week-old C57BL/6 or Balb/C mice (Janvier, France).
- 100 μm nylon filters (BD Falcon).
- CD90.2 or Pan T Isolation Kit II, mouse (Miltenyi Biotech).
- AutoMACS separator or columns and magnets (Miltenyi Biotech).
- CFDA-SE (CarboxyFluorescein DiAcetate Succinimidyl Ester) (Invitrogen).
- DynaBeads mouse T-Activator CD3/28 (Gibco): Anti-CD3 and anti-CD28-coated microbeads.
- BD™IMagnet (BD Biosciences Pharmigen).

3 Methods

3.1 Differentiation of Mregs from Bone Marrow Precursors

In order to generate Mreg in vitro, several culture conditions were tested: harvesting time points, serum amounts and lots, type of plastic recipient for cell culture, and mrM-CSF concentrations. Macrophages that displayed the desired phenotype and function were obtained after 15 days of culture in complete medium supplemented with 10 % of FCS and cultured in untreated Petri dishes with 0.2 ng/ml of mrM-CSF. Cell yields obtained using the different conditions are shown in Table 1. The following protocol considers the chosen culture conditions:

Table 1
Yield of adherent cells recovery under different culture conditions

Initial concentration (cells/ml)	Volume (ml/dish)	rmM-CSF (ng/ml)	Culture time (days)	
			7	15
10^6	10	0.2	0.3	2.3
		0.4	0.4	2.7
		1	1.2	2
2×10^6	10	0.2	0.8	2
		0.4	0.8	2.8
		1	0.8	2.9

Two initial cell concentrations (10^6 or 2×10^6 cells/ml) were cultured for the indicated times (7 or 15 days) in presence of different doses of rmM-CSF (from 0.2 to 1 ng/ml). Numbers show the yield of recovery of adherent cells ($\times 10^6$). Around 95 % of adherent cells displayed $CD11b^+F4/80^+$ phenotype

1. After sacrifice, remove tibias and femurs from 6- to 8-week-old C57BL/6 mice (*see* **Note 1**) and flush bone marrow using a 2.5 ml syringe and a 26G needle.
2. Recovered cells into a 50 ml tube and centrifuge them for 10 min at $500 \times g$. Discard supernatant and resuspended cell pellet in 5 ml of RBCL solution for 5 min in order to eliminate erythrocytes.
3. Add 45 ml of PFE to stop the lysis and centrifuge for 10 min at $500 \times g$. Discard supernatant.
4. Repeat **step 3**.
5. Resuspend cell pellet in 10 ml of PFE and filter cells using a 100 μm filter.
6. Determine cell number and resuspend cells into pre-warmed complete medium to a final concentration of 10^6 cells/ml. Add 0.2 ng/ml of mrM-CSF.
7. Dispatch 10 ml of the suspension into each Petri dish. Incubate cells at 37 °C and 5 % CO_2.
8. At day 3 of the culture, add 10 ml of preheated complete medium supplemented with 0.2 ng/ml of mrM-CSF to each Petri dish.
9. At day 7, replace 10 ml of medium from each plate. Centrifuge cell suspension, discard supernatant, and resuspend pellets in the same volume to the initial of preheated complete medium supplemented with 0.2 ng/ml of M-CSF.
10. At day 15, discard medium containing non-adherent cells. Add 10 ml of cold PFE are to each Petri dish. Adherent cells are harvested by pipetting up and down. Mregs are collected into

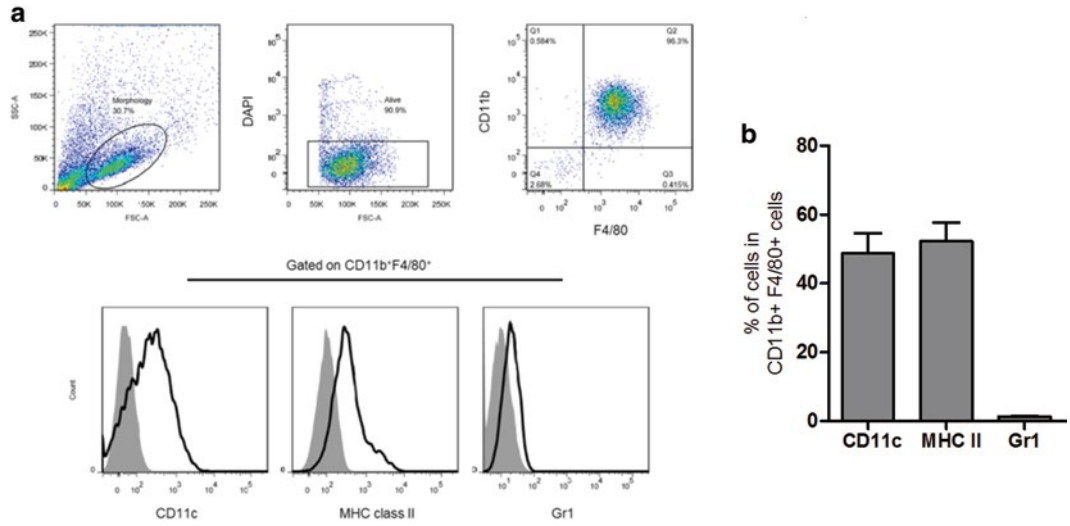


Fig. 1 Mreg phenotype at day 15. Adherent cells were harvested at the end of the differentiation period. Phenotype was assessed by flow cytometry. (**a**) Representative plots of Mreg phenotype. (**b**) Mreg surface markers expression in $CD11b^+$ $F4/80^+$ cells (mean 93.6 ± 2.1). Data are represented as mean ± SEM of four independent experiments

50 ml tubes and centrifuged. Supernatant is discarded and pellets are resuspended in PFE and pooled into a final volume of 10 ml of PFE.

11. Phenotypical characterization of recovered macrophages can be performed by flow cytometry. Typically, virtually all recovered Mregs are CD11b/F4/80 positive, whereas half of the population expresses CD11c and MHC class II markers and Gr1 marker is absent (Fig. 1).

3.2 Study of Macrophages Function

In this assay, we evaluate the capacity of macrophages to kill internalized bacteria. The readout is the quantification of live bacteria at different times after phagocytosis. The following protocol has been modified from Sokolovska et al. [7].

3.2.1 Bacterial Killing Assay

1. Culture and harvest macrophages as previously described. Wash cells with PFE. Count cell numbers and resuspend cell pellet in antibiotic-free complete medium to a concentration of 10^6 cells/ml. Dispose 1 ml per well in a 24-well flat-bottom culture plate. Each well represents a condition or a time point. It is recommended to perform three replicates per point. Allow macrophages to adhere to the bottom of the culture plate for 1 h at 37 °C.
2. Prepare live *E. coli* (*see* **Note 2**):
   (a) Day 2: Spread *E. coli* into LB-agar plates and incubate ON at 37 °C.

(b) Day 1: Grow one separate colony into liquid LB ON at 37 °C.

(c) Day 0:

- Make serial dilutions of bacteria into pre-warmed liquid LB.
- Incubate different dilutions at 37 °C for 1–2 h.
- Determine the optical density (OD) of the suspension at 600 nm (*see* **Note 3**) and calculate bacterial concentration (x) as follows:

$$x = \frac{\text{measured O.D.} \times 5 \times 10^8 \,\text{CFU} / \text{ml}}{1\,\text{O.D.}} \left(\text{CFU} / \text{ml}\right)$$

(d) Resuspend bacteria into antibiotic-free complete medium to a concentration of 10^7 bacteria/ml (*see* **Note 4**).

3. Infect macrophages by adding 10 µl of the bacterial preparation to each well and centrifuge the plate for 4 min at 500 × *g*.
4. To allow macrophages phagocyte *E. coli*, incubate plates at 37 °C 5 % CO_2 for 30 min.
5. Wash wells twice with warm PBS. Add 500 µl of complete medium supplemented with 50 µg/ml of gentamicin. Incubate for 1 h at 37 °C. This step allows killing of remaining non-phagocyted bacteria.
6. Wash wells twice with warm PBS. Add 500 µl of complete medium with 5 % FCS containing 5 µg/ml of gentamicin. This is time point 0 (*see* **Note 5**). Incubate for the desired time points.
7. Harvest macrophages by washing wells twice with warm PBS and scraping.
8. To assess intracellular bacteria, centrifuge cell suspension, discard supernatant and lyse macrophages by adding 100 µl of 0.5 % sodium deoxycholate (*see* **Note 6**). Pipet up and down and vortex vigorously to release intracellular bacteria (*see* **Note 7**).
9. Make serial dilutions of the lysate and plate bacteria onto LB-plates. Incubate ON at 37 °C and count CFU. Results can be expressed as remaining "alive bacteria per initial macrophage number" (*see* **Note 8**). Titration of CFU counts can be performed in order to choose the best MOI to perform further (Fig. 2).

3.2.2 Endocytosis and Antigen Degradation

To perform this protocol, two ovalbumin (OVA) modified proteins are used. OVA protein conjugated with Alexa Fluor 647 fluorochrome (OVA-AF647) is used to evaluate endocytosis. AF647 fluorochrome displays invariable fluorescence despite differences in environmental factors. To evaluate antigen degradation DQ-OVA

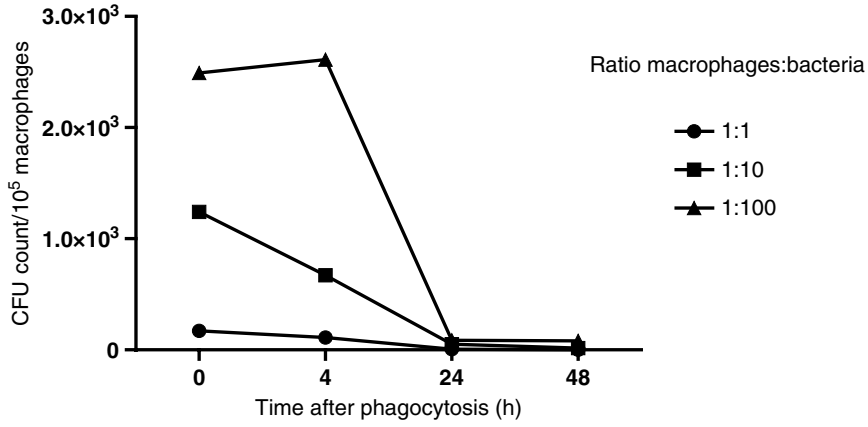


Fig. 2 Macrophage bacterial killing kinetics. Evaluation of *E. coli* killing capacity was assessed as previously described. A representative experiment evaluating different time points and different MOIs (ratio 1:1 (*circles*); 1:10 (*squares*), 1:100 (*triangles*)) is shown

is used. DQ-OVA is a self-quenched conjugate that only emits fluorescence upon proteolytic digestion. DQ-OVA fluorescence excitation and emission are close to fluorescein (FITC) but contrary to FITC-labeled proteins, DQ-OVA is labelled with a photostable dye in a pH range of 3–9, which makes it suitable for phagosomal antigen degradation studies.

1. Culture and harvest macrophages as previously described. Wash cells with PFE. Count cell numbers and resuspend cell pellet in complete medium to a concentration of 10^6 cells/ml.
2. Place 1 ml of the cell suspension into as many tubes as conditions to test. At least two 15 ml tubes are needed, one for the sample and one for the negative control.
3. Place one tube containing cells at 37 °C and another on ice (negative control) for at least 30 min.
4. Add both fluorescent OVA proteins into macrophage cell suspension at a final concentration of 1 μg/ml each.
5. Incubate tubes for the desired time points either at 37 °C or on ice.
6. Resuspend each tube and recover 100 μl of each cell suspension. Stop endocytosis and degradation by placing them rapidly into ice and wash with cold PFE. From this point on, cells must be kept on ice (*see* **Note 9**).
7. Cells can directly be analyzed by flow cytometry or fixed with PFA 2 % for 20 min, then washed with PFE, and stored at 4 °C (*see* **Note 10**).
8. Determine the percentage and the mean fluorescence intensity in the APC channel (for endocytosis) and FITC channel

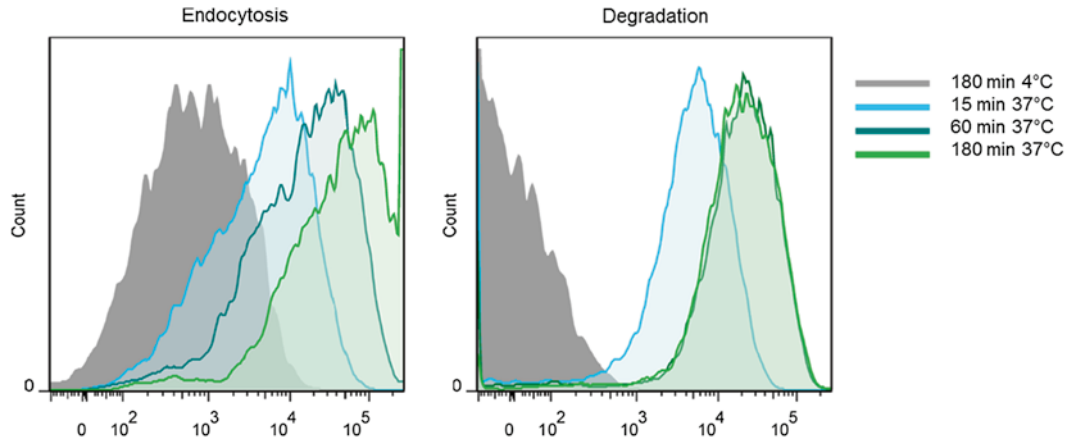


Fig. 3 Endocytosis and antigen degradation kinetics. Evaluation of endocytosis and antigen degradation were assessed as previously described. A representative histogram displaying different time points is shown. 4 °C control is shown filled in *grey*

(for antigen degradation). Figure 3 shows an example of the endocytic and degradative capacity of Mreg at different time points, whereas Mregs continuously endocyte OVA particles, and degradation rises a maximal kinetics at 60 min.

3.3 Assessment of Mregs Immunoregulatory Properties

In order to assess the ability of Mreg to induce hypoproliferation of allogeneic T lymphocytes, co-cultures between complete mismatched cells are performed. Proliferation of responder cells from Balb/C mice are used as the readout of the assay.

3.3.1 Allogeneic Co-culture

1. Prepare macrophage dilutions:
   (a) Culture and harvest macrophages as previously described. Wash cells with PFE. Count cell numbers and resuspend the pellet in complete medium to a concentration of 5×10^6 cells/ml.
   (b) Perform serial dilutions. Ratios can range from 1:2 to 1:128 (Mregs:T lymphocytes).
2. Prepare allogeneic T lymphocytes from spleen or lymph nodes (LN) from Balb/C mice:
   (a) Crush spleen or LN on a 100 μm nylon strainer with a syringe.
   (b) Rinse the strainer with PFE and recover cells in a 50 ml tube. Centrifuge the cell suspension.
   (c) Discard supernatant and resuspend cellular pellet in 5 ml of RBCL solution for 5 min in order to eliminate erythrocytes.
   (d) Add 45 ml of PFE to stop the reaction and centrifuge for 10 min at 500 × *g*. Discard supernatant.

(e) Repeat **step d**.

(f) Resuspend cell pellet in 10 ml of PFE and filter them using a 100 μm filter.

(g) Determine cell number and proceed to magnetic separation of T lymphocytes, following the manufacturer's instructions.

(h) After purification, label T lymphocytes with carboxyfluorescein diacetate succinimidyl ester (CFDA-SE). Wash to remove the excess of dye.

(i) Determine lymphocyte numbers and resuspend them in complete medium at a density of 10^6 cells/ml.

3. Pour the following into round-bottom 96-well plates (*see* **Note 11**).
   - 100 μl of Mreg suspension (of each dilution) or 100 μl of complete medium as a basal T lymphocyte proliferation control.
   - 100 μl of Balb/C CFDA-SE labelled T lymphocytes.
4. Culture plates at 37 °C and 5 % of CO_2 for 4 days.
5. Assess T lymphocyte's proliferation by CFDA-SE dilution using flow cytometry. An example of the hypostimulatory capacity of Mregs is shown in Fig. 4.

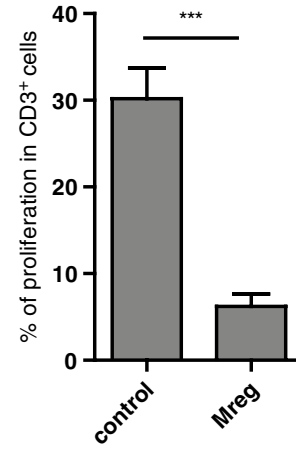


Fig. 4 Mregs display hypostimulatory capacity in allogeneic co-cultures. Mreg capacity to stimulate allogeneic T lymphocytes was evaluated in direct 4d co-cultures as previously described. The figure shows a 1:8 ratio (myeloid cell:T lymphocyte). Control cells were generated by culturing bone marrow precursors with 40 ng/ml of GM-CSF for 8 days. Data are represented as mean ± SEM of three independent experiments. Statistical analyses were performed using Mann-Whitney test, two-tailed, ***$p < 0.0001$

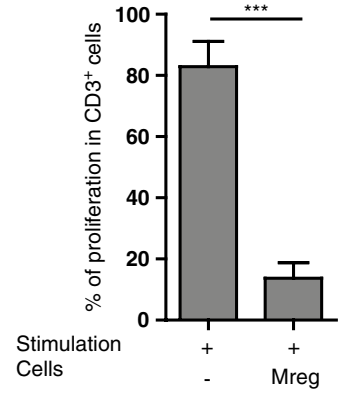


Fig. 5 Mregs suppress polyclonal T cell activation. Mreg capacity to stimulate suppress a CD3/aCD28-stimulated T lymphocytes proliferation was evaluated as previously described. The figure shows a 1:2/1/5 ration (myeloid cell:T lymphocytes:microbeads). Data are represented as mean ± SEM of three independent experiments. Statistical analyses were performed using Mann-Whitney test, two-tailed, ***$p < 0.0001$

3.3.2 Suppression Test

In this protocol, T lymphocytes are polyclonally stimulated with αCD3/αCD28-coated microbeads (*see* **Note 12**). Syngeneic Mregs are added to the culture to test their suppressive capacity.

1. Culture and harvest macrophages as previously described. Wash cells with PFE. Count cell numbers and resuspend the pellet in complete medium to a concentration of 10^6 cells/ml.
2. Prepare syngeneic T lymphocytes from C57BL/6 mice as already explained in "allogeneic co-culture" (**step 2**). Resuspend CFDA-SE-labeled T lymphocytes to concentration of 10^6 cells/ml.
3. Prepare polyclonal stimulation: wash αCD3/αCD28 coated microbeads with PBS using the BD™IMagnet and resuspend them in complete medium to a final concentration of 2×10^5 beads/ml.
4. Pour the following into round-bottom 96-well plates:
   - 100 μl of C57BL/6 CFDA-SE-labeled T lymphocytes.
   - 50 μl of αCD3/αCD28-coated beads.
5. Incubate for 30 min at 37 °C and 5 % of CO_2 (*see* **Note 13**).
6. Add 50 μl of Mreg suspension or 50 μl of complete medium as a proliferation control.
7. Culture plates at 37 °C and 5 % of CO_2 for 4 days.
8. Assess T lymphocyte's proliferation by CFDA-SE dilution using flow cytometry. Mreg are able to efficiently suppress polyclonal T lymphocyte proliferation (Fig. 5).

4 Notes

1. BM derived Mreg can be generated from any mouse strain. However, functional differences may be observed depending on the mouse strain they derive from [8].
2. Other bacterial strains can be used. In that case, it is important to adapt reagents used for bacterial growth and spread to the bacterial strain used.
3. Bacteria should be used when they are at the exponential phase of the culture, obtained when $OD_{600nm} = 0.4–0.6$.
4. The initial bacterial concentration depends on the MOI chosen for the experiments. It is recommended to try different MOIs before starting experiments.
5. Phagocytic capacity of macrophages can also be analysed by counting internalized bacteria at time point 0, expressing values as "number of CFU/initial bacteria numbers."
6. Alternatively, macrophages can be lysed by resuspension in 0.2 % Triton-X 100.
7. At that point, cell lysates can be conserved at 4 °C for some days.
8. In some cases, it may be important to count living macrophages after harvesting (**step 8**). Values can then be expressed as "number of CFU/10^3 live macrophages."
9. The same tube is used for each time point. When needed, take 100 μl of the cellular dilution for endocytosis/antigen degradation analysis.
10. Cells can be stained for a viability dye before flow cytometry analysis. It must be essential when treating cells with new drugs which may affect cell viability.
11. It is recommended to perform triplicates of each ratio.
12. Alternatively, αCD3-coated plates and soluble αCD28 antibody stimulation can be used.
13. This step is to facilitate the recognition between antibodies and their target surface molecules before addition of Mregs. If coated plates and soluble antibodies are used, this step can be skipped.

References

1. Bluestone JA, Thomson AW, Shevach EM, Weiner HL (2007) What does the future hold for cell-based tolerogenic therapy? Nat Rev Immunol 7:650–654
2. Murray PJ, Wynn TA (2011) Protective and pathogenic functions of macrophage subsets. Nat Rev Immunol 11:723–737
3. Davies LC, Jenkins SJ, Allen JE, Taylor PR (2013) Tissue-resident macrophages. Nat Immunol 14:986–995
4. Riquelme P et al (2013) IFN-γ-induced iNOS expression in mouse regulatory macrophages prolongs allograft survival in fully immunocompetent recipients. Mol Ther 21:409–422

5. Hutchinson JA, Riquelme P, Geissler EK, Fändrich F (2011) Human regulatory macrophages. Methods Mol Biol 677:181–192
6. Hutchinson JA et al (2011) Cutting edge: immunological consequences and trafficking of human regulatory macrophages administered to renal transplant recipients. J Immunol 187:2072–2078
7. Sokolovska A, Becker CE, Stuart LM (2012) Measurement of phagocytosis, phagosome acidification, and intracellular killing of Staphylococcus aureus. Curr Protoc Immunol. Chapter 14, Unit14.30
8. Sans-Fons MG et al (2013) Arginine transport is impaired in C57Bl/6 mouse macrophages as a result of a deletion in the promoter of Slc7a2 (CAT2), and susceptibility to Leishmania infection is reduced. J Infect Dis 207: 1684–1693

Chapter 7

Generation and Expansion of T Helper 17 Lymphocytes Ex Vivo

Darya Alizadeh and Nicolas Larmonier

Abstract

CD4+ T helper (Th) lymphocytes are essential elements of the complex cellular networks regulating the initiation, development, and termination of adaptive immune responses. Different independent and specialized subsets of Th cells can be distinguished based on their dedicated transcription factor and cytokine expression profiles. Th17 lymphocytes have been described about a decade ago as CD4+ Th cells producing high quantity of IL-17A as a signature cytokine. Since their initial discovery, Th17 have drawn intense scrutiny for their dominant role in the pathogenesis of multiple autoimmune, infectious diseases and allergy. The influence of Th17 lymphocytes in cancer remains however ambiguous. The plethoric functions of Th17 may rely on the remarkable plasticity of these cells, endowed with the ability to transdifferentiate into other Th subpopulations depending on the environmental cytokine context. The possibility to generate Th17 ex vivo has facilitated the elucidation of the signals and transcription factors required for their differentiation and functions and has allowed for the evaluation of their functions following adoptive transfer in vivo. Several protocols have been developed to produce Th17 in vitro. The intent of this chapter is to provide examples of procedures for generating and expanding Th17 ex vivo.

Key words Th17 lymphocytes, Mouse, Human, Ex vivo generation

1 Introduction

CD4+ T helper (Th) lymphocytes critically contribute to the development and coordination of immune responses. They provide essential support to CD8+ cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) [1, 2], B lymphocytes [3], natural killer cells (NK) [4] and significantly participate to the recruitment and activation of innate cells such as macrophages and dendritic cells (DC) [5–7]. The activation of naïve CD4+ T lymphocytes requires the recognition of antigenic peptides in the context of MHC Class II by their specific receptor (TCR) together with co-stimulatory signals delivered by antigen-presenting cells. Different subtypes of activated antigen-experienced CD4+ T cells exhibiting distinct phenotypic and functional properties can be produced depending on the nature of the cytokines present in the microenvironment [8–10]. A growing number

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_7,

of Th lymphocyte subsets have been characterized based on their cytokine secretion profile and their dedicated differentiation programs controlled by specific transcription factors [11–13]. These Th lineages include well-characterized Th1 and Th2 cells as well as regulatory (immunosuppressive) T lymphocytes (Treg) and more recently identified Th9, Th22, T follicular, and Th17 [7, 12, 14, 15].

Cardinal features inherent to Th17 include the secretion of substantial amounts of interleukin 17A (IL-17A) and the expression of the transcription factor retinoic acid receptor-related orphan receptor gamma t (RORγt) [16, 17]. In addition, Th17 cells produce IL-21 and IL-22 [18] and, depending on the differentiation/environmental conditions, secrete variable amounts of TNFα, IFNγ, and/or GM-CSF [19–23]. Th17 represent a dominant pro-inflammatory lymphocyte subpopulation involved in the elimination of pathogens that are not cleared by Th1 or Th2 responses. These cells are also potent inducers of tissue inflammation and contribute to the pathogenesis of multiple autoimmune diseases in animals and humans [12, 21, 24]. Of note, the role of Th17 in the development of cancer remains debatable [25]. Adoptive transfer experiments have supported the antitumoral effects of Th17, highlighting their potential therapeutic interest [23, 26–29], but the significance of the presence of endogenous Th17 that develop in a context of progressing cancer is unclear [18, 30, 31]. This unstable balance between the pro- versus antitumoral function of Th17 likely stems from the high plasticity of these cells, capable of trans-differentiating into either pro-inflammatory effector cells such as Th1 [32] or immunosuppressive FoxP3$^+$Treg [33] depending on the environmental conditions [25]. In this context, the concentration of TGFβ1 present in the milieu is an important factor determining the pro- or anti- inflammatory characteristics of polarized Th17.

Many different protocols have been used to generate Th17 in vitro from naïve CD4$^+$ T lymphocytes using specific cytokine cocktails. In mice, TGFβ1, IL-6, and IL-23, in the presence of TCR and CD28 signals (antigen-presenting cells, plate-bound anti-CD3 plus anti-CD28 or anti-CD3/anti-CD28-coated microbeads) are required and sufficient to induce the differentiation of naïve CD4$^+$CD25$^-$ T cells into Th17 [25, 34]. IL-6, by inhibiting TGFβ-induced FoxP3 expression, blocks Treg differentiation, resulting in the polarization of naive T cells towards IL-17-producing RORγt$^+$ lymphocytes. However, some studies have demonstrated that pathogenic Th17, responsible for the development of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE), can be generated in IL-6$^{-/-}$ mice [20, 35]. These results highlight the possibility that Th17 can also develop in absence of IL-6. IL-21 has been identified as an alternative factor capable of inhibiting TGFβ-induced FoxP3 expression in the absence of IL-6 [20, 36]. IL-21 is produced in large quantities by Th17 and fosters an autocrine amplification feed-back loop increasing Th17 generation in

the absence of IL-6 [37]. IL-23 also plays an essential role in Th17 development. The IL-23 receptor (IL-23R) is composed of IL23R and IL-12Rβ2 [38]. The level of expression of IL-23R by naïve $CD4^+$ T cells is very low, while Th17 highly express this receptor. In agreement with these considerations, IL-23 does not seem required for Th17 initial lineage commitment, but this cytokine enhances Th17 expansion and promotes their survival, stabilization and pro-inflammatory properties [39]. Consistently, the number of Th17 is significantly reduced in IL-23p19-deficient mice compared to their wild-type counterparts [40, 41]. Additionally, IL-23 substantially contributes to the pathogenic functions of Th17 [40, 42]. Finally, IL-23 is a critical factor required for the generation of prolonged in vitro Th17 cultures [39]. IL-1β, by inducing interferon regulatory factor 4 (IRF4) which is a critical regulator of IL-21, has also been reported as an additional factor involved in the differentiation of Th17 cells in pro-inflammatory environments [43, 44]. In humans, the precise parameters required for Th17 differentiation remain unclear. Although some reports have argued that TGFβ1 may not be needed for human Th17 generation [45–47], others have reported that this cytokine is essential for the development of these cells [36, 48]. The possibility of producing Th17 with TGFβ plus IL-21 but not IL-6 has been proposed [36] and IL-1β alone or in combination with TGFβ has also been used to generate human Th17 [49]. Importantly and similar to the results obtained in mice, the presence of IL-23 is required for Th17 stabilization and optimal proliferation [50].

As Th17 cells have gained increasing interest in the field of autoimmunity, infectious diseases and cancer, the development of protocols allowing for the production of large number of these cells ex vivo is essential to further study their function, regulation, lineage stability and impact in different pathologies. For instance, the developmental fate of Th17 adoptively transferred to cancer-bearing hosts and the influence of the tumor environment on their lineage commitment and pro-inflammatory properties remain to be clearly elucidated. The possibility to harness the therapeutic potential of these cells against infectious agents or cancer represents another application of ex vivo-generated Th17. In this chapter, we describe examples of procedures suitable for in vitro generation of mouseand human Th17 lymphocytes from naïve $CD4^+CD25^-$ T cells.

2 Materials

2.1 Murine Th17 Generation

1. Six- to eight-week-old mice.
2. Complete medium for murine Th17 generation: RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10 % FBS, 100 U/ml penicillin, 100 μg/ml

streptomycin sulfate, 0.5× MEM nonessential amino acids, and 1 mM sodium pyruvate.

3. Naive $CD4^+CD62L^+$ T Cell Isolation Kit II, mouse (Miltenyi Biotech, catalogue # 130-093-227).
4. AutoMACS separator or LS Columns and magnets (MidiMACS or QuadroMACS (Miltenyi).
5. Anti-CD3/anti-CD28-coated (expansion/activation) microbeads (Invitrogen).
6. Magnet (DynaMag™-15 Magnet, Invitrogen) to recover washed microbeads.
7. Cytokines: mouse IL-12, IL-2, IL-7, IL-6, TGFβ (Peprotech) and IL-23 (R&D Systems).
8. Blocking antibodies: anti-mouse IFNγ and anti-mouse IL-4 antibodies (Affymetrix eBioscience).

2.2 Human Th17 Generation

1. Human PBMC.
2. Complete Medium (CM): AIM-V medium containing glutamine, nonessential amino acids, 10 mM Hepes buffer, and 1 mM sodium pyruvate.
3. Ficoll-Paque™ PLUS (GE Healthcare Bio-Sciences AB).
4. Miltenyi Human Naïve T Cell Isolation Kit II (Cat#: 130-094-131).
5. AutoMACS separator or LS Columns and magnets (MidiMACS or QuadroMACS (Miltenyi).
6. Human Anti-CD3/anti-CD28-coated microbeads (Invitrogen).
7. Magnet (DynaMag™-15 Magnet, Invitrogen) to recover washed microbeads.
8. Cytokines: Human IL-6, TGFβ1, IL-1β, IL-2 and IL-23 (Miltenyi).

2.3 Real-Time PCR

1. NanoDrop ND1000 spectrophotometer (NanoDrop).
2. Primers specific for RORγT and T-bet (ABI; Applied Biosystems), RNA extraction kit (Qiagen RNAeasy Mini kit), Reverse transcription (iScript cDNA synthesis kit), and Real-Time PCR reagent (IQ Supermix) (Bio-Rad).
3. Bio-Rad iCycler iQ real-time PCR detection system (Bio-Rad).

2.4 Flow Cytometry

1. Flow cytometry buffer (1× PBS, 1 % BSA).
2. Human FcγR (Fc-gamma receptor)-binding inhibitor (Affymetrix Ebioscience).
3. 1× Fixation/Permeabilization buffer (Affymetrix Ebioscience).

4. Anti-human/mouse RORγt-PE (clone AFKJS-9), anti-human/mouse Tbet-PE (clone eBio4B10), mouse IgG1K Isotype Control-PE (clone P3.6.2.8.1), rat IgG2a K Isotype Control-PE (Clone eBR2a) (Affymetrix Ebioscience).
5. LSRII-Fortessa flow cytometer (BD bioscience).
6. Flowjo software (Vx, Tree Star, Inc).

2.5 ELISAs

1. Human IL-17A ELISA Ready-SET-Go!® (Affymetrix ebioscience).
2. Human IFN-gamma ELISA Ready-SET-Go!® (Affymetrix ebioscience).

2.6 General Materials

1. Sterile PBS.
2. Red blood cell lysis buffer (BD biosciences).
3. Cell strainer.
4. Centrifuge tubes.
5. Hemocytometer.
6. 0.4 % Trypan blue.
7. MACS sorting buffer (0.5 % BSA, 2 mM EDTA).
8. 24-Well plates and Petri dishes.

3 Methods

3.1 Generation of Murine Th17 Lymphocytes Ex Vivo

1. Euthanize mice by carbon dioxide asphyxiation or other approved techniques and harvest spleens. Cut the spleens in small pieces with scissors and dissociate the tissues in a 40 μm cell strainer with a 5 ml syringe plunger in a Petri dish containing complete medium to obtain a single-cell suspension.
2. Collect the cell suspension in a 50 ml tube and centrifuge at 300 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C. Remove the supernatant.
3. Resuspend the pellet in red blood cell lysis buffer and incubate for 1 min.
4. Add complete culture medium and centrifuge (400 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C). Remove the supernatant.
5. Resuspend cells in MACS sorting buffer and determine the number of viable cells using trypan blue and a hemocytometer.
6. Isolate naive $CD4^+CD25^-CD62L^+$ T lymphocytes using a $CD4^+CD62L^+$ T cell isolation kit II strictly following the manufacturer's instructions. The isolation requires two steps: (1) Depletion of non-$CD4^+$ T cells using a biotin-antibody cocktail II and anti-biotin microbeads. Cells are separated using an AutoMACS device (program "Depletes") or LS columns and a

MidiMACS or QuadroMACS magnet and the negative fraction enriched in $CD4^+$ cells (flow-through) is collected (outlet port neg1 of the AutoMACS). (2) Positive selection of $CD4^+CD62L^+$ T cells using CD62L microbeads. Cells are separated using an AutoMACS device (program "Possel") or MS columns, and the positive fraction is collected (outlet port pos1 of the AutoMACS). Cell labeling is performed in MACS sorting buffer and incubation times are as described by the provider.

7. Centrifuge cells (400 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C). Remove the supernatant.
8. Resuspend purified naïve $CD4^+$ T cells at a concentration of 10^6 cells/ml in complete culture medium.
9. Wash the appropriate amount of anti-mouse CD3/anti-mouse CD28-coated expansion/activation beads (*see* **step 10**) in a 15 ml tube with PBS and EDTA and recover the beads using a DynaMag™-15 Magnet as instructed by the provider.
10. Add washed expansion/activation beads at a ratio of 2 beads to 1 naïve $CD4^+$ T lymphocyte.
11. Add cytokines and blocking antibodies: 40 ng/ml IL-6, 0.5 ng/ml TGFβ1, 5 μg/ml blocking anti-IFNγ, and 5 μg/ml blocking anti-IL-4 antibodies.
12. Plate cells in 24-well plates (1 ml, 10^6 cells/well).
13. After 3 days, collect cells, remove expansion/activation beads using a DynaMag™-15 Magnet and repeat **steps 7–9**.
14. Add 40 ng/ml IL-23 and plate cells in 24-well plates (1 ml, 10^6 cells/well).
15. On day 6, cells expressing the transcription factor RORγt and producing IL-17 can be obtained (Fig. 1). The generated cells can be characterized by real-time PCR, flow cytometry or ELISA for expression of specific markers and transcription factors and cytokine production. These polarized cells can also be used for further analyses in vitro or to evaluate their therapeutic potential in vivo [26].

3.2 Generation of Human Th17 Lymphocytes Ex Vivo

1. Collect blood from healthy volunteers or patients as desired (100–300 ml).
2. Dilute blood in 1× PBS (approximately 1 to 2 dilution).
3. Pipet 15 ml of Ficoll-Paque™ PLUS in a 50 ml tube.
4. Gently layer 30 ml of diluted blood onto the Ficoll.
5. Centrifuge the samples at 930 × *g* for 20 min at room temperature with no brake.
6. Collect the peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) layer from the Ficoll gradient and transfer the cells in a 50 ml tube.

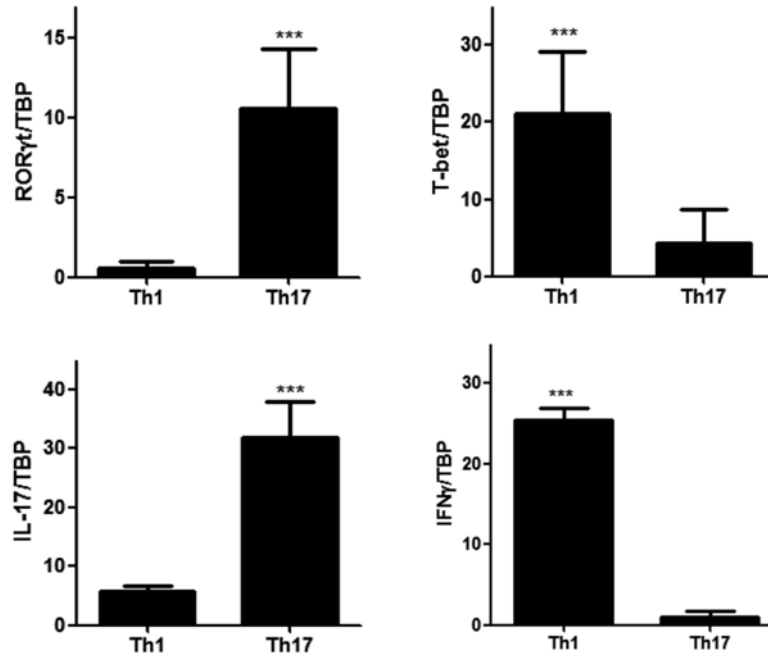


Fig. 1 Example of mouse Th17 lymphocyte generation in vitro. Mouse naïve CD4+ T cells were cultured in Th17-polarizing conditions and analyzed for RORγt and IL-17 expression. Cells were collected at the end of the differentiation period and RORγt, Tbet, IL-17, and IFNγ mRNA expression was determined by RT-PCR. Th1 cells, generated as reported [26], were used as comparison. Data are represented as mean ± SEM of three different experiments (***, $p < 0.001$)

7. Centrifuge cells (300 × *g*, 5 min, room temperature) and wash twice in PBS.
8. Resuspend the cells in MACS sorting buffer and determine cell number.
9. Perform isolation of naïve T lymphocytes using Miltenyi Human Naïve T Cell Isolation Kit II strictly following the provider's instructions. Untouched naïve CD4+ T cells are isolated by depletion of non-CD4+ T lymphocytes and of memory CD4+ T cells that are labeled with a cocktail of biotin-conjugated antibodies and anti-biotin microbeads. Cells are separated using an AutoMACS device (program "Depletes") or LS columns and a MidiMACS or QuadroMACS magnet and the negative fraction enriched in naïve CD4+ cells (flow-through) is collected (outlet port neg1 of the AutoMACS).
10. Centrifuge cells (300 × *g*, 5 min, room temperature) and determine cell number.
11. Resuspend naïve CD4+ T cells in CM (~1 million cells/ml).
12. Wash the appropriate amount of anti-human CD3/anti-human CD28-coated expansion/activation beads (*see* **step 13**)

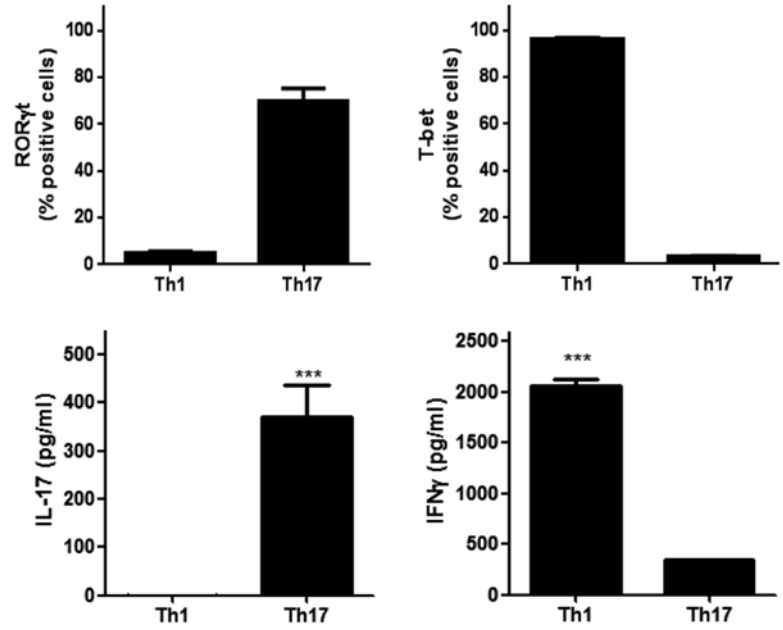


Fig. 2 Example of human Th17 lymphocyte generation in vitro.Human CD4+ T cells were cultured in Th17-polarizing conditions and analyzed for RORγT expression and IL-17 production. Cells were collected at the end of the differentiation period and the percentage of RORγt + and Tbet + cells was determined by flow cytometry. The concentration of IL-17 and IFNγ was detected by ELISA in 48 h culture supernatants (10^6 cells/ml). Th1 lymphocytes were used as comparison. Th1 were generated following the same procedures as for Th17 cells, except that (**a**) human IL-2 (20 UI/ml), human IL-12 (10 ng/ml), human IL-7 (20 ng/ml) were used, (**b**) the beads to T cell ratio was 1 to 1, and (**c**) cells were cultured for a total of 3 days (***, $p < 0.001$)

in a 15 ml tube with PBS and EDTA and recover the beads using a DynaMag™-15 Magnet strictly following the provider's instructions.

13. Add washed beads at a ratio of 2 beads to 1 naïve CD4+T lymphocyte.
14. Add cytokines: 20 ng/ml human IL-6, 5 ng/ml TGFβ1, 50 ng/ml IL-1β, 5 ng/ml IL-2.
15. Plate cells in 24-well plates (1 ml, 10^6 cells/well).
16. After 3 days, add 50 ng/ml human IL-23 in 1 ml of fresh CM per well.
17. Split cell by half on day 5 and add fresh CM to each well.
18. CD4+ T cells expressing RORγt and producing IL-17 (Fig. 2) can be collected on day 6–7 for further analyses. The generated cells can be characterized by real time PCR, flow cytometry or ELISA for expression of specific markers and transcription factors and cytokine production.

3.3 Characterization of Ex Vivo-Generated Th17 Cells

3.3.1 Real-Time PCR

1. Extract total mRNA from the collected cells using Qiagen RNAeasy Mini kit strictly following the manufacturer's protocol.
2. Measure RNA concentration using NanoDrop ND1000 spectrophotometer.
3. Run reverse transcription reaction using 250 ng of total RNA and iScript cDNA synthesis kit, following the manufacturer's instructions.
4. Real-time PCR reaction: 20 μl of the PCR reactions are set up in 96-well plates containing 10 μl 2× IQ Supermix, 1 μl TaqMan® primer/probe set, 2 μl of the cDNA synthesis reaction, and 7 μl of nuclease-free water. Reactions are run and analyzed on a Bio-Rad iCycler iQ real-time PCR detection system.
5. Analysis: Cycling parameters are determined and resulting data are analyzed by using the comparative C_t method as means of relative quantification, normalized to an endogenous reference (TATA Box Bonding Protein, TBP) and relative to a calibrator (normalized C_t value obtained from control cells), and expressed as $2^{-\Delta\Delta}C^t$ (Applied Biosystems User Bulletin #2: Rev B "Relative Quantification of Gene Expression").

3.3.2 Flow Cytometry

1. One million cells are washed in flow cytometry buffer and incubated for 15 min with human FcγR (Fc-gamma receptor)-binding inhibitor.
2. Cells are incubated with 1× fixation/permeabilization buffer at 4 °C for 30–45 min.
3. Cells are washed twice with 1× permeabilization buffer.
4. Cells are incubated with anti-human/mouse RORγt-PE, anti-human/mouse Tbet-PE or Mouse IgG1K Isotype Control-PE) or Rat IgG2a K Isotype Control-PE at 4 °C for 30 min.
5. Samples are washed twice with 1× permeabilization buffer, then once with 1× PBS.
6. Samples are resuspended in 1× PBS and analyzed using a LSRII-Fortessa flow cytometer.
7. Data are analyzed using Flowjo software.

3.3.3 ELISA

1. Generated human Th cells are cultured for 48 h (10^6 cells in 1 ml CM per well of a 24-well plate) in the presence of anti-human CD3/anti-human CD28-coated expansion/activation beads (2 beads to 1T lymphocyte) and the culture supernatant is collected and centrifuged (300×*g*, 5 min, room temperature).
2. IL-17 and IFN-γ are detected in cell-free culture supernatants by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays using human IL-17A

ELISA Ready-SET-Go!® or Human IFN-gamma ELISA Ready-SET-Go!® reagent sets strictly following the manufacturer's instructions.

4 Notes

1. To obtained optimal cell purity, start from single-cell suspension and strictly follow the provider's instructions regarding cell number and amount of beads (Miltenyi Biotech).
2. Keep cells on ice or at 4 °C during the isolation procedures until plating. Use pre-chilled MACS buffer (Miltenyi Biotech).
3. When purifying PBMC on Ficoll monolayers, ensure that the blood does not mix with the Ficoll before centrifugation. When collecting the PBMC ring, do not mix with or collect Ficoll (Miltenyi Biotech).
4. Cell viability of purified naïve T lymphocytes before initiation of the cultures should be 90–100 % (Miltenyi Biotech).
5. Activation beads should be washed in a minimum of 1–2 ml of buffer by extensive mixing (Miltenyi Biotech).
6. Examine cell cultures every day and split cultures if necessary depending on growth rate. Cell clusters should be observed. Do not let cells overgrow (Miltenyi Biotech).
7. Cytokine reconstitution and storage should be performed according to the provider's instructions. Avoid using products that are close to their expiration date. Avoid freeze/thaw cycles (Miltenyi Biotech).

Acknowledgments

The authors thank Martin Asimis for technical assistance with the characterization of human Th17 cells and Claire Larmonier for technical assistance with real-time PCR.

References

1. Sun JC, Bevan MJ (2003) Defective CD8 T cell memory following acute infection without CD4 T cell help. Science 300:339–342
2. Sun JC, Williams MA, Bevan MJ (2004) CD4+ T cells are required for the maintenance, not programming, of memory CD8+ T cells after acute infection. Nat Immunol 5:927–933
3. Mitsdoerffer M, Lee Y, Jager A, Kim HJ, Korn T, Kolls JK, Cantor H, Bettelli E, Kuchroo VK (2010) Proinflammatory T helper type 17 cells are effective B-cell helpers. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107:14292–14297
4. Kelly MN, Zheng M, Ruan S, Kolls J, D'Souza A, Shellito JE (2013) Memory CD4+ T cells are required for optimal NK cell effector functions against the opportunistic fungal pathogen Pneumocystis murina. J Immunol 190: 285–295
5. DeNardo DG, Barreto JB, Andreu P, Vasquez L, Tawfik D, Kolhatkar N, Coussens LM

(2009) CD4(+) T cells regulate pulmonary metastasis of mammary carcinomas by enhancing protumor properties of macrophages. Cancer Cell 16:91–102

6. Veldhoen M, Moncrieffe H, Hocking RJ, Atkins CJ, Stockinger B (2006) Modulation of dendritic cell function by naive and regulatory CD4+ T cells. J Immunol 176:6202–6210
7. Shevach EM, DiPaolo RA, Andersson J, Zhao DM, Stephens GL, Thornton AM (2006) The lifestyle of naturally occurring CD4+ CD25+ Foxp3+ regulatory T cells. Immunol Rev 212:60–73
8. Romagnani S (1997) The Th1/Th2 paradigm. Immunol Today 18:263–266
9. Mosmann TR, Coffman RL (1989) TH1 and TH2 cells: different patterns of lymphokine secretion lead to different functional properties. Annu Rev Immunol 7:145–173
10. Zheng W, Flavell RA (1997) The transcription factor GATA-3 is necessary and sufficient for Th2 cytokine gene expression in CD4 T cells. Cell 89:587–596
11. Baeten DL, Kuchroo VK (2013) How Cytokine networks fuel inflammation: interleukin-17 and a tale of two autoimmune diseases. Nat Med 19:824–825
12. Muranski P, Restifo NP (2013) Essentials of Th17 cell commitment and plasticity. Blood 121(13):2402–2414
13. Knutson KL, Disis ML (2005) Tumor antigen-specific T helper cells in cancer immunity and immunotherapy. Cancer Immunol Immunother 54:721–728
14. Tangye SG, Ma CS, Brink R, Deenick EK (2013) The good, the bad and the ugly – TFH cells in human health and disease. Nat Rev Immunol 13:412–426
15. Jabeen R, Kaplan MH (2012) The symphony of the ninth: the development and function of Th9 cells. Curr Opin Immunol 24:303–307
16. Yang XO, Pappu BP, Nurieva R, Akimzhanov A, Kang HS, Chung Y, Ma L, Shah B, Panopoulos AD, Schluns KS, Watowich SS, Tian Q, Jetten AM, Dong C (2008) T helper 17 lineage differentiation is programmed by orphan nuclear receptors ROR alpha and ROR gamma. Immunity 28:29–39
17. Ivanov BS II, McKenzie L, Zhou CE, Tadokoro A, Lepelley JJ, Lafaille DJC, Littman DR (2006) The orphan nuclear receptor RORgammat directs the differentiation program of proinflammatory IL-17+ T helper cells. Cell 126:1121–1133
18. Kryczek I, Banerjee M, Cheng P, Vatan L, Szeliga W, Wei S, Huang E, Finlayson E, Simeone D, Welling TH, Chang A, Coukos G, Liu R, Zou W (2009) Phenotype, distribution, generation, and functional and clinical relevance of Th17 cells in the human tumor environments. Blood 114:1141–1149
19. Kebir H, Ifergan I, Alvarez JI, Bernard M, Poirier J, Arbour N, Duquette P, Prat A (2009) Preferential recruitment of interferon-gamma-expressing TH17 cells in multiple sclerosis. Ann Neurol 66:390–402
20. Korn T, Bettelli E, Gao W, Awasthi A, Jager A, Strom TB, Oukka M, Kuchroo VK (2007) IL-21 initiates an alternative pathway to induce proinflammatory T(H)17 cells. Nature 448: 484–487
21. Korn T, Bettelli E, Oukka M, Kuchroo VK (2009) IL-17 and Th17 cells. Annu Rev Immunol 27:485–517
22. Kryczek I, Zhao E, Liu Y, Wang Y, Vatan L, Szeliga W, Moyer J, Klimczak A, Lange A, Zou W (2011) Human TH17 cells are long-lived effector memory cells. Sci Transl Med 3: 104ra100
23. Martin-Orozco N, Muranski P, Chung Y, Yang XO, Yamazaki T, Lu S, Hwu P, Restifo NP, Overwijk WW, Dong C (2009) T helper 17 cells promote cytotoxic T cell activation in tumor immunity. Immunity 31:787–798
24. Wilke CM, Bishop K, Fox D, Zou W (2011) Deciphering the role of Th17 cells in human disease. Trends Immunol 32:603–611
25. Alizadeh D, Katsanis E, Larmonier N (2013) The multifaceted role of Th17 lymphocytes and their associated cytokines in cancer. Clin Dev Immunol 2013:957878
26. Alizadeh D, Trad M, Hanke NT, Larmonier CB, Janikashvili N, Bonnotte B, Katsanis E, Larmonier N (2014) Doxorubicin eliminates myeloid-derived suppressor cells and enhances the efficacy of adoptive T-cell transfer in breast cancer. Cancer Res 74:104–118
27. Muranski P, Boni A, Antony PA, Cassard L, Irvine KR, Kaiser A, Paulos CM, Palmer DC, Touloukian CE, Ptak K, Gattinoni L, Wrzesinski C, Hinrichs CS, Kerstann KW, Feigenbaum L, Chan CC, Restifo NP (2008) Tumor-specific Th17-polarized cells eradicate large established melanoma. Blood 112:362–373
28. Muranski P, Borman ZA, Kerkar SP, Klebanoff CA, Ji Y, Sanchez-Perez L, Sukumar M, Reger RN, Yu Z, Kern SJ, Roychoudhuri R, Ferreyra GA, Shen W, Durum SK, Feigenbaum L, Palmer DC, Antony PA, Chan CC, Laurence A, Danner RL, Gattinoni L, Restifo NP (2011) Th17 cells are long lived and retain a stem cell-like molecular signature. Immunity 35:972–985
29. Alizadeh D, Larmonier N (2014) Chemotherapeutic targeting of cancer-induced

immunosuppressive cells. Cancer Res 74: 2663–2668

30. Iida T, Iwahashi M, Katsuda M, Ishida K, Nakamori M, Nakamura M, Naka T, Ojima T, Ueda K, Hayata K, Nakamura Y, Yamaue H (2011) Tumor-infiltrating CD4+ Th17 cells produce IL-17 in tumor microenvironment and promote tumor progression in human gastric cancer. Oncol Rep 25:1271–1277
31. He S, Fei M, Wu Y, Zheng D, Wan D, Wang L, Li D (2011) Distribution and clinical significance of th17 cells in the tumor microenvironment and peripheral blood of pancreatic cancer patients. Int J Mol Sci 12:7424–7437
32. Kryczek I, Wei S, Gong W, Shu X, Szeliga W, Vatan L, Chen L, Wang G, Zou W (2008) Cutting edge: IFN-gamma enables APC to promote memory Th17 and abate Th1 cell development. J Immunol 181:5842–5846
33. Koenen HJ, Smeets RL, Vink PM, van Rijssen E, Boots AM, Joosten I (2008) Human CD25highFoxp3pos regulatory T cells differentiate into IL-17-producing cells. Blood 112: 2340–2352
34. Dong C (2009) Mouse Th17 cells: current understanding of their generation and regulation. Eur J Immunol 39:640–644
35. Korn T, Mitsdoerffer M, Croxford AL, Awasthi A, Dardalhon VA, Galileos G, Vollmar P, Stritesky GL, Kaplan MH, Waisman A, Kuchroo VK, Oukka M (2008) IL-6 controls Th17 immunity in vivo by inhibiting the conversion of conventional T cells into Foxp3+ regulatory T cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105:18460–18465
36. Yang L, Anderson DE, Baecher-Allan C, Hastings WD, Bettelli E, Oukka M, Kuchroo VK, Hafler DA (2008) IL-21 and TGF-beta are required for differentiation of human T(H)17 cells. Nature 454:350–352
37. Nurieva R, Yang XO, Martinez G, Zhang Y, Panopoulos AD, Ma L, Schluns K, Tian Q, Watowich SS, Jetten AM, Dong C (2007) Essential autocrine regulation by IL-21 in the generation of inflammatory T cells. Nature 448:480–483
38. Parham C, Chirica M, Timans J, Vaisberg E, Travis M, Cheung J, Pflanz S, Zhang R, Singh KP, Vega F, To W, Wagner J, O'Farrell AM, McClanahan T, Zurawski S, Hannum C, Gorman D, Rennick DM, Kastelein RA, de Waal Malefyt R, Moore KW (2002) A receptor for the heterodimeric cytokine IL-23 is composed of IL-12Rbeta1 and a novel cytokine receptor subunit, IL-23R. J Immunol 168:5699–5708
39. Stritesky GL, Yeh N, Kaplan MH (2008) IL-23 promotes maintenance but not commitment to the Th17 lineage. J Immunol 181:5948–5955
40. Cua DJ, Sherlock J, Chen Y, Murphy CA, Joyce B, Seymour B, Lucian L, To W, Kwan S, Churakova T, Zurawski S, Wiekowski M, Lira SA, Gorman D, Kastelein RA, Sedgwick JD (2003) Interleukin-23 rather than interleukin-12 is the critical cytokine for autoimmune inflammation of the brain. Nature 421: 744–748
41. Langrish CL, Chen Y, Blumenschein WM, Mattson J, Basham B, Sedgwick JD, McClanahan T, Kastelein RA, Cua DJ (2005) IL-23 drives a pathogenic T cell population that induces autoimmune inflammation. J Exp Med 201:233–240
42. Murphy CA, Langrish CL, Chen Y, Blumenschein W, McClanahan T, Kastelein RA, Sedgwick JD, Cua DJ (2003) Divergent pro- and antiinflammatory roles for IL-23 and IL-12 in joint autoimmune inflammation. J Exp Med 198:1951–1957
43. Chung Y, Chang SH, Martinez GJ, Yang XO, Nurieva R, Kang HS, Ma L, Watowich SS, Jetten AM, Tian Q, Dong C (2009) Critical regulation of early Th17 cell differentiation by interleukin-1 signaling. Immunity 30:576–587
44. Chen Q, Yang W, Gupta S, Biswas P, Smith P, Bhagat G, Pernis AB (2008) IRF-4-binding protein inhibits interleukin-17 and interleukin-21 production by controlling the activity of IRF-4 transcription factor. Immunity 29: 899–911
45. Acosta-Rodriguez EV, Rivino L, Geginat J, Jarrossay D, Gattorno M, Lanzavecchia A, Sallusto F, Napolitani G (2007) Surface phenotype and antigenic specificity of human interleukin 17-producing T helper memory cells. Nat Immunol 8:639–646
46. Wilson NJ, Boniface K, Chan JR, McKenzie BS, Blumenschein WM, Mattson JD, Basham B, Smith K, Chen T, Morel F, Lecron JC, Kastelein RA, Cua DJ, McClanahan TK, Bowman EP, de Waal Malefyt R (2007) Development, cytokine profile and function of human interleukin 17-producing helper T cells. Nat Immunol 8:950–957
47. Ghoreschi K, Laurence A, Yang XP, Tato CM, McGeachy MJ, Konkel JE, Ramos HL, Wei L, Davidson TS, Bouladoux N, Grainger JR, Chen Q, Kanno Y, Watford WT, Sun HW, Eberl G, Shevach EM, Belkaid Y, Cua DJ, Chen W, O'Shea JJ (2010) Generation of pathogenic T(H)17 cells in the absence of TGF-beta signalling. Nature 467:967–971
48. Manel N, Unutmaz D, Littman DR (2008) The differentiation of human T(H)-17 cells requires transforming growth factor-beta and induction of the nuclear receptor RORgammat. Nat Immunol 9:641–649

49. Hebel K, Rudolph M, Kosak B, Chang HD, Butzmann J, Brunner-Weinzierl MC (2011) IL-1beta and TGF-beta act antagonistically in induction and differentially in propagation of human proinflammatory precursor CD4+ T cells. J Immunol 187:5627–5635

50. Bettelli E, Carrier Y, Gao W, Korn T, Strom TB, Oukka M, Weiner HL, Kuchroo VK (2006) Reciprocal developmental pathways for the generation of pathogenic effector TH17 and regulatory T cells. Nature 441: 235–238

Part II

Animal Models of Immunoregulation

Chapter 8

Autoimmune Diabetes: An Overview of Experimental Models and Novel Therapeutics

Sylvaine You and Lucienne Chatenoud

Abstract

Type 1 diabetes (T1D) results from a chronic and selective destruction of insulin-secreting β-cells within the islets of Langerhans of the pancreas by autoreactive $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes. The use of animal models of T1D was instrumental for deciphering the steps of the autoimmune process leading to T1D. The non-obese diabetic (NOD) mouse and the bio-breeding (BB) rat spontaneously develop the disease similar to the human pathology in terms of the immune responses triggering autoimmune diabetes and of the genetic and environmental factors influencing disease susceptibility. The generation of genetically modified models allowed refining our understanding of the etiology and the pathogenesis of the disease. In the present review, we provide an overview of the experimental models generated and used to gain knowledge on the molecular and cellular mechanisms underlying the breakdown of self-tolerance in T1D and the progression of the autoimmune response. Immunotherapeutic interventions designed in these animal models and translated into the clinical arena in T1D patients will also be discussed.

Key words Autoimmunity, Type 1 diabetes, Pancreatic beta-cells, Autoantigens, Experimental models, T lymphocytes, NOD mice, Immunotherapies

1 Introduction

Type 1 diabetes (T1D), also termed insulin-dependent diabetes, is an organ-specific autoimmune disease that mostly affects children and young adults and whose incidence steadily increases in industrialized countries [1, 2]. Autoimmune diabetes results from the selective destruction of pancreatic insulin-secreting β-cells by an immune-mediated inflammation, involving autoreactive $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$T lymphocytes, which progressively invade the islets (insulitis) [3]. Diabetic symptoms are hyperglycemia, glucosuria, polyuria, and polydipsia. Current conventional treatment is substitutive and consists in chronic administration of exogenous insulin which, in spite of significant advances, is still associated with major constraints (multiple daily injections, risks of hypoglycemia) and lack of effectiveness over long term in preventing severe

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_8,

degenerative complications (retinopathy, nephropathy, neuropathy). For patients presenting poor diabetes control (including hypoglycemia unawareness and severe hypoglycemic events) or kidney failure as complication of their autoimmune disease, only transplantation of whole pancreas or of isolated islets of Langerhans, to reconstitute the β-cell mass, may lead to insulin independence and restore glycemic control associated with beneficial effects on secondary complications. However, in addition to the difficulties related to the organ availability and the transplant procedure, these grafts are subjected to the risks of rejection. Therefore, better understanding the pathological process leading to T1D and developing new strategies to halt the aberrant autoreactivity toward pancreatic β-cellautoantigens remains of great interest and a major challenge.

Studies on the etiology of T1D benefited from the availability of several rodent animal models allowing an in-depth analysis of the disease. Depending on the model, the animals present a spontaneous or an induced form of the disease which provides important clues for a deeper understanding of the various genetic, immune, and pathophysiological mediators involved in the breakdown of self-tolerance to pancreatic β-cells. Our aim here is to describe the different experimental models that have been established in an autoimmune prone or a normal genetic background (Table 1) to gain knowledge on T1D and to define clinically applicable therapeutic strategies.

2 Experimental Models

2.1 Spontaneous Diabetes

2.1.1 The Non-Obese Diabetic Mice

The non-obese diabetic (NOD) mice is the most widely used animal model for the study of T1D [4]. It has been developed more than 30 years ago and was originally spontaneously derived from the inbred cataract Shionogi (CTS) mice characterized by cataracts, themselves derived from the outbred Imperial Cancer Research (ICR) mice [5]. As in humans, T1D in NOD mice results from the chronic destruction of β-cells in the pancreas by the immune system leading to insulin deficiency, hyperglycemia, and glycosuria.

Under specific pathogen-free conditions, diabetes incidence reaches 80–95 % of female mice and 20–40 % of males by 40 weeks of age. This variability in disease incidence is in part related to the pathogen environment as the higher incidence is observed in "very clean" specific and opportunistic-free conditions (SOPF) and the sex bias is abrogated under germ-free conditions where NOD males develop T1D at a similar rate than females [1, 6]. In conventional non-SPF environment, frequency of diabetes can drop to levels as low as 10 % [7]. Animals decontaminated by embryo transfer and housed in isolator show again a 90 % disease incidence

Table 1
Experimental models of T1D

Spontaneous models	Mouse model	The non-obese diabetic (NOD) mouse		[5]
	Rat model	The bio-breeding (BB) rat		[59]
Genetically modified models	In normal non-autoimmune prone mouse strains	Rat insulin promoter (RIP)-driven expression	RIP-LCMV GP/NP	[77–79]
			RIP-HA	[80]
			RIP-HEL	[81]
			RIP-OVA	[82]
			RIP-IFNγ	[85, 90, 91]
			RIP-IL-2	[87]
			RIP-TNF α	[86]
			RIP-B7.1	[88, 89]
			RIP-I-A or I-E	[85]
	In the NOD autoimmune prone strain	T CR transgenes cloned from islet-infiltrating T cells	BDC2.5	[26, 94]
			8.3	[92]
			4.1	[93]
		Rat insulin promoter (RIP)-driven expression	RIP-LCMV GP/NP	[97]
			RIP-B7.1	[99]
			RIP-I-A or I-E	[101, 102]
			RIP-IL-4	[104]
			RIP-IL-10	[100]
			RIP-TGF-β	[105]
			RIP-FasL	[103]
		Invalidation of candidate genes	Ins2$^{-/-}$	[106]
			IFNγ$^{-/-}$	[107]
			IL-12$^{-/-}$	[108]
			IL-4$^{-/-}$	[109]
			IL-10$^{-/-}$	[110]
			CD28$^{-/-}$	[111]
			B7.1/B7.2$^{-/-}$	[54]
		Expression of human molecules (humanized models)	HLA-DR4	[112]
			HLA-A*0201	[114]
			HLA-A*1101	[118]
			HLA-B*0702	[118]
			huCD3ε	[119] [120]

as early as the first generation. In addition to T1D, NOD mice are prone to thyroiditis, sialitis, autoimmune hemolytic anemia, and lupus-like syndrome following particular treatments [8–12].

Autoimmune diabetes is a multigenic disease and, as in diabetic patients, extensive studies have been performed on the genetics of NOD mice addressing the presence of polymorphic loci positively or negatively associated with diabetes development. Chromosomal regions containing *Idd* (insulin-dependent diabetes) susceptibility loci have been identified [13, 14]. Variations in the major histocompatibility (MHC) genes, encoded in *Idd1*, are the major genetic

component controlling diabetes onset in NOD mice as well as in T1D patients. In addition to the common class I alleles *Kd* and *Db*, NOD mice express a unique MHC class II molecule, *I-Ag7* and do not express an *I-E* region [15]. Development of diabetes is dependent on the homozygosity for this particular MHC region. The I-A^{g7} molecule is characterized by a substitution of the aspartic acid residue by a serine at position 57 on the β chain [16]. Similarly, aspartic acid at position 57 of the human DQ8 β chain provides protection from T1D and substitution of this residue increases susceptibility to diabetes [17]. Non-MHC-linked candidate genes or regions have also been identified in human and mouse genome-wide association studies (GWAS) [18, 19]. Among them, *Idd3* and *Idd5* encode critical genes involved in immune responses, i.e. *Il-2* or *Ctla4*, *Cd28*, *Icos*, and *Bcl2*, respectively [20, 21]. *Idd9* carries molecular variants of *Cd30*, *Tnfr2*, and *Cd137* and may also regulate the development and function of $CD4^+CD25^+Foxp3^+$regulatory T cells [22, 23]. *Idd7* contains the insulin 2 (*Ins2*) locus, the mouse ortholog of *IDDM2* in humans [24]. *Idd18* includes the *Vav3* locus involved in B- and T-cell signaling [25].

Type 1 diabetes is a slowly progressing disease and clinical manifestations are preceded by a long-lasting asymptomatic phase that starts at 3–4 weeks of age with the first wave of immune cells infiltrating pancreatic islets (insulitis) [26]. The infiltrate progresses and becomes more prominent but remains under the form of a peripheral non-aggressive insulitis until 8–10 weeks of age. During this period, antibodies arise against β-cell autoantigens such as insulin/proinsulin, GAD (glutamic acid decarboxylase), IA2 (β cell-specific protein phosphatase), the p277 peptide of hsp60, the islet-specific glucose-6-phosphatase catalytic subunit-related protein (IGRP), the zinc transporter ZnT8 [27]. By 10–12 weeks of age, insulitis becomes invasive and aggressive, β-cells are destroyed and overt hyperglycemia occurs when 70–75 % destruction of the functional β-cell mass has been achieved.

Development of T1D is mediated by T cells recognizing the various autoantigens mentioned above [28–34]. Importantly, in polyclonal NOD mice, both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ populations are required as adoptive transfer of either populations isolated from the spleen of diabetic NOD mice into immunoincompetent NOD hosts (neonates, irradiated adults, NOD-*SCID*, NOD-$RAG^{-/-}$), does not provokepancreatic β-cell destruction and hyperglycemia [35–37]. It has been shown that autoreactive T-cell pools, notably the clonotypes recognizing their MHC/peptide ligand with a high avidity/affinity, progressively expand in the periphery and are recruited in the target tissue [38, 39]. These T cells get activated by antigen-presenting cells (APC) mostly in the pancreatic lymph nodes (PLN) as illustrated by the fact that removal of PLN in young pre-diabetic NOD mice prevent diabetes development [40]. Based on the observation that there is a physiological β-cell apoptosis

peaking at 2–3 weeks of age during the pancreas organogenesis in mice and that macrophages of NOD mice exhibit deficient phagocytosis, it has been suggested that the initiation of the autoimmune involved the uptake of β-cell autoantigens by APC (mainly dendritic cells) which then migrate to the PLN where they present autoantigenic peptides to autoreactive T cells [41, 42]. In addition, release of death-associated molecular pattern molecules (DAMP) by apoptotic/necrotic β-cells may also stimulate APC and contributes to induction of inflammation through innate receptors such as Toll-like receptors (TLR) [43]. Lastly, Diana et al. showed that when physiological β-cell death occurs, the innate immune cell dialog engaged between plasmacytoid dendritic cells (pDC), neutrophils, and B-1a cells is critical for T1D development [44].

Adoptive transfer of B cells or injection of serum from overtly diabetic NOD mice, in contrast to T-cell transfer, in immunoincompetent NOD mice did not induce diabetes revealing the lack of intrinsic pathogenicity of B lymphocytes or of autoantibodies. However, B cells are mandatory for diabetes development as B-cell-less NOD mice are completely protected from disease. These results argue for a key role of B cells in antigenic presentation [45, 46].

In parallel to autoreactive effector T cells, numerous studies reported the presence in NOD mice of T cells endowed with suppressive capacities. Initial studies focused on the L-selectin (CD62L) as a marker to discriminate pathogenic from regulatory T cells (Treg). Indeed, $CD4^+CD62L^+$ thymocytes or splenocytes protect from diabetes transfer in vivo [47–49]. In contrast, the $CD25^-CD62L^-$ T-cell fraction includes potent diabetogenic effectors already present in very young pre-diabetic (6-week-old) NOD mice and capable of transferring diabetes in NOD-*SCID* recipients as efficiently as spleen cells from diabetic animals [50]. Following the seminal work of the group of S. Sakaguchi describing natural, thymus-derived $CD4^+CD25^+$ Tregs, compelling evidence was accumulated showing the predominant role of such Tregs expressing the lineage marker forkhead/winged helix (FoxP3) transcription factor in the control of diabetes [51, 52]. Selective deprivation of natural Tregs, as induced by thymectomy at 3 weeks of age or by administration of depleting CD25 antibodies to young animals or by invalidation of the *CD28* gene (CD28-deficient NOD mice), promotes disease acceleration and exacerbated Th1 responses [53–55]. $CD4^+CD25^+Foxp3^+$ T cells isolated from the thymus or the spleen and lymph nodes of young pre-diabetic NOD mice can prevent from diabetes induced by diabetogenic effector T cells in NOD-*SCID* recipients [50]. This control is carried out in a TGFβ-dependent manner [50, 56]. Interestingly, progression to overt diabetes in NOD mice is associated with a decline in the functional capacity of Tregs, particularly within the pancreas where both the inflammatory milieu and an insufficient availability of IL-2 affects

Treg homeostasis [50, 57]. In addition, data, corroborated in other models of autoimmunity, pointed to key age-dependent differences in pathogenic T cells that are not only quantitative but also qualitative and render them progressively insensitive to Treg- and TGFβ-mediated immune regulation [50, 58]

2.1.2 The Bio-Breeding Rat

The second model of spontaneous T1D is the bio-breeding diabetes prone (DD-DP) rat whose first description was published by Nakhooda et al. in 1977 [59]. As in the NOD mice, the polygenic imprint of T1D was also evidenced in this model showing predisposing genes (*Iddm*) encoded in MHC and non-MHC susceptibility loci. In particular, BB-DP rat express the $RT1^u$ haplotype which encodes the D^u/B^u MHC class II alleles (*Iddm1*), mandatory for the development of autoimmune diabetes [60, 61]. The GTPase of the immune-associated nucleotide-binding protein 5 (*Gimap5*, *Iddm2*) also contributes to diabetogenesis. This protein exerts pro-survival functions by regulating calcium influx [62]. Homozygote mutations of *GIMAP5* induce spontaneous apoptosis of mature T lymphocytes, leading to a state of lymphopenia as shown in the BB-DP rat [63]. Additional susceptibility loci have been identified showing significant linkage to the development of T1D, revealing the presence of genes associated with the human disease such as *Ins*, *Ptpn22*, *Il-2*, and *Il-21* [64].

In contrast to the NOD mouse model, both male and female BB-DP rats develop autoimmune diabetes reaching 90 % of the colony by 4 months of age under specific pathogen-free conditions. Disease onset is preceded by an asymptomatic phase characterized by progressive infiltration of pancreatic islets by immune cells, notably $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells that will destroy the β-cells [65].

T cells endowed with regulatory properties (Tregs) have also been identified in the BB-DP rats. They were first defined by the expression of the antigen RT6, now named ART2, which is an adenosine diphosphate (ADP)-ribosyltransferase expressed at the cell membrane. BB-DP rats are lymphopenic for this subset due to an abnormal intra-thymic T-cell maturation and an elevated rate of apoptosis of recent thymic emigrants in the liver [66, 67]. In vitro, thymocytes from BB-DP rats failed to differentiate into $ART2^+$ T cells in fetal thymic organ cultures [68]. The importance of these $ART2^+$ T cells in the control of T1D was illustrated by studies using the bio-breeding diabetes-resistant rats (BB-DR) which express the same MHC molecules but are protected from spontaneous T1D [69]. These rats are not lymphopenic and present normal numbers of $ART2^+$ T cells that can be generated in vitro from fetal thymus. Administration of a depleting anti-ATR2 (RT6) antibody induces diabetes in BB-DR rats [70] and adoptive transfer of BB-DR $CD4^+ART2^+$ T cells into BB-DP recipients prevents diabetes development [71, 72]. Expression of ART2 is mainly confined

to the naturally occurring $CD4^+CD25^+Foxp3^+$Treg cell subset which is also deficient in the BB-DP rats [73]. $CD4^+CD25^+Foxp3^+$ Tregs exhibit suppressive capacities in vitro and in vivo and can control diabetogenic effectors. Finally, in the rat, a $CD4^+$ Treg population was also identified by the absence or low expression of CD45RC, as exemplified in a model of T1D induced by thymectomy and sublethal irradiation [74]. $CD4^+CD45RC^{-/low}$ T cells, isolated from BB-DR rats, express low levels of Foxp3 which correlates with the fact that about 20 % of them express CD25. Interestingly, in vivo, both $CD4^+CD45RC^-CD25^+$ and $CD4^+CD45RC^-CD25^-$ T cells can protect from diabetes onset when infused into BB-DP rats or when co-transferred with diabetogenic T cells in immunoincompetent hosts [73].

In addition to the BB-DP strain, the LEW.1AR1/Zmt-iddm rat is another good experimental model of human T1D, expressing the MHC class II genes encoded in the $RT1^u$ haplotype [75]. Spontaneous diabetes develops in association with an invasive insulitis including $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells, B lymphocytes, macrophages, and natural killer cells. In contrast to BB-DP rats, lymphopenia is not observed in this model and differentiation of $RT6^+$ T cells is normal.

2.2 Diabetes Induced by Genetic Manipulation

2.2.1 In Normal Non-Autoimmune Prone Mouse Strains

To better understand the contribution of defined cellular and molecular mediators in the pathogenic autoimmune responses, transgenic models of T1D were generated in normal strains, i.e. genetically resistant to spontaneous autoimmunity. Most of these models rely on a rat insulin promoter (RIP)-driven expression of neo-antigens in pancreatic β-cells, originally described by the group of D. Hanahan [76]. Such neo-antigens, considered as self-antigens, include lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus (LCMV) nucleoprotein (NP) or glycoprotein (GP) [77–79], influenza hemagglutinin (HA) [80], hen egg lysozyme (HEL) [81], and ovalbumin (OVA) [82]. Pancreatic β-cell expression of these antigens does not per se induce diabetes. The disease develops upon immunization with the cognate antigens, viral infections, or transfer of antigen-specific T cells. For example, infection with LCMV triggers rapid and severe disease in RIP-LCMV GP mice (within 14 days) [77, 79]. Interestingly RIP-LCMV NP mice, that express NP both in β-cells and thymus, develop slow-onset diabetes (several months) after inoculation of LCMV. In this latter model, high-affinity LCMV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells are deleted in the thymus due to negative selection and only the low-affinity $CD8^+$ T cells survive and migrate to the periphery [79]. In the RIP-LCMV GP model, high-affinity LCMV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells do not undergo negative selection and are exported at the periphery where they get activated and rapidly destroy β-cells.

Another possibility to induce T1D in these transgenic models is to breed the mice expressing neo-antigens in β-cells with mice

expressing neo-antigen-specific T-cell receptor (TCR) transgenes. However, quite interestingly, these double transgenic models do not all develop the disease. Mice expressing HA in β-cells and HA-specific TCR transgene in T cells developed T1D immediately after birth and died within 10 days [83]. Contrasting with these results, crossing RIP-LCMV GP mice with LCMV-specific TCR transgenic mice did not promote diabetes [77]. Clonal deletion or anergy were not causing this immune tolerance as transgenic TCR T cells were detected in the thymus and the periphery and in vitro, they were able to kill target cells expressing LCMV GP. These data led to the concept of "immunological indifference" due in part, to an inappropriate co-stimulation of effector T cells [84]. In vivo, development of diabetes was triggered following infection of the double TCR-GP transgenic mice with LCMV, which may have provided a danger signal and adequate antigen presentation thus inducing full activation of LCMV-specific T cells and destruction of LCMV GP expressing β-cells [77].

To further examine the factors triggering T1D, mice expressing various inflammatory cytokines, co-stimulatory molecules or MHC class II in β-cells have been produced. Expression of IFNγ, IFNα, or IL-2 under the RIP promoter induced progressive inflammation of the islets and destruction of β-cells [85–87]. Overexpression of co-stimulatory B7.1 molecules is not sufficient to provoke an autoimmune response but combination with TNFα or IL-2 resulted in autoimmunity [88, 89]. Mice transgenic for MHC class II molecules (I-A or I-E) have been produced as aberrant expression could be a triggering factor of diabetes development [90, 91]. Neither insulitis nor diabetes was observed in these models.

2.2.2 *In the NOD Autoimmune Prone Strain*

Studies in genetically modified NOD mice have generated valuable knowledge on diabetogenesis. In particular, the availability of NOD mice expressing TCR transgenes cloned from islet-infiltrating T cells has provided important information on the development, the activation, the migration, and the recruitment of autoreactive T cells to the target tissue. NOD mice transgenic for the TCR recognizing the insulin B chain 9–23 peptide (4.1), the IGRP 206–214 peptide (8.3), or chromogranin A-derived vasostatin-1 peptide 29–42 (BDC2.5) have been widely used to monitor the important checkpoints controlling the diabetogenic process [26, 92–94]. BDC2.5 $CD4^+$, 4.1 $CD4^+$, and 8.3 $CD8^+$ T-cell clones can induce diabetes on their own when transferred into immunoincompetent NOD mice. In addition, severe diabetes was observed and occurred within few weeks in 4.1-NOD-$RAG^{-/-}$ or BDC2.5-NOD-$RAG^{-/-}$ mice which cannot rearrange endogenous TCR genes [49, 93]. Contrasting with these models, 8.3-NOD-$RAG^{-/-}$ develop less aggressive disease as compared to 8.3-NOD-$RAG^{+/+}$ mice due to their requirement of a $CD4^+$ T-cell-derived signal to migrate

efficiently to pancreatic islets [92]. Expression of the BDC2.5 or the 4.1 TCR transgene in the normal NOD background induced insulitis but not overt diabetes although the TCR transgenic T cells are produced in large amount in the thymus, are not deleted through negative selection and are exported to the periphery where they constitute the majority of the T-cell repertoire [92]. Some studies suggested that this low diabetes incidence resulted from the control of diabetogenic transgenic cells by Tregs absent in the NOD-RAG$^{-/-}$ background [95, 96].

NOD mice expressing the LCMV nucleoprotein under the control of RIP have been generated and, as shown in non-autoimmune prone mice, they develop severe diabetes after infection with LCMV [97]. This virally induced transgenic NOD mouse model has been used to demonstrate the existence of a cross-talk between iNKT cells, pDCs, and Tregs in the pancreatic islets that contribute to disease prevention [98] and allows to study the impact of viruses as environmental factors on the development of autoimmune diabetes.

NOD mice expressing cytokines, MHC class II or co-stimulatory molecules in their β-cells have also been very informative. Acceleration of diabetes development was observed following overexpression of B7.1 or IL-10 [99, 100]. In contrast, transgenic expression of protective MHC class II molecules (I-A or I-E), immunomodulatory cytokines (IL-4, TGFβ), or Fas-ligand prevented diabetes [101–105].

Finally, the generation and the study of numerous NOD mice deficient for candidate molecules implicated in diabetes development or protection contributed to our understanding of T1D pathophysiology. Proinsulin 2$^{-/-}$ (*Ins2*$^{-/-}$) NOD mice exhibit an accelerated insulitis and T1D related to the lack of thymic expression of ins2 [106]. Anti-Ins2 autoantibodies were increased in these mice and their T cells showed an enhanced diabetes transfer ability. Surprisingly, NOD mice invalidated for inflammatory pro-Th1 cytokines (IFNγ, IL-12) or modulatory pro-Th2 cytokines (IL-4, IL-10) did not exhibit significantly reduced or exacerbated T1D incidence [107–110]. These data suggest that cytokines may have redundant roles in the progression or the protection from T1D. Lastly, deficiency in co-stimulatory molecules affected diabetes development which was unexpectedly accelerated in CD28$^{-/-}$ or double B7.1/B7.2$^{-/-}$ NOD mice [54, 111]. This effect was related to the profound depletion in CD4^{+}CD25^{+}Foxp3^{+}Tregs observed in these mice as Tregs require B7/CD28 signaling for their thymic generation.

2.2.3 Humanized NOD Mice

Human leukocyte antigen (HLA) class I or class II molecules have been introduced in NOD mice to further analyze their pro- or anti-diabetogenic properties and to identify T-cell epitopes relevant to the human disease. HLA transgenic mice expressing

HLA-DR4 have been instrumental for the characterization of class II-restricted insulin epitopes [112]. In T1D patients, numerous pancreatic β-cell peptides are recognized in the context of HLA-A*0201 [113]. The generation of HLA-A*0201-transgenic NOD mouse (NOD.HHD) allowed the identification of autoreactive islet-infiltrating $CD8^+$ T cells specific for insulin or IGRP epitopes which were also recognized by some human $CD8^+$ T-cell clones derived from diabetic patients [114–117]. Finally, the insulin C-peptide recognized by $CD8^+$ T cells was identified in NOD mice expressing human β2-microglobulin and HLA-A*1101 or HLA-B*0702, which are members of the A3 and B7 HLA haplotypes, respectively [118].

Additional humanized NOD mouse models have been generated with the aim of testing the therapeutic efficacy of antibodies recognizing human molecules. In particular, CD3 antibodies being strictly species-specific, transgenic NOD mice expressing the epsilon chain of the human CD3 complex (huCD3ε), that is the target of therapeutic antibodies, have been produced [119]. The immune system of NOD-huCD3ε mice develops normally in terms of $CD4^+$, $CD8^+$, and Treg cells. All T cells express on their surface "hybrid" TCR/CD3 complexes including both human and murine epsilon chains at a 1/1 ratio. In vitro, these T lymphocytes respond adequately to stimulation with anti-human antibodies in terms of proliferation or cytokine production. Importantly, in vivo, NOD-huCD3ε mice exhibit an incidence of autoimmune diabetes that is comparable to that observed in conventional NOD mice (80–85 % in females at 40 weeks of age). Thus these mice represent a valid preclinical model to screen for the therapeutic efficacy of human CD3 monoclonal antibodies.

Similarly, transgenic NOD mice expressing the human CD20 molecules in B cells (hCD20/NOD) were generated to assess the effect of B-cell depletion using anti-human CD20 on the occurrence and the treatment of T1D [120]. Expression of the transgene did not alter the development of the immune system, and the induction of efficient humoral responses. Incidence of diabetes was very similar to wild-type NOD mice in both males and females. Thus, hCD20/NOD mice were used to investigate the efficacy and mode of action of anti-human CD20 antibodies in T1D setting.

3 Immunotherapy in Type 1 Diabetes

The experimental models described above were instrumental for the design of immunotherapeutic strategies aimed at restoring self-tolerance to pancreatic β-cells and therefore preventing or reversing autoimmune diabetes. Many lessons drawn from these studies were transferred to the clinic in the attempt to find a real cure for human T1D [121].

3.1 Autoantigen Therapy

Autoantigen-based therapy has generated considerable interest since numerous studies in experimental models demonstrated the therapeutic efficacy of β-cell autoantigens administration in preventing autoimmune diabetes through the inhibition of pathogenic T-cell responses and the induction of immunoregulatory mechanisms. The success of such therapy depends on the nature of the antigen (whole protein or selected peptides) and the adjuvant, the dose injected, the administration routes and the timing of injections in relation to disease progression. Immunization of young pre-diabetic NOD mice (3–6 weeks of age) with insulin, GAD or the p277 peptide of the hsp60 protein, using different routes of administration (intravenous, subcutaneous, oral, and nasal) conferred significant protection from disease [122–127]. Depending on the model, restoration of self-tolerance was associated with the induction of Th2 (IL-4), Th3 (TFGβ), or Tr1 (IL-10) responses [123, 124, 128, 129]. Interestingly, tolerance induced toward the injected antigen/peptide could spread to other organ-related autoantigens through by stander suppression, initially described in the experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) model [130]. Administration of autoantigens in older NOD mice, already showing invasive insulitis, was much less efficient in preventing T1D, except in few cases [131, 132].

Translation of this strategy to the clinical arena was disappointing, as most of the results were negative or showed limited effect. Intervention trials using insulin or GAD in pre-diabetic patients (presenting at least two autoantibodies to β-cell antigens) or in patients with recent-onset T1D showed no significant difference in terms of disease incidence or exogenous insulin needs, whatever the route of administration tested [133–136]; {Harrison, 2004 #7022; Nanto-Salonen, 2008 #7054; Wherrett, 2011 #7089; Ludvigsson, 2012 #7042}. In contrast, encouraging results were obtained in phase II trials using subcutaneous injections of the Hsp60 p277 peptide (Diapep277) in terms of preservation of β-cell function [137, 138]. These positive findings were confirmed in a recent phase III trial enrolling 457 newly diagnosed patients having received DiaPep277 or placebo quarterly for 2 years [139]. C-peptide secretion was preserved in DiaPep277-treated patients as compared to controls and this effect was accompanied by a decrease in hypoglycemic events reflecting a better glycemic control.

Interesting strategies using autoantigen-coupled apoptotic cells or autoantigen-coupled biodegradable nanoparticules were developed by the group of S. Miller. Indeed, intravenous administration of insulin or insulin peptide B_{9-23} chemically cross-linked through ethylene carbodiimide to syngeneic splenocytes (Ins-ECDI-SP or $InsB_{9-23}$-ECDI-SP) was very effective at protecting NOD mice from diabetes [140]. Interestingly, a 50 % disease remission was obtained in new onset diabetic NOD treated with Ins-ECDI-SP [141]. Similarly, adoptive transfer of diabetes induced by

transgenic BDC2.5 T cells was abrogated after treatment with p31-ECDI-SP, p31 (1040-p31) being a mimotope of chromogranin $A_{29–43}$ peptide [141]. Contrasting with these data, the use of GAD or IGRP peptides coupled with syngeneic splenocytes did not afford diabetes protection suggesting that only few epitopes may play critical role in modulating the disease [140, 141]. The translation of the Ag-ECDI-SP strategy to the clinic was supported by data in a humanized NOD mouse model in which human HLA-A*0201 molecules are expressed instead of murine MHC Class I (NOD.β2mnull.HHD). Administration of a combination of $CD8^+$ T-cell epitopes $IGRP_{228–236}$/$IGRP_{265–273}$ coupled to ECDI-SP prevent from diabetes development in pre-diabetic NOD.β2mnull.HHD [142]. Recently, to foster clinical application of this methodology, polystyrene beads (PSB) or biodegradable poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid) (PLGA) nanoparticles have been proposed as an alternative to the use of syngeneic cells as cellular vehicle. Following promising results in EAE, the mouse model of multiple sclerosis, preliminary experiments have been conducted in T1D.Treatment of recipient NOD-*SCID* mice with p31-ECDI-PLGA nanoparticles inhibited diabetes induction by activated BDC2.5 transgenic T cells [143]. Mechanistic studies suggested that the i.v. injected Ag-ECDI-SP or Ag-ECDI-PLGA nanoparticles were uptaken by splenic or liver APCs through scavanger receptors such as MARCO, leading to an upregulation of PD-L1/2 inhibitory receptors (but not co-stimulatory molecules) and production of immunomodulatory cytokines such as IL-10 and TGFβ. These tolerogenic APCs induce (1) anergy or apoptosis of activated antigen-specific T cells, (2) anergy of naïve antigen-specific T cells, and (3) generation and expansion of induced Treg capable of controlling the pathogenic process [143].

Lastly, an elegant recent study by Kasagi et al. described a therapeutic approach allowing the in vivo generation of autoantigen-specificTregs capable of preventing and treating autoimmunity [144, 145]. This strategy relies on the ability of phagocytes to release massive amounts of TGFβ after engulfment of apoptotic cells [146]. NOD mice received whole body γ irradiation to induce apoptosis of immune cells (including T and B cells and macrophages) followed by administration of GAD65 peptides and macrophages. This apoptosis-antigen combined therapy efficiently prevented T1D and also halted disease progression in recently hyperglycemic NOD mice. TGFβ was mandatory to establish tolerance and, in the presence of GAD65 autoantigenic peptides, directed the conversion of naïve $CD4^+$ T cells into GAD65-specific $Foxp3^+$Tregs that suppressed the autoimmune responses in the long term. The apoptosis-antigen therapy was applied to EAE with the same efficacy [144]. Importantly, replacing the whole body γ irradiation by injection of anti-CD20 and anti-CD8 antibodies induced similar results thus providing clues for considering clinical translation of this approach.

3.2 Anti-inflammatory Therapy

This therapeutic strategy targets innate immune cells, notably macrophages and neutrophils that accumulate within the islets of Langerhans in early phases of diabetes development, at the time of physiological β-cell apoptosis. These innate cells, activated by β-cell destruction, produce inflammatory cytokines such as IL-1, IL-6, and TNFα that promote the activation of pathogenic autoreactive effectors in addition to being toxic for pancreatic β-cells thus negatively impacting on their survival.

In NOD mice, blocking the IL-1/IL-1 receptor pathway using monoclonal antibodies or IL-1Ra antagonist partially reduced diabetes development but did not revert established disease [147, 148]. In the clinic, a first non-randomized phase I trial showed reduced insulin requirements in 15 recent-onset children with type 1 diabetes treated with anakinra, a recombinant non-glycosylated form of the human IL-Ra [149]. A Phase II placebo-controlled trials using anakinra or canakinumab (anti-IL-1β antibody) was launched but no therapeutic efficacy was observed [150].

A randomized, placebo-controlled pilot study was also initiated in 18 pediatric T1D patients who received anti-TNFα (ethanercept) or placebo [151]. Results showed an increased endogenous insulin secretionsuggesting a preservation of β-cell mass.

3.3 Therapies Using Immunomodulatory Drugs

Experimental models have been extensively used to test the efficacy of therapies targeting the immune players responsible for the aberrant destruction of pancreatic β-cells, i.e. T cells, B cells, and APCs.

3.3.1 Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies recognizing TCR/CD3 complex, CD4 and CD8 co-receptors, MHC II molecules, co-stimulatory molecules (CD40L), adhesion molecules (LFA-1 and ICAM-1), or CD20 showed efficacy at preventing diabetes when applied in young (3–6-week-old) pre-diabetic NOD mice [120, 152–155]. In contrast, administration of CTLA-4Ig fusion protein did not afford T1D protection [54]. CTLA-4Ig (abatacept) was tested in T1D patients [156]. The decline of C-peptide level was delayed in treated patients but this did not translate into a decrease in exogenous insulin needs over the 24-month follow-up.

Very few therapies were able to reverse established diabetes, i.e. to cure the disease. Among them, monoclonal antibodies to CD3 epsilon chain (CD3 Ab) have proven efficacy in treating diabetic NOD mice, reaching more than 80 % remission [157]. This remission is long-lasting and associated with restoration of self-tolerance toward pancreatic β-cells as exemplified by the survival of syngeneic islet grafts in CD3 Ab-treated NOD mice [158]. In contrast, these mice were able to reject skin allografts with a kinetic comparable to untreated NOD mice, demonstrating that the treatment did not induce a profound and sustain T-cell depletion. Indeed, the depleting effect of CD3 Abs is partial and transient (25–50 % depending on the use of the non-mitogenic $F(ab')_2$

fragments or the mitogenic whole antibody). Importantly, although CD3 Abs target virtually all T cells, activated effector T cells are the most sensitive to their depleting effect [159, 160]. In contrast, $CD4^+CD25^+Foxp3^+$Tregs are relatively spared by CD3 Ab-induced apoptosis and their proportion increases in the early post-treatment period. This explains, at least in part, why CD3 Ab exert their tolerogenic effects only in the context of an ongoing immune reaction, a finding corroborated in experimental models of transplantation [160, 161] and underlying the importance of the therapeutic window. T cells, not depleted by CD3 Ab therapy, undergo a process of antigenic modulation characterized by the internalization of the TCR/CD3 complexes following ligation of the CD3 antibodies, rendering T cells blind to antigenic stimulation [162]. This situation induced a clearance of insulitis, leaving the pancreatic islet free of inflammation and the 25–30 % remaining β-cells regain functions and insulin-producing capacities. A key element in CD3 Ab-induced tolerance is the role of macrophages and immature DCs engulfing CD3-Ab-induced apoptotic T cells and releasing massive amounts of TGFβ in the microenvironment [146]. TGFβ can modulate the autoreactive T-cell responses and also promote Treg expansion and/or suppressive capacities, either directly or indirectly via APC, notably dendritic cells that acquire tolerogenic properties (decrease of MHC and co-stimulatory molecules, upregulation of PD-L1, ICOSL) allowing an efficient control of pathogenic effectors over the long term [163, 164]. In this anti-inflammatory environment, not only Tregs regain efficient suppressive functions (that are TGFβ-dependent), but also pathogenic T cells regain their sensitivity to regulation afforded by Tregs and TGF-β [165].

All these data encouraged clinical translation of CD3 Ab therapy in T1D patients. Two humanized CD3 Abs, mutated in their Fc portion to inhibit binding to Fc receptors and thus massive T-cell activation and inflammatory cytokine release, have been used: otelixizumab and teplizumab. Using a protocol very similar to that applied in NOD mice (1–2 week CD3 Ab treatment), two phase II trials enrolling recently diagnosed T1D patients showed very promising results [166, 167]. The treatment efficiently preserved β-cell function for several months, maintaining significantly higher levels of C-peptide as compared to placebo-treated patients and thus decreasing exogenous insulin needs. In the otelixizumab trial, insulin requirements were still reduced in the intent-to-treat population as compared to the placebo group at 4 years of follow-up [168]. Although side effects were overall minor, transient reactivation of Epstein–Barr virus (EBV) in some patients raised safety concerns [169]. However, efficient EBV-specific humoral and cellular immune response developed in all CD3 Ab-treated patients demonstrating that CD3 Abs did not induced generalized immunosuppression: T1D patients are able to mount adequate immune responses to exogenous unwanted antigens.

These positive results gave rise to phase III clinical trials using both antibodies. The *Defend-1* study (Tolerx & GSK) using otelixizumab failed in achieving the primary end-points and the study was therefore stopped. The reason evoked for these disappointed results is the dose of antibody used, i.e. 3.1 mg (cumulative dose), arbitrarily chosen with the aim of limiting side-effect and notably EBV reactivation, which corresponds to a 15 time reduction as compared to the 48 mg provided in the phase II trial. The second phase III trial, the *Protégé* study, using different cumulative doses of teplizumab (launched by Macrogenics & Eli Lilly) did not also meet the primary end-points at 1 year (glycated hemoglobin $A_{1c} < 6.5$ % and insulin dose < 0.5 U/kg/day) [170]. However, as these primary efficacy outcomes were distinct from the one used in previous phase II trials, *Protégé's* data were reanalyzed using C-peptide and insulin requirement as end-points as used in other trials. Results showed a significant therapeutic effect that was dose-dependent as only patients who received the highest dose of teplizumab (34 mg) had significantly decreased insulin needs compared with placebo [170]. In addition, the best response was observed in children (8–11 years old) as well as in patients diagnosed for T1D less than 6 weeks.

The availability of transgenic NOD mice expressing the human CD3epsilon chain (NOD-huCD3ε) shall provide critical insights for optimizing safety and efficacy of CD3 antibody therapy. Indeed, a short low-dose treatment of overtly diabetic NOD-huCD3ε mice with otelixizumab induces the same durable remission of spontaneous diabetes we observed in conventional NOD mice treated with anti-murine CD3-specific antibodies [119]. Immune mechanisms involved in this remission were identical to those described in wild-type mice with notably a key role of $CD4^+CD25^+Foxp3^+$Tregs and TGFβ in inducing and sustaining tolerance.

Monoclonal antibodies to CD20 (rituximab) induced diabetes remission in 30 % of cases in transgenic NOD mice expressing the human CD20 molecules in B cells (hCD20/NOD) [120]. The treatment induced a major B-cell depletion and induction of Tregs as well as B cells endowed with regulatory capacities. Based on these results, a clinical trial was launched in T1D [171]. Rituximab therapy showed a significant effect on β-cell preservation during the induced B-cell depletion, as revealed by a higher C-peptide level as compared to the placebo arm. However, the effect was transient. In addition, the reduced B-cell number and IgM levels observed for several months following treatment raised safety concerns on the ability of the patients to mount efficient antibody responses.

To further improve therapeutic efficacy and reduce side effects of treatment, and knowing that both T and B cells are essential for T1D pathogenesis, a combined therapy targeting both compartments, using intravenous anti-CD20 and oral anti-CD3 antibodies, was tested in hCD20/NOD mice [172]. A synergistic effect

was observed as the combined treatment prevented from diabetes development and disease reversal was observed in more than 60 % of new onset diabetic mice. The therapeutic effect was associated with increased proportion and suppressive capacities of $CD4^+Foxp3^+$Tregs in the spleen and pancreatic lymph nodes of treated mice as well as the induction of IL-10-producing $CD4^+$ T cells in the small intestine.

3.3.2 *Interleukin-2*

More recently, another strategy based on the administration of low dose of interleukin-2 has been investigated in experimental T1D models and in the clinic. The rationale of this approach is to boost immunoregulatorypathways,inparticular$CD4^+CD25^+Foxp3^+$Tregs to afford a better control of autoreactive pathogenic T cells. All T cells require IL-2 for their survival and growth but this is even more the case for Tregs whichconstitutively express the high-affinityIL-2 receptor.

Using the NOD mouse model, it has been demonstrated that progression to overt diabetes is associated with a decline in the functional capacity of Tregs, particularly within the pancreas, where both the inflammatory milieu and an insufficient availability of IL-2 affect Treg survival and homeostasis [50, 57]. Interestingly, a continuous treatment (from 5 to 20 weeks of age) with low-dose IL-2 or IL-2/anti-IL-2 complexes significantly protected from diabetes development [57]. This strategy was also efficient at reversing established diabetes as a 5-day treatment-induced T1D remission in 60 % of the mice [173]. The therapeutic effect was associated with an increased proportion of $CD4^+Foxp3^+$Treg in pancreatic islets (not observed in the spleen or pancreatic lymph nodes). Phenotypic and transcriptomic analysis suggested that intra-islet Treg cell function and survival were upregulated after IL-2 treatment [57, 173].

Based on a previous report showing synergistic effect between IL-2 and rapamycin in preventing autoimmune diabetes in NOD mice [174], a phase I clinical trial was launched in T1D patients [175]. Treg proportions increased in the treated patients but returned to pre-treatment values after the 1-month IL-2 administration. In parallel, increased peripheral blood NK cells and eosinophils and decreased serum TGFβ were observed. More importantly, the IL-2/Rapa therapy worsened pancreatic β-cell functions as revealed by a decline in C-peptide levels, showing the limitation of this approach.

Recently, a randomized, double-blind, phase I/II clinical study has been performed in T1D patients to identify a safe and efficient dose of IL-2 capable of expanding Tregs without inducing serious adverse effect [176]. A 5-day course of IL-2 (Aldesleukin) promoted a dose-dependent rise in Tregs proportion over the study period. Glucose metabolism was not altered but mild to moderate side effects and NK cell expansion were more frequently observed

in patients treated with the highest dose of IL-2 (3 MIU/day). A phase II trial in children with recently diagnosed type 1 diabetes is currently ongoing to further define the therapeutic dose and to optimize the benefit/risk ratio of this treatment in T1D.

3.3.3 Vitamin D

Vitamin D3, and more precisely its 1,25-Dihydroxyvitamin D3 (1,25(OH)2D3, calcitriol) activated form, is a potent immunomodulatory agent due its capacity to prevent dendritic cell maturation [177]. In NOD mice, vitamin D deficiency during embryogenesis and the first 3 months of life exacerbated T1D development [178]. In contrast, repeated administrations of 1,25(OH)2D3 or its analog to young NOD mice were very effective at protecting from diabetes development [179, 180]. Vitamin D3 therapy inhibits IL-12 production and pathogenic Th1 responses while increasing the proportion of Treg in pancreatic lymph nodes [180, 181].

In the clinic, a case–control study reported that vitamin D supplementation in early childhood was associated with a decreased risk of developing T1D [182]. However, administration of calcitriol in recent onset diabetic patients did not impact on disease progression as C-peptide levels and insulin requirement were similar between the treated and the placebo groups [183, 184].

3.4 Treg Cell Therapy

Therapeutic approaches were developed in the last few years, using Tregs as a cell therapy product for the treatment of autoimmune diabetes. The group of JA Bluestone reported that sorted $CD4^+CD25^+CD62L^+$ Tregs from NOD mice expanded very efficiently in response to anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 coated beads in presence of recombinant IL-2 [185, 186]. These cells maintained a Treg phenotype as revealed by high levels of CD25, CD62L, PD-1, CTLA-4 and Foxp3 and they inhibited proliferation and cytokine production (IFNγ, IL-2) by effector T cells. However, in vivo, in an adoptive transfer model into lymphopenic hosts, these polyclonal expanded Tregs were not able to significantly prevent diabetes development induced by spleen and LN cells from diabetic NOD mice. In contrast, administration of low numbers of antigen-specific BDC2.5 Tregs, previously expanded in vitro using the same methodology as polyclonal Tregs, effectively inhibited diabetes induced by polyclonal or transgenic BDC2.5 effector T cells [185]. Furthermore, infusion of BDC2.5 expanded Tregs reversed established diabetes in 60 % of new onset diabetic NOD mice. This later result suggests that Treg therapy may hold promise in reversing T1D and restoring self-tolerance.

In the clinic, the feasibility of Treg cell therapy was supported by the establishment of a protocol allowing robust expansion of human Tregs from T1D patients stimulated with anti-CD3/anti-CD28 beads in the presence of IL-2 and rapamycin [187]. These Tregs were isolated on the basis of their $CD4^+CD127^{low/-}$ or

$CD4^+CD127^{low/-}CD25^+$ phenotype. Both populations showed similar expansion fold. Expanded Tregs retain Foxp3 expression although a decline was noticed and exhibited comparable in vitro suppressive capacities. A phase I trial is currently ongoing in T1D to assess the safety of infusing escalating numbers of polyclonal $CD4^+CD127^{low/-}CD25^+$ Tregs in new onset diabetic patients.

3.5 Autologous Bone Marrow Transplantation

Autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (AHSC) is a radical approach allowing a de novo generation of the immune system. The therapeutic effect of such replacement therapy is attributed, at least in part, to granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF)-based protocols used for stem cell mobilization which may induce hematopoietic progenitors capable of inhibiting T-cell proliferation and favoring Treg expansion [188, 189]. Thus, in several severe cases of autoimmunity, transplantation of mobilized stem cells did not lead to recurrence of disease as we could have expected but rather a cure of disease. A phase I/II trial was launched in newly diagnosed diabetic patients. Peripheral AHSC were mobilized with cyclophosphamide and G-CSF, harvested by leukapheresis, cryopreserved and reinfused in T1D patients who had received a conditioning regimen (cyclophosphamide and rabbit antithymocyte globulin) [190, 191]. Interesting results were obtained as most of the patients showed increased C-peptide levels and became insulin-independent for 1–35 months. However, in all patients the disease eventually relapsed. In addition, all patients experienced transplantation-related complications of high-dose immunosuppression and two patients developed bilateral nosocomial pneumonia. In addition, three patients presented late endocrine dysfunction, and male patients showed impaired testicular functions characterized by low sperm motility and morphological alterations [192]. Therefore, due to the complexity of the procedure and the potential life-threatening complications, the beneficial effect of AHSC transplantation for T1D patients remains controversial.

4 Conclusions

The availability of spontaneous or genetically modified models of T1D allowed a very productive research on the genetic and pathophysiological mechanisms responsible for breakdown of self-tolerance toward pancreatic β-cells, revealing the complexity of the disease. These models were instrumental for monitoring the therapeutic effect of therapies targeting the various components of the autoimmune responses, providing the basis for active clinical translation. Halting disease progression or reversing established T1D requires reprogramming of the immune system in an antigen-specific manner. Combination therapies using immunomodulating

drugs, antigen-specific approaches, and/or anti-inflammatory protocols may be the solution for inducing robust tolerance that is sustained in the long term.

References

1. Bach JF (2002) The effect of infections on susceptibility to autoimmune and allergic diseases. N Engl J Med 347:911–920
2. Harjutsalo V, Sjoberg L, Tuomilehto J (2008) Time trends in the incidence of type 1 diabetes in Finnish children: a cohort study. Lancet 371:1777–1782
3. Bach JF (1994) Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus as an autoimmune disease. Endocr Rev 15:516–542
4. Anderson MS, Bluestone JA (2005) The NOD mouse: a model of immune dysregulation. Annu Rev Immunol 23:447–485
5. Makino S, Kunimoto K, Muraoka Y, Mizushima Y, Katagiri K, Tochino Y (1980) Breeding of a non-obese, diabetic strain of mice. Exp Anim 29:1–13
6. Markle JG, Frank DN, Mortin-Toth S et al (2013) Sex differences in the gut microbiome drive hormone-dependent regulation of autoimmunity. Science 339:1084–1088
7. Pozzilli P, Signore A, Williams AJ, Beales PE (1993) NOD mouse colonies around the world: recent facts and figures. Immunol Today 14:193–196
8. Garchon HJ, Bedossa P, Eloy L, Bach JF (1991) Identification and mapping to chromosome 1 of a susceptibility locus for periinsulitis in non-obese diabetic mice. Nature 353:260–262
9. Many MC, Maniratunga S, Denef JF (1996) The non-obese diabetic (NOD) mouse: an animal model for autoimmune thyroiditis. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes 104:17–20
10. Many MC, Maniratunga S, Varis I, Dardenne M, Drexhage HA, Denef JF (1995) Two-step development of Hashimoto-like thyroiditis in genetically autoimmune prone non-obese diabetic mice: effects of iodine-induced cell necrosis. J Endocrinol 147:311–320
11. Baxter AG, Mandel TE (1991) Hemolytic anemia in non-obese diabetic mice. Eur J Immunol 21:2051–2055
12. Baxter AG, Horsfall AC, Healey D et al (1994) Mycobacteria precipitate an SLE-like syndrome in diabetes-prone NOD mice. Immunology 83:227–231
13. Wicker LS, Todd JA, Peterson LB (1995) Genetic control of autoimmune diabetes in the NOD mouse. Annu Rev Immunol 13: 179–200
14. Steward CA, Gonzalez JM, Trevanion S et al (2013) The non-obese diabetic mouse sequence, annotation and variation resource: an aid for investigating type 1 diabetes. Database (Oxford) 2013:bat032
15. Hattori M, Buse JB, Jackson RA et al (1986) The NOD mouse: recessive diabetogenic gene in the major histocompatibility complex. Science 231:733–735
16. Acha-orbea H, Mcdevitt HO (1987) The first external domain of the nonobese diabetic mouse class II I-A beta chain is unique. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 84:2435–2439
17. Todd JA, Bell JI, Mcdevitt HO (1987) HLA-DQ beta gene contributes to susceptibility and resistance to insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. Nature 329:599–604
18. Ridgway WM, Peterson LB, Todd JA et al (2008) Gene-gene interactions in the NOD mouse model of type 1 diabetes. Adv Immunol 100:151–175
19. Todd JA, Walker NM, Cooper JD et al (2007) Robust associations of four new chromosome regions from genome-wide analyses of type 1 diabetes. Nat Genet 39:857–864
20. Denny P, Lord CJ, Hill NJ et al (1997) Mapping of the IDDM locus Idd3 to a 0.35-cM interval containing the interleukin-2 gene. Diabetes 46:695–700
21. Hill NJ, Lyons PA, Armitage N, Todd JA, Wicker LS, Peterson LB (2000) NOD Idd5 locus controls insulitis and diabetes and overlaps the orthologous CTLA4/IDDM12 and NRAMP1 loci in humans. Diabetes 49: 1744–1747
22. Lyons PA, Hancock WW, Denny P et al (2000) The NOD Idd9 genetic interval influences the pathogenicity of insulitis and contains molecular variants of Cd30, Tnfr2, and Cd137. Immunity 13:107–115
23. Yamanouchi J, Puertas MC, Verdaguer J et al (2010) Idd9.1 locus controls the suppressive activity of FoxP3 + CD4 + CD25+ regulatory T-cells. Diabetes 59:272–281
24. Ghosh S, Palmer SM, Rodrigues NR et al (1993) Polygenic control of autoimmune diabetes in nonobese diabetic mice. Nat Genet 4:404–409
25. Fraser HI, Dendrou CA, Healy B et al (2010) Nonobese diabetic congenic strain analysis of autoimmune diabetes reveals

genetic complexity of the Idd18 locus and identifies Vav3 as a candidate gene. J Immunol 184:5075–5084

26. Katz JD, Wang B, Haskins K, Benoist C, Mathis D (1993) Following a diabetogenic T cell from genesis through pathogenesis. Cell 74:1089–1100
27. Wenzlau JM, Juhl K, Yu L et al (2007) The cation efflux transporter ZnT8 (Slc30A8) is a major autoantigen in human type 1 diabetes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:17040–17045
28. Daniel D, Gill RG, Schloot N, Wegmann D (1995) Epitope specificity, cytokine production profile and diabetogenic activity of insulin-specific T cell clones isolated from NOD mice. Eur J Immunol 25:1056–1062
29. Wegmann DR, Norbury-glaser M, Daniel D (1994) Insulin-specific T cells are a predominant component of islet infiltrates in prediabetic NOD mice. Eur J Immunol 24: 1853–1857
30. Baekkeskov S, Aanstoot HJ, Christgau S et al (1990) Identification of the 64K autoantigen in insulin-dependent diabetes as the GABA-synthesizing enzyme glutamic acid decarboxylase. Nature 347:151–156
31. Honeyman MC, Cram DS, Harrison LC (1993) Glutamic acid decarboxylase 67-reactive T cells: a marker of insulin-dependent diabetes. J Exp Med 177: 535–540
32. Dotta F, Dionisi S, Viglietta V et al (1999) T-cell mediated autoimmunity to the insulinoma-associated protein 2 islet tyrosine phosphatase in type 1 diabetes mellitus. Eur J Endocrinol 141:272–278
33. Elias D, Reshef T, Birk OS, Van Der Zee R, Walker MD, Cohen IR (1991) Vaccination against autoimmune mouse diabetes with a T-cell epitope of the human 65-kDa heat shock protein. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 88:3088–3091
34. Lieberman SM, Evans AM, Han B et al (2003) Identification of the beta cell antigen targeted by a prevalent population of pathogenic CD8+ T cells in autoimmune diabetes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:8384–8388
35. Bendelac A, Carnaud C, Boitard C, Bach JF (1987) Syngeneic transfer of autoimmune diabetes from diabetic NOD mice to healthy neonates. Requirement for both L3T4+ and Lyt-2+ T cells. J Exp Med 166:823–832
36. Yagi H, Matsumoto M, Kunimoto K, Kawaguchi J, Makino S, Harada M (1992) Analysis of the roles of CD4+ and CD8+ T cells in autoimmune diabetes of NOD mice using transfer to NOD athymic nude mice. Eur J Immunol 22:2387–2393
37. Christianson SW, Shultz LD, Leiter EH (1993) Adoptive transfer of diabetes into immunodeficient NOD-scid/scid mice. Relative contributions of CD4+ and CD8+ T-cells from diabetic versus prediabetic NOD. NON-Thy-1a donors. Diabetes 42:44–55
38. Amrani A, Verdaguer J, Serra P, Tafuro S, Tan R, Santamaria P (2000) Progression of autoimmune diabetes driven by avidity maturation of a T-cell population. Nature 406:739–742
39. Han B, Serra P, Yamanouchi J et al (2005) Developmental control of CD8 T cell-avidity maturation in autoimmune diabetes. J Clin Invest 115:1879–1887
40. Gagnerault MC, Luan JJ, Lotton C, Lepault F (2002) Pancreatic lymph nodes are required for priming of beta cell reactive T cells in NOD mice. J Exp Med 196:369–377
41. Zhang Y, O'Brien B, Trudeau J, Tan R, Santamaria P, Dutz JP (2002) In situ beta cell death promotes priming of diabetogenic CD8 T lymphocytes. J Immunol 168:1466–1472
42. Trudeau JD, Dutz JP, Arany E, Hill DJ, Fieldus WE, Finegood DT (2000) Neonatal beta-cell apoptosis: a trigger for autoimmune diabetes? Diabetes 49:1–7
43. Kim HS, Han MS, Chung KW et al (2007) Toll-like receptor 2 senses beta-cell death and contributes to the initiation of autoimmune diabetes. Immunity 27:321–333
44. Diana J, Simoni Y, Furio L et al (2013) Crosstalk between neutrophils, B-1a cells and plasmacytoid dendritic cells initiates autoimmune diabetes. Nat Med 19:65–73
45. Serreze DV, Chapman HD, Varnum DS et al (1996) B lymphocytes are essential for the initiation of T cell-mediated autoimmune diabetes: analysis of a new "speed congenic" stock of NOD.Ig mu(null) mice. J Exp Med 184:2049–2053
46. Noorchashm H, Noorchashm N, Kern J, Rostami SY, Barker CF, Naji A (1997) B-cells are required for the initiation of insulitis and sialitis in nonobese diabetic mice. Diabetes 46:941–946
47. Herbelin A, Gombert JM, Lepault F, Bach JF, Chatenoud L (1998) Mature mainstream TCR alpha beta + CD4+ thymocytes expressing L-selectin mediate "active tolerance" in the nonobese diabetic mouse. J Immunol 161:2620–2628
48. Lepault F, Gagnerault MC (2000) Characterization of peripheral regulatory CD4(+) T cells that prevent diabetes onset in nonobese diabetic mice. J Immunol 164: 240–247
49. You S, Slehoffer G, Barriot S, Bach JF, Chatenoud L (2004) Unique role of

CD4+CD62L+ regulatory T cells in the control of autoimmune diabetes in T cell receptor transgenic mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 101(Suppl 2):14580–14585

50. You S, Belghith M, Cobbold S et al (2005) Autoimmune diabetes onset results from qualitative rather than quantitative age-dependent changes in pathogenic T-cells. Diabetes 54:1415–1422
51. Sakaguchi S (2005) Naturally arising Foxp3-expressing CD25+CD4+ regulatory T cells in immunological tolerance to self and non-self. Nat Immunol 6:345–352
52. Fontenot JD, Rasmussen JP, Williams LM, Dooley JL, Farr AG, Rudensky AY (2005) Regulatory T cell lineage specification by the forkhead transcription factor foxp3. Immunity 22:329–341
53. Dardenne M, Lepault F, Bendelac A, Bach JF (1989) Acceleration of the onset of diabetes in NOD mice by thymectomy at weaning. Eur J Immunol 19:889–895
54. Salomon B, Lenschow DJ, Rhee L et al (2000) B7/CD28 Costimulation is essential for the homeostasis of the CD4+CD25+ immunoregulatory T cells that control autoimmune diabetes. Immunity 12:431–440
55. Billiard F, Litvinova E, Saadoun D et al (2006) Regulatory and effector T cell activation levels are prime determinants of in vivo immune regulation. J Immunol 177:2167–2174
56. You S, Leforban B, Garcia C, Bach JF, Bluestone JA, Chatenoud L (2007) Adaptive TGF-beta-dependent regulatory T cells control autoimmune diabetes and are a privileged target of anti-CD3 antibody treatment. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104: 6335–6340
57. Tang Q, Adams JY, Penaranda C et al (2008) Central role of defective interleukin-2 production in the triggering of islet autoimmune destruction. Immunity 28:687–697
58. Korn T, Reddy J, Gao W et al (2007) Myelin-specific regulatory T cells accumulate in the CNS but fail to control autoimmune inflammation. Nat Med 13:423–431
59. Nakhooda AF, Like AA, Chappel CI, Murray FT, Marliss EB (1977) The spontaneously diabetic Wistar rat. Metabolic and morphologic studies. Diabetes 26:100–112
60. Jacob HJ, Pettersson A, Wilson D, Mao Y, Lernmark A, Lander ES (1992) Genetic dissection of autoimmune type I diabetes in the BB rat. Nat Genet 2:56–60
61. Ellerman KE, Like AA (2000) Susceptibility to diabetes is widely distributed in normal class IIu haplotype rats. Diabetologia 43: 890–898
62. Chen XL, Serrano D, Mayhue M et al (2013) GTPase of the immune-associated nucleotide-binding protein 5 (GIMAP5) regulates calcium influx in T-lymphocytes by promoting mitochondrial calcium accumulation. Biochem J 449:353–364
63. Hornum L, Romer J, Markholst H (2002) The diabetes-prone BB rat carries a frameshift mutation in Ian4, a positional candidate of Iddm1. Diabetes 51:1972–1979
64. Wallis RH, Wang K, Marandi L et al (2009) Type 1 diabetes in the BB rat: a polygenic disease. Diabetes 58:1007–1017
65. Crisa L, Mordes JP, Rossini AA (1992) Autoimmune diabetes mellitus in the BB rat. Diabetes Metab Rev 8:4–37
66. Greiner DL, Handler ES, Nakano K, Mordes JP, Rossini AA (1986) Absence of the RT-6 T cell subset in diabetes-prone BB/W rats. J Immunol 136:148–151
67. Iwakoshi NN, Goldschneider I, Tausche F, Mordes JP, Rossini AA, Greiner DL (1998) High frequency apoptosis of recent thymic emigrants in the liver of lymphopenic diabetes-prone BioBreeding rats. J Immunol 160:5838–5850
68. Zipris D, Leif J, Deluca D et al (2001) Fetal thymi from diabetes-prone but not diabetes-resistant BB/Wor rats fail to generate mature ART2+ T-cells in organ culture. Cell Mol Biol (Noisy-le-Grand) 47:65–74
69. Markholst H, Eastman S, Wilson D, Andreasen BE, Lernmark A (1991) Diabetes segregates as a single locus in crosses between inbred BB rats prone or resistant to diabetes. J Exp Med 174:297–300
70. Greiner DL, Mordes JP, Handler ES, Angelillo M, Nakamura N, Rossini AA (1987) Depletion of RT6.1+ T lymphocytes induces diabetes in resistant biobreeding/Worcester (BB/W) rats. J Exp Med 166:461–475
71. Rossini AA, Mordes JP, Greiner DL, Nakano K, Appel MC, Handler ES (1986) Spleen cell transfusion in the Bio-Breeding/Worcester rat. Prevention of diabetes, major histocompatibility complex restriction, and long-term persistence of transfused cells. J Clin Invest 77:1399–1401
72. Burstein D, Mordes JP, Greiner DL et al (1989) Prevention of diabetes in BB/Wor rat by single transfusion of spleen cells. Parameters that affect degree of protection. Diabetes 38:24–30
73. Hillebrands JL, Whalen B, Visser JT et al (2006) A regulatory CD4+ T cell subset in the BB rat model of autoimmune diabetes expresses neither CD25 nor Foxp3. J Immunol 177:7820–7832

74. Fowell D, Mason D (1993) Evidence that the T cell repertoire of normal rats contains cells with the potential to cause diabetes. Characterization of the CD4+ T cell subset that inhibits this autoimmune potential. J Exp Med 177:627–636
75. Lenzen S, Tiedge M, Elsner M et al (2001) The LEW.1AR1/Ztm-iddm rat: a new model of spontaneous insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. Diabetologia 44:1189–1196
76. Adams TE, Alpert S, Hanahan D (1987) Non-tolerance and autoantibodies to a transgenic self antigen expressed in pancreatic beta cells. Nature 325:223–228
77. Ohashi PS, Oehen S, Buerki K et al (1991) Ablation of "tolerance" and induction of diabetes by virus infection in viral antigen transgenic mice. Cell 65:305–317
78. Oldstone MB, Nerenberg M, Southern P, Price J, Lewicki H (1991) Virus infection triggers insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus in a transgenic model: role of anti-self (virus) immune response. Cell 65:319–331
79. Von Herrath MG, Dockter J, Oldstone MB (1994) How virus induces a rapid or slow onset insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus in a transgenic model. Immunity 1:231–242
80. Lo D, Freedman J, Hesse S, Palmiter RD, Brinster RL, Sherman LA (1992) Peripheral tolerance to an islet cell-specific hemagglutinin transgene affects both CD4+ and CD8+ T cells. Eur J Immunol 22:1013–1022
81. Socha L, Silva D, Lesage S, Goodnow C, Petrovsky N (2003) The role of endoplasmic reticulum stress in nonimmune diabetes: NOD.k iHEL, a novel model of beta cell death. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1005:178–183
82. Blanas E, Carbone FR, Allison J, Miller JF, Heath WR (1996) Induction of autoimmune diabetes by oral administration of autoantigen. Science 274:1707–1709
83. Morgan DJ, Liblau R, Scott B et al (1996) CD8(+) T cell-mediated spontaneous diabetes in neonatal mice. J Immunol 157: 978–983
84. Von Herrath MG, Guerder S, Lewicki H, Flavell RA, Oldstone MB (1995) Coexpression of B7-1 and viral ("self") transgenes in pancreatic beta cells can break peripheral ignorance and lead to spontaneous autoimmune diabetes. Immunity 3:727–738
85. Sarvetnick N, Liggitt D, Pitts SL, Hansen SE, Stewart TA (1988) Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus induced in transgenic mice by ectopic expression of class II MHC and interferon-gamma. Cell 52:773–782
86. Stewart TA, Hultgren B, Huang X, Pittsmeek S, Hully J, Maclachlan NJ (1993) Induction of type I diabetes by interferon-alpha in transgenic mice. Science 260: 1942–1946
87. Elliott EA, Flavell RA (1994) Transgenic mice expressing constitutive levels of IL-2 in islet beta cells develop diabetes. Int Immunol 6:1629–1637
88. Guerder S, Picarella DE, Linsley PS, Flavell RA (1994) Costimulator B7-1 confers antigen-presenting-cell function to parenchymal tissue and in conjunction with tumor necrosis factor alpha leads to autoimmunity in transgenic mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 91:5138–5142
89. Allison J, Stephens LA, Kay TW et al (1998) The threshold for autoimmune T cell killing is influenced by B7-1. Eur J Immunol 28: 949–960
90. Bohme J, Haskins K, Stecha P et al (1989) Transgenic mice with I-A on islet cells are normoglycemic but immunologically intolerant. Science 244:1179–1183
91. Gotz J, Eibel H, Kohler G (1990) Non-tolerance and differential susceptibility to diabetes in transgenic mice expressing major histocompatibility class II genes on pancreatic beta cells. Eur J Immunol 20:1677–1683
92. Verdaguer J, Schmidt D, Amrani A, Anderson B, Averill N, Santamaria P (1997) Spontaneous autoimmune diabetes in monoclonal T cell nonobese diabetic mice. J Exp Med 186:1663–1676
93. Jasinski JM, Yu L, Nakayama M et al (2006) Transgenic insulin (B:9-23) T-cell receptor mice develop autoimmune diabetes dependent upon RAG genotype, H-2g7 homozygosity, and insulin 2 gene knockout. Diabetes 55:1978–1984
94. Delong T, Baker RL, He J, Barbour G, Bradley B, Haskins K (2012) Diabetogenic T-cell clones recognize an altered peptide of chromogranin A. Diabetes 61:3239–3246
95. Luhder F, Hoglund P, Allison JP, Benoist C, Mathis D (1998) Cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA-4) regulates the unfolding of autoimmune diabetes. J Exp Med 187:427–432
96. Chen Z, Herman AE, Matos M, Mathis D, Benoist C (2005) Where CD4 + CD25+ T reg cells impinge on autoimmune diabetes. J Exp Med 202:1387–1397
97. Martinic MM, Juedes AE, Bresson D et al (2007) Minimal impact of a de novo-expressed beta-cell autoantigen on spontaneous diabetes development in NOD mice. Diabetes 56:1059–1068
98. Diana J, Brezar V, Beaudoin L et al (2011) Viral infection prevents diabetes by inducing

regulatory T cells through NKT cell-plasmacytoid dendritic cell interplay. J Exp Med 208:729–745

99. Wong S, Guerder S, Visintin I et al (1995) Expression of the co-stimulator molecule B7-1 in pancreatic beta-cells accelerates diabetes in the NOD mouse. Diabetes 44:326–329
100. Wogensen L, Lee MS, Sarvetnick N (1994) Production of interleukin 10 by islet cells accelerates immune-mediated destruction of beta cells in nonobese diabetic mice. J Exp Med 179:1379–1384
101. Bohme J, Schuhbaur B, Kanagawa O, Benoist C, Mathis D (1990) MHC-linked protection from diabetes dissociated from clonal deletion of T cells. Science 249:293–295
102. Lund T, O'reilly L, Hutchings P et al (1990) Prevention of insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus in non-obese diabetic mice by transgenes encoding modified I-A beta-chain or normal I-E alpha-chain. Nature 345:727–729
103. Chervonsky AV, Wang Y, Wong FS et al (1997) The role of Fas in autoimmune diabetes. Cell 89:17–24
104. Mueller R, Krahl T, Sarvetnick N (1996) Pancreatic expression of interleukin-4 abrogates insulitis and autoimmune diabetes in nonobese diabetic (NOD) mice. J Exp Med 184:1093–1099
105. Moritani M, Yoshimoto K, Wong SF et al (1998) Abrogation of autoimmune diabetes in nonobese diabetic mice and protection against effector lymphocytes by transgenic paracrine TGF-beta1. J Clin Invest 102:499–506
106. Thebault-Baumont K, Dubois-Laforgue D, Krief P et al (2003) Acceleration of type 1 diabetes mellitus in proinsulin 2-deficient NOD mice. J Clin Invest 111:851–857
107. Hultgren B, Huang XJ, Dybdal N, Stewart TA (1996) Genetic absence of gamma-interferon delays but does not prevent diabetes in NOD mice. Diabetes 45:812–817
108. Trembleau S, Penna G, Gregori S et al (1999) Pancreas-infiltrating Th1 cells and diabetes develop in IL-12-deficient nonobese diabetic mice. J Immunol 163:2960–2968
109. Wang B, Gonzalez A, Hoglund P, Katz JD, Benoist C, Mathis D (1998) Interleukin-4 deficiency does not exacerbate disease in NOD mice. Diabetes 47:1207–1211
110. Balasa B, Van Gunst K, Jung N, Katz JD, Sarvetnick N (2000) IL-10 deficiency does not inhibit insulitis and accelerates cyclophosphamide-induced diabetes in the nonobese diabetic mouse. Cell Immunol 202:97–102
111. Lenschow DJ, Herold KC, Rhee L et al (1996) CD28/B7 regulation of Th1 and Th2 subsets in the development of autoimmune diabetes. Immunity 5:285–293
112. Congia M, Patel S, Cope AP, De Virgiliis S, Sonderstrup G (1998) T cell epitopes of insulin defined in HLA-DR4 transgenic mice are derived from preproinsulin and proinsulin. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 95:3833–3838
113. Di Lorenzo TP, Peakman M, Roep BO (2007) Translational mini-review series on type 1 diabetes: systematic analysis of T cell epitopes in autoimmune diabetes. Clin Exp Immunol 148:1–16
114. Takaki T, Marron MP, Mathews CE et al (2006) HLA-A*0201-restricted T cells from humanized NOD mice recognize autoantigens of potential clinical relevance to type 1 diabetes. J Immunol 176:3257–3265
115. Enee E, Martinuzzi E, Blancou P, Bach JM, Mallone R, van Endert P (2008) Equivalent specificity of peripheral blood and islet-infiltrating CD8+ T lymphocytes in spontaneously diabetic HLA-A2 transgenic NOD mice. J Immunol 180:5430–5438
116. Jarchum I, Baker JC, Yamada T et al (2007) In vivo cytotoxicity of insulin-specific CD8+ T-cells in HLA-A*0201 transgenic NOD mice. Diabetes 56:2551–2560
117. Jarchum I, DiLorenzo TP (2010) Ins2 deficiency augments spontaneous HLA-A*0201-restricted T cell responses to insulin. J Immunol 184:658–665
118. Antal Z, Baker JC, Smith C et al (2012) Beyond HLA-A*0201: new HLA-transgenic nonobese diabetic mouse models of type 1 diabetes identify the insulin C-peptide as a rich source of CD8+ T cell epitopes. J Immunol 188:5766–5775
119. Kuhn C, You S, Valette F et al (2011) Human CD3 transgenic mice: preclinical testing of antibodies promoting immune tolerance. Sci Transl Med 3:68ra10
120. Hu CY, Rodriguez-Pinto D, Du W et al (2007) Treatment with CD20-specific antibody prevents and reverses autoimmune diabetes in mice. J Clin Invest 117:3857–3867
121. Herold KC, Vignali DA, Cooke A, Bluestone JA (2013) Type 1 diabetes: translating mechanistic observations into effective clinical outcomes. Nat Rev Immunol 13:243–256
122. Elias D, Meilin A, Ablamunits V et al (1997) Hsp60 peptide therapy of NOD mouse diabetes induces a Th2 cytokine burst and down-regulates autoimmunity to various beta-cell antigens. Diabetes 46:758–764
123. Tian J, Atkinson MA, Clare Salzler M et al (1996) Nasal administration of glutamate

decarboxylase (GAD65) peptides induces Th2 responses and prevents murine insulin-dependent diabetes. J Exp Med 183: 1561–1567

124. Tisch R, Wang B, Serreze DV (1999) Induction of glutamic acid decarboxylase 65-specific Th2 cells and suppression of autoimmune diabetes at late stages of disease is epitope dependent. J Immunol 163: 1178–1187
125. Harrison LC, Dempseycollier M, Kramer DR, Takahashi K (1996) Aerosol insulin induces regulatory CD8 gamma delta T cells that prevent murine insulin-dependent diabetes. J Exp Med 184:2167–2174
126. Zhang ZJ, Davidson L, Eisenbarth G, Weiner HL (1991) Suppression of diabetes in non-obese diabetic mice by oral administration of porcine insulin. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 88:10252–10256
127. Bach JF, Chatenoud L (2001) Tolerance to islet autoantigens in type 1 diabetes. Annu Rev Immunol 19:131–161
128. Maron R, Melican NS, Weiner HL (1999) Regulatory Th2-type T cell lines against insulin and GAD peptides derived from orally- and nasally-treated NOD mice suppress diabetes. J Autoimmun 12:251–258
129. Weiner HL, da Cunha AP, Quintana F, Wu H (2011) Oral tolerance. Immunol Rev 241: 241–259
130. Al-sabbagh A, Miller A, Santos LM, Weiner HL (1994) Antigen-driven tissue-specific suppression following oral tolerance: orally administered myelin basic protein suppresses proteolipid protein-induced experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in the SJL mouse. Eur J Immunol 24:2104–2109
131. Tian JD, Claresalzler M, Herschenfeld A et al (1996) Modulating autoimmune responses to GAD inhibits disease progression and prolongs islet graft survival in diabetes-prone mice. Nat Med 2:1348–1353
132. Elias D, Cohen IR (1994) Peptide therapy for diabetes in NOD mice. Lancet 343:704–706
133. Diabetes Prevention Trial-Type 1 Diabetes Study Group (2002) Effects of insulin in relatives of patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med 346:1685–1691
134. Chaillous L, Lefevre H, Thivolet C et al (2000) Oral insulin administration and residual beta-cell function in recent-onset type 1 diabetes: a multicentre randomised controlled trial. Diabete Insuline Orale group. Lancet 356:545–549
135. Pozzilli P, Pitocco D, Visalli N et al (2000) No effect of oral insulin on residual beta-cell function in recent-onset type I diabetes (the IMDIAB VII). IMDIAB Group. Diabetologia 43:1000–1004
136. Ludvigsson J, Faresjo M, Hjorth M et al (2008) GAD treatment and insulin secretion in recent-onset type 1 diabetes. N Engl J Med 359:1909–1920
137. Raz I, Elias D, Avron A, Tamir M, Metzger M, Cohen IR (2001) Beta-cell function in new-onset type 1 diabetes and immunomodulation with a heat-shock protein peptide (DiaPep277): a randomised, double-blind, phase II trial. Lancet 358:1749–1753
138. Raz I, Avron A, Tamir M et al (2007) Treatment of new-onset type 1 diabetes with peptide DiaPep277 is safe and associated with preserved beta-cell function: extension of a randomized, double-blind, phase II trial. Diabetes Metab Res Rev 23:292–298
139. Raz I, Ziegler AG, Linn T et al (2014) Treatment of recent-onset type 1 diabetic patients with DiaPep277: results of a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomized phase 3 trial. Diabetes Care 37:1392–1400
140. Prasad S, Kohm AP, McMahon JS, Luo X, Miller SD (2012) Pathogenesis of NOD diabetes is initiated by reactivity to the insulin B chain 9-23 epitope and involves functional epitope spreading. J Autoimmun 39: 347–353
141. Fife BT, Guleria I, Gubbels Bupp M et al (2006) Insulin-induced remission in new-onset NOD mice is maintained by the PD-1-PD-L1 pathway. J Exp Med 203:2737–2747
142. Niens M, Grier AE, Marron M, Kay TW, Greiner DL, Serreze DV (2011) Prevention of "Humanized" diabetogenic CD8 T-cell responses in HLA-transgenic NOD mice by a multipeptide coupled-cell approach. Diabetes 60:1229–1236
143. Prasad S, Xu D, Miller SD (2012) Tolerance strategies employing antigen-coupled apoptotic cells and carboxylated PLG nanoparticles for the treatment of type 1 diabetes. Rev Diabet Stud 9:319–327
144. Kasagi S, Zhang P, Che L et al (2014) In vivo-generated antigen-specific regulatory T cells treat autoimmunity without compromising antibacterial immune response. Sci Transl Med 6:241ra278
145. Chatenoud L (2014) Immunology. Teaching the immune system "self" respect and tolerance. Science 344:1343–1344
146. Perruche S, Zhang P, Liu Y, Saas P, Bluestone JA, Chen W (2008) CD3-specific antibody-induced immune tolerance involves transforming growth factor-beta from phagocytes

digesting apoptotic T cells. Nat Med 14: 528–535

147. Mandrup-Poulsen T, Pickersgill L, Donath MY (2010) Blockade of interleukin 1 in type 1 diabetes mellitus. Nat Rev Endocrinol 6: 158–166
148. Ablamunits V, Henegariu O, Hansen JB et al (2012) Synergistic reversal of type 1 diabetes in NOD mice with anti-CD3 and interleukin-1 blockade: evidence of improved immune regulation. Diabetes 61:145–154
149. Sumpter KM, Adhikari S, Grishman EK, White PC (2011) Preliminary studies related to anti-interleukin-1beta therapy in children with newly diagnosed type 1 diabetes. Pediatr Diabetes 12:656–667
150. Moran A, Bundy B, Becker DJ et al (2013) Interleukin-1 antagonism in type 1 diabetes of recent onset: two multicentre, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trials. Lancet 381:1905–1915
151. Mastrandrea L, Yu J, Behrens T et al (2009) Etanercept treatment in children with new-onset type 1 diabetes: pilot randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind study. Diabetes Care 32:1244–1249
152. Boitard C, Bendelac A, Richard MF, Carnaud C, Bach JF (1988) Prevention of diabetes in nonobese diabetic mice by anti-I-A monoclonal antibodies: transfer of protection by splenic T cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 85:9719–9723
153. Shizuru JA, Taylor-edwards C, Banks BA, Gregory AK, Fathman CG (1988) Immunotherapy of the nonobese diabetic mouse: treatment with an antibody to T-helper lymphocytes. Science 240:659–662
154. Sempe P, Bedossa P, Richard MF, Villa MC, Bach JF, Boitard C (1991) Anti-alpha/beta T cell receptor monoclonal antibody provides an efficient therapy for autoimmune diabetes in nonobese diabetic (NOD) mice. Eur J Immunol 21:1163–1169
155. Moriyama H, Yokono K, Amano K et al (1996) Induction of tolerance in murine autoimmune diabetes by transient blockade of leukocyte function-associated antigen-1/intercellular adhesion molecule-1 pathway. J Immunol 157:3737–3743
156. Orban T, Bundy B, Becker DJ et al (2011) Co-stimulation modulation with abatacept in patients with recent-onset type 1 diabetes: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 378:412–419
157. Chatenoud L, Bluestone JA (2007) CD3-specific antibodies: a portal to the treatment of autoimmunity. Nat Rev Immunol 7:622–632
158. Chatenoud L, Thervet E, Primo J, Bach JF (1994) Anti-CD3 antibody induces long-term remission of overt autoimmunity in nonobese diabetic mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 91:123–127
159. Penaranda C, Tang Q, Bluestone JA (2011) Anti-CD3 therapy promotes tolerance by selectively depleting pathogenic cells while preserving regulatory T cells. J Immunol 187:2015–2022
160. You S, Zuber J, Kuhn C et al (2012) Induction of allograft tolerance by monoclonal CD3 antibodies: a matter of timing. Am J Transplant 12:2909–2919
161. Goto R, You S, Zaitsu M, Chatenoud L, Wood KJ (2013) Delayed anti-CD3 therapy results in depletion of alloreactive T cells and the dominance of Foxp3(+)CD4(+) graft infiltrating cells. Am J Transplant 13:1655–1664
162. Chatenoud L (2003) CD3-specific antibody-induced active tolerance: from bench to bedside. Nat Rev Immunol 3:123–132
163. Belghith M, Bluestone JA, Barriot S, Megret J, Bach JF, Chatenoud L (2003) TGF-beta-dependent mechanisms mediate restoration of self-tolerance induced by antibodies to CD3 in overt autoimmune diabetes. Nat Med 9:1202–1208
164. You S, Candon S, Kuhn C, Bach JF, Chatenoud L (2008) CD3 antibodies as unique tools to restore self-tolerance in established autoimmunity their mode of action and clinical application in type 1 diabetes. Adv Immunol 100:13–37
165. You S, Thieblemont N, Alyanakian MA, Bach JF, Chatenoud L (2006) Transforming growth factor-beta and T-cell-mediated immunoregulation in the control of autoimmune diabetes. Immunol Rev 212:185–202
166. Herold KC, Hagopian W, Auger JA et al (2002) Anti-CD3 monoclonal antibody in new-onset type 1 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med 346:1692–1698
167. Keymeulen B, Vandemeulebroucke E, Ziegler AG et al (2005) Insulin needs after CD3-antibody therapy in new-onset type 1 diabetes. N Engl J Med 352:2598–2608
168. Keymeulen B, Walter M, Mathieu C et al (2010) Four-year metabolic outcome of a randomised controlled CD3-antibody trial in recent-onset type 1 diabetic patients depends on their age and baseline residual beta cell mass. Diabetologia 53:614–623
169. Keymeulen B, Candon S, Fafi-Kremer S et al (2010) Transient Epstein-Barr virus reactivation in CD3 monoclonal antibody-treated patients. Blood 115:1145–1155

170. Sherry N, Hagopian W, Ludvigsson J et al (2011) Teplizumab for treatment of type 1 diabetes (Protégé study): 1-year results from a randomised, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 6736:60931–60938
171. Pescovitz MD, Greenbaum CJ, Krause-Steinrauf H et al (2009) Rituximab, B-lymphocyte depletion, and preservation of beta-cell function. N Engl J Med 361: 2143–2152
172. Hu C, Ding H, Zhang X, Wong FS, Wen L (2013) Combination treatment with anti-CD20 and oral anti-CD3 prevents and reverses autoimmune diabetes. Diabetes 62:2849–2858
173. Grinberg-Bleyer Y, Baeyens A, You S et al (2010) IL-2 reverses established type one diabetes by local effect on pancreatic regulatory T cells. J Exp Med 207:1871–1878
174. Rabinovitch A, Suarez-Pinzon WL, Shapiro AM, Rajotte RV, Power R (2002) Combination therapy with sirolimus and interleukin-2 prevents spontaneous and recurrent autoimmune diabetes in NOD mice. Diabetes 51:638–645
175. Long SA, Rieck M, Sanda S et al (2012) Rapamycin/IL-2 combination therapy in patients with type 1 diabetes augments Tregs yet transiently impairs beta-cell function. Diabetes 61:2340–2348
176. Hartemann A, Bensimon G, Payan CA et al (2013) Low-dose interleukin 2 in patients with type 1 diabetes: a phase 1/2 randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 1:295–305
177. Lemire JM, Archer DC, Beck L, Spiegelberg HL (1995) Immunosuppressive actions of 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D3: preferential inhibition of Th1 functions. J Nutr 125: 1704S–1708S
178. Giulietti A, Gysemans C, Stoffels K et al (2004) Vitamin D deficiency in early life accelerates Type 1 diabetes in non-obese diabetic mice. Diabetologia 47:451–462
179. Mathieu C, Waer M, Laureys J, Rutgeerts O, Bouillon R (1994) Prevention of autoimmune diabetes in NOD mice by 1,25 dihydroxyvitamin D3. Diabetologia 37:552–558
180. Gregori S, Giarratana N, Smiroldo S, Uskokovic M, Adorini L (2002) A 1alpha,25-dihydroxyvitamin D(3) analog enhances regulatory T-cells and arrests autoimmune diabetes in NOD mice. Diabetes 51:1367–1374
181. Adorini L, Penna G, Giarratana N, Uskokovic M (2003) Tolerogenic dendritic cells induced by vitamin D receptor ligands enhance regulatory T cells inhibiting allograft rejection and autoimmune diseases. J Cell Biochem 88: 227–233
182. The EURODIAB Substudy 2 Study Group (1999) Vitamin D supplement in early childhood and risk for Type I (insulin-dependent) diabetes mellitus. Diabetologia 42:51–54
183. Bizzarri C, Pitocco D, Napoli N et al (2010) No protective effect of calcitriol on beta-cell function in recent-onset type 1 diabetes: the IMDIAB XIII trial. Diabetes Care 33: 1962–1963
184. Walter M, Kaupper T, Adler K, Foersch J, Bonifacio E, Ziegler AG (2010) No effect of the 1alpha,25-dihydroxyvitamin D3 on beta-cell residual function and insulin requirement in adults with new-onset type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care 33:1443–1448
185. Tang Q, Henriksen KJ, Bi M et al (2004) In vitro-expanded antigen-specific regulatory T cells suppress autoimmune diabetes. J Exp Med 199:1455–1465
186. Bluestone JA, Tang Q (2004) Therapeutic vaccination using CD4+CD25+ antigen-specific regulatory T cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 101(Suppl 2):14622–14626
187. Putnam AL, Brusko TM, Lee MR et al (2009) Expansion of human regulatory T-cells from patients with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes 58: 652–662
188. Kared H, Masson A, Adle-Biassette H, Bach JF, Chatenoud L, Zavala F (2005) Treatment with granulocyte colony-stimulating factor prevents diabetes in NOD mice by recruiting plasmacytoid dendritic cells and functional CD4(+)CD25(+) regulatory T-cells. Diabetes 54:78–84
189. Kared H, Adle-Biassette H, Fois E et al (2006) Jagged2-expressing hematopoietic progenitors promote regulatory T cell expansion in the periphery through notch signaling. Immunity 25:823–834
190. Voltarelli JC, Couri CE, Stracieri AB et al (2007) Autologous nonmyeloablative hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in newly diagnosed type 1 diabetes mellitus. JAMA 297:1568–1576
191. Couri CE, Oliveira MC, Stracieri AB et al (2009) C-peptide levels and insulin independence following autologous nonmyeloablative hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in newly diagnosed type 1 diabetes mellitus. JAMA 301:1573–1579
192. Leal AM, Oliveira MC, Couri CE et al (2012) Testicular function in patients with type 1 diabetes treated with high-dose CY and autologous hematopoietic SCT. Bone Marrow Transplant 47:467–468

Chapter 9

Recent Advances in the Treatment of Immune-Mediated Inflammatory Diseases

Sander W. Tas and Dominique L.P. Baeten

Abstract

The treatment of immune-mediated inflammatory diseases (IMIDs) has dramatically improved over the last two decades by the development of a series of targeted biological therapies. This paper focuses on new developments in the treatment of IMIDs. In particular, we discuss how different ways of targeting the same mediators can lead to different efficacy and safety profiles, using B cell targeting as example. In addition, we discuss the emerging field of 'small molecules' that target specifically intracellular processes related to cytokine signaling, cell activation, cell migration, and other processes relevant to tissue inflammation.

Key words Immune-mediated inflammatory diseases, Treatment, B cells, Signal transduction

1 Introduction

Immune-mediated inflammatory diseases (IMIDs) encompasses disorders where tissue and organ inflammation is primarily driven by aberrant immune responses. In contrast to the 'secondary' involvement of the immune system in infectious diseases and oncology, the trigger of IMIDs is the immune system itself. Importantly, recent advances in our understanding of immunity and inflammation revealed that IMIDs can be driven not only by autoimmunity, defined here as abnormal responses of T and/or B lymphocytes against self-antigens, but also by auto-inflammation, this is self-directed tissue inflammation driven by aberrant or uncontrolled innate immune response triggered by local factors at tissues sites predisposed to disease. The former group encompasses diseases such rheumatoid arthritis (RA), type I diabetes, and systemic lupus erythematosis, whereas gout and sarcoidosis are examples of autoinflammatory diseases.

The treatment of IMIDs has dramatically improved over the last two decades by the development of a series of targeted biological therapies. Indeed, combined fundamental and translational immunology research has revealed that specific inflammatory

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_9,

mediators (in particular cytokines) and cells were 'master switches' in specific IMIDs and that targeting these cellular and molecular players with antibodies or soluble receptors potently down-modulated chronic inflammation. The first and major success story is TNF blockade, which is very effective to treat a variety of IMIDs including RA, spondyloarthritis (SpA), psoriasis, and inflammatory bowel disease. Other major anti-cytokine therapies are directed towards IL-1 and IL-6 and, more recently, the IL-23/IL-17 pathway. Besides targeting cytokines, a second very successful approach was to target pathogenic cell subsets, with as prime example B cell depletion with the anti-CD20 antibody rituximab. Originally developed to treat lymphomas, this compound turned out to be also very effective in the treatment of RA and other autoimmune diseases. Thirdly and finally, pathogenic cell can not only be depleted but one can inhibit their interaction with other pathogenic cells (such as in the case of co-stimulation blockade by CTLA-4-Ig or abatacept) or with molecules directing their migration into target tissues (such as the anti-alpha4 integrin antibody natalizumab).

Existing and emerging therapies targeting cytokines, cells, and cellular interactions have been extensively described in the literature and are not reviewed in detail here. This chapter rather focuses on two specific new developments in the treatment of IMIDs. Firstly, we discuss how different ways of targeting the same mediators can lead to different efficacy and safety profiles, using B cell targeting as example. We discuss novel drugs beyond rituximab that target other B cell surface molecules, other B cell subsets, and B cell growth factors. Secondly, we discuss the emerging field of "small molecules" that target specifically intracellular processes related to cytokine signaling, cell activation, cell migration, and other processes relevant to tissue inflammation.

2 Targeting B Cells

2.1 Targeting B Cells with Anti-CD20 Monoclonal Antibodies

B cells contribute to chronic inflammatory disease by secreting cytokines, providing co-stimulatory signals to T cells, presenting antigen in the context of antibody production, and producing auto-antibodies. Therefore, selective depletion of these cells alters the immune response and reduces inflammation. Antibody-mediated depletion of B cells can be achieved via different mechanisms of which antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) and complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) are most widely used. The validity of this approach had been demonstrated by the use of the anti-CD20 antibody rituximab in RA [1] as well as ANCA-associated vasculitis [2], modest effects in SLE [3, 4], systemic sclerosis (SSc) [5], Sjogren's syndrome (SS) [6], and multiple sclerosis (MS) [7]. Rituximab is currently tested in pemphigus, AIHA, and ITP [8].

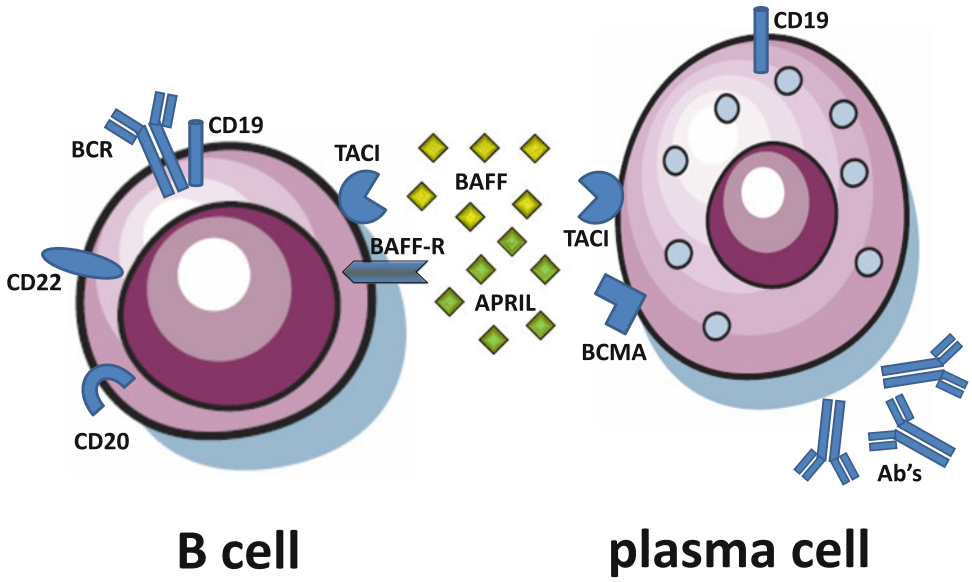


Fig. 1 Surface molecules of B cells and plasma cells of soluble factors targeted in IMIDs. Schematic overview of B cell and plasma cell surface receptors or other molecules. The survival factors B cell activating factor (BAFF) and a proliferation-inducing ligand (APRIL) bind to their respective receptors on B cells (BAFF-receptor, BAFF-R) (=TNFRSF13C), and transmembrane activator and calcium-modulating ligand interactor, TACI (=TNFRSF13B) and plasma cells (B cell maturation antigen, BCMA (TNFRSF17), and TACI. Targeting APRIL and BAFF affects both B cells and plasma cells. B cells can be targeted specifically via the B cell restricted antigens CD20 and CD22. Targeting CD19 affects both B cells, plasmablasts, and a subset of plasma cells. *Ab's* antibodies, *BCR* B cell receptor

Based on the efficacy and relatively good safety profile of rituximab (a rare but very severe complication of rituximab treatment is progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy, a devastating demyelinating disease caused by reactivation of the JC virus [9]), other antibodies targeting CD20 are currently in development with the aim to improve the efficacy and safety profile (Fig. 1).

Ofatumumab is a fully humanized IgG1 mAb which binds a CD20 epitope distinct from the binding site of rituximab. Ofatumumab has enhanced CDC activity compared to the other anti-CD20 mAbs [10]. In RA data from initial phase 1/2 and 3 studies point towards favorable effects on disease activity [11, 12]. In a phase 2 dose-finding study in MS ofatumumab treatment resulted in a substantial reduction in new and total lesions [13].

Ocrelizumab is a humanized anti-CD20 mAb that binds a different but overlapping epitope from rituximab. It has similar CDC, but 2–5-fold increased ADCC [14]. Overall, it appears that fewer anti-drug antibody responses are elicited during ocrelizumab treatment. In RA patients ocrelizumab treatment resulted in reduced disease activity and a reduction in joint damage, however this was accompanied by an increased risk of infections which led to termination of development for RA [15, 16]. In SLE nephritis, overall renal response rates with ocrelizumab were numerically but not

statistically significantly superior to those with placebo, while ocrelizumab treatment was associated with a higher rate of serious infections in the subgroup receiving background MMF [17]. Nevertheless, in MS after initial favorable results [18], additional clinical trials in different forms of this disease are still ongoing.

Veltuzumab is a humanized IgG1 anti-CD20 mAb with both structural and functional differences from rituximab. It has shown promising clinical activity in relapsing ITP [19] and is also being evaluated for RA [20], but no results have been disclosed yet.

2.2 Targeting Other B Cell Surface Molecules

CD19 is a B cell-restricted antigen that regulates the threshold for B cell activation and, in contrast to CD20, is maintained on plasmablasts and subsets of plasma cells (Fig. 1) [21]. Therefore, targeting CD19 is expected to have a more profound effect than anti-CD20 therapy [22]. MEDI-551 is a humanized IgG1 afucosylated mAb targeting CD19 with enhanced ADCC effector function [23]. It is currently under evaluation in clinical trials for systemic sclerosis (SSc) (Clinical Trials.gov: NCT00946699) and MS [24].

CD22 is considered to be a B cell antigen (expressed on the majority of IgM^+IgD^+ B cells, but less so on germinal center B cells and plasma cells), which can also be detected on basophils and dendritic cells (Fig. 1) [25]. However, CD22 has been demonstrated to play an important role in the control of B cell activation, B cell survival, and cell-cycle progression following activation [26]. Epratuzumab is a humanized IgG1 mAb directed against CD22 with modest ADCC, but no CDC activity (most likely due to rapid internalization of CD22 after Ab binding) [27]. In an open-label phase 1/2 study in Sjogren's syndrome (SS) epratuzumab treatment was well-tolerated and resulted in a moderate clinical responses [28]. A phase 2 study in SLE patients also demonstrated favorable clinical effects [29, 30]. Phase 3 trials in SLE are currently ongoing.

2.3 Targeting B Cell Survival Factors

Besides targeting B cell themselves, a novel strategy consists of targeting B cell growth and survivial factors. Indeed, B cell function and survival depends on various factors of which the TNF family members B-cell activating factor (BAFF or BlyS) and a proliferation induced ligand (APRIL) are probably most important in the context of autoimmune diseases. Interestingly, BAFF and APRIL also support plasma cell survival (Fig. 1) [31].

Belimumab is a fully human IgG1 mAb that selectively inhibits BAFF, which results in B cell apoptosis [32]. It is effective in SLE in patients with active, autoantibody positive disease [33] and was approved by the EMA and FDA for this indication in 2011. Belimumab was not very successful in RA [34], however its efficacy is currently under investigation for ITP, Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia, idiopathic membranous glomerulonephropathy, Sjogrens syndrome (SS), prevention of kidney transplant rejection, and myasthenia gravis (reviewed in [35]).

Tabalumab is a humanized IgG4 antibody that binds and neutralizes both soluble and membrane-bound BAFF [36]. A phase 2 dose-ranging study of subcutaneous tabalumab for the treatment of active RA patients with an inadequate response to methotrexate was successful [37]. Clinical trials in SLE [38] and MS [39] are ongoing, but results have not been published yet.

Atacicept is a fusion protein soluble receptor construct of Transmembrane Activator and Calcium-modulating ligand Interactor (TACI) and the Fc part of human IgG1 (TACI-Ig) [40]. TACI is a receptor that is normally expressed both on B cells and on plasma cells and binds both BAFF and APRIL [41]. It has been tested in SLE [42] and RA [43, 44], but in general was not successful. In MS atacicept even worsened disease activity [45]. One explanation for this may be that atacicept also targets survival factors for regulatory B cells without full depletion of pathogenic B cells [46]. This example as well as the other emerging biological drugs discussed above in the context of B cell targeting illustrate well that different ways of approaching a therapeutic target can result in strongly different efficacy and safety profiles.

3 Targeting Intracellular Signaling Pathways

Besides novel approaches to target extracellular molecules (including cytokines, growth factors, surface markers, co-stimulatory molecules, and adhesion molecules), intense efforts have been made in the last years in identifying intracellular targets, since all inflammatory responses are initiated by activation of intracellular signal transduction pathways. Examples of key molecules in these intracellular pathways are mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPKs), nuclear factor-kappaB (NF-κB) activating kinases, Janus kinase (JAK), spleen tyrosine kinase (Syk), and phosphoinositide 3′kinase. Here we discuss the advances in targeting MAPKs, NF-κB, and JAKs as examples.

3.1 Targeting MAPK

The family of mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPKs) play a central role in the regulation of various biological processes that are involved in immune responses, such as proliferation, differentiation, pro-inflammatory gene expression, and survival. MAPKs are activated in response to environmental stress factors, such as TLR ligands, cytokines, growth factors, and radiation. Subsequently, MAPKs induce signaling by phosphorylating specific target proteins. MAPKs consist of three main groups that all have specific roles in the regulation of cell function: p38 MAPKs, extracellular signal-regulated protein kinases (ERKs), and c-jun NH_2 terminal kinases (JNKs). Recently, several additional atypical MAPKs such as ERK5, ERK3/4, ERK7/8, and Nemo-like kinase have been described [47], but these are less well studied and are not discussed here.

3.1.1 p38 Inhibitors

p38 has four isoforms (α, β, γ, and δ), of which p38α and p38β are ubiquitously expressed. Activation and phosphorylation of p38 is regulated by the upstream MAPK kinases (MKK)3 and MKK6 that are phosphorylated by multiple MKK kinases (MAP3Ks). Particularly p38α is a signaling molecule that regulates pro-inflammatory cytokine production (such as TNFα, IL-1β, and IL-6), which makes it an attractive target for many IMIDs including RA. Consequently, intense efforts have been made to develop small molecule p38 inhibitors. However, despite being effective in preclinical models of arthritis, to date clinical trials in RA have all failed due to poor efficacy or toxicity, including hepatotoxicity (reviewed in [48]). Yet, in inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) initial clinical trials with the p38 inhibitor Semapimod (CNI-1493) appeared promising [49] and follow-up studies have established a mild beneficial effect in a limited number of patients [50]. A potential explanation for these rather disappointing results may lie in the fact that p38 also has anti-inflammatory effects or that blocking one kinase may lead to compensatory effects in other kinases that regulate the same genes. Therefore, an alternative more effective strategy may be to block upstream kinases such as MKK3/6 [48].

3.1.2 ERK Inhibitors

The ERK family consists of two conventional MAPK, namely ERK 1 and ERK2, that are activated by the MAPKKs MEK1 and MEK2 in response to growth factors, including platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) and epidermal growth factor (EGF). ERK1 and ERK2 are important for cell proliferation and differentiation [47]. FR180204, an ERK inhibitor, has been shown to be effective against mouse collagen-induced arthritis, a representative animal model of RA. The MEK1/2 inhibitors PD98059 and U0126 are not competitive with respect to ATP, but appear to physically interact with MEK1/2 thereby preventing phosphorylation and/or conformational transition that generates the activated enzyme. More recently, additional noncompetitive inhibitors of MEK1/2 with greater bioavailability (PD184352 and PD0325901) have been developed and entered clinical trials as potential anticancer agents (reviewed in [47]). However, no clinical trials in IMIDs have been performed so far.

3.1.3 JNK Inhibitors

The three JNK isoforms (JNK1, JNK2, and JNK3) are involved in many processes that contribute to chronic inflammation such as matrix metalloproteinase (MMP) and cytokine production, cell migration, and angiogenesis [51, 52]. JNK1 and JNK2 are widely expressed, and therefore most attention of pharmaceutical companies has gone out to target these isoforms [51]. SP600125, a direct inhibitor of JNK activity, decreased paw swelling in rat adjuvant-induced arthritis, which was accompanied by a near-complete inhibition of radiographic damage [53]. However, this inhibitor lacked specificity and was replaced by more selective inhibitors.

At present, several companies have JNK inhibitors that are in different stages of development, but no data of clinical trials in IMIDs have been reported.

3.2 NF-κB Inhibitors

The Nuclear Factor-kappaB (NF-κB) family of transcription factors is crucially involved in the regulation of immune responses in IMIDs (reviewed in [54]). NF-κB can be activated via two distinct pathways: the canonical pathway and the alternative or noncanonical pathway. The canonical pathway is most extensively studied and can be activated by stimulation of a variety of cell membrane receptors including tumor necrosis factor receptor (TNF-R), IL-1 receptor, and Toll-like receptors, in response to their respective pro-inflammatory ligands, as well as via triggering of classic immunoreceptors like the T-cell receptor (TCR) or the B-cell receptor (BCR). In this pathway, inhibitor of κB (IκB) kinase (IKK)β is required for NF-κB activation, whereas IKKα is redundant (reviewed in [55]). The canonical NF-κB pathway is essential both in acute inflammatory responses and in chronic inflammatory diseases such as RA and inflammatory bowel disease [56]. In RA IKKβ is a key regulator of synovial inflammation and the importance of the canonical NF-κB pathway in arthritis is underlined by the beneficial effects of specific IKKβ inhibition in preclinical models of arthritis [57, 58]. Fuelled by these results and beneficial effects of NF-κB inhibition in preclinical models of other inflammatory diseases, more than 700 compounds with inhibitory effects on NF-κB signaling have been reported [59]. However, clinical trials are hitherto lacking, presumably by fear of toxicity associated with global NF-κB inhibition or off-target effects. This could potentially be solved by selective targeting of the NF-κB inhibitor to a specific cell type, for instance using a multimodular recombinant protein that specifically binds to cytokine-activated endothelium, which has been demonstrated to work very elegantly under inflammatory conditions in vivo [60].

The noncanonical NF-κB pathway can be triggered by the activation of members of the TNF-receptor superfamily including the lymphotoxin β receptor (LTβ-R), CD40, B cell activating factor belonging to the TNF family (BAFF) receptor, and receptor activator of NF-κB (RANK). Of note, these receptors not only trigger the noncanonical NF-κB pathway, but simultaneously also the canonical pathway. The noncanonical NF-κB pathway is strictly dependent on NF-κB inducing kinase (NIK) and IKKα homodimers, but does not involve IKKβ or IKKγ. Overall, this pathway is involved in lymphoid organ development and adaptive immune responses [61]. Recently, we established that noncanonical NF-κB signaling in endothelial cells stimulates pathological angiogenesis in chronic inflammation [62]. Consequently, NIK inhibition using specific small molecule inhibitors could perhaps be an effective new treatment option for chronic inflammatory diseases [63].

3.3 Janus Kinase (JAK) Inhibitors

The Janus kinase (JAK) family consists of four members: JAK1, JAK2, JAK3, and tyrosine kinase 2 (TYK2). JAKs associate with different cytokine receptors and via phosphorylation of tyrosine residues create docking sites for one or more signal transducer and activators of transcription (STAT) molecules. JAK1, JAK2, and TYK2 are ubiquitously expressed, whereas JAK3 is primarily expressed in hematopoietic cells. JAK1 and JAK3 convey signals from cytokine receptors that contain the IL-2 receptor common γ chain and mediate signaling by IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21, cytokines that are essential for the development and maturation of T cells. JAK2 is associated with hematopoietic growth factor receptors and cytokine receptors for IL-1, IL-6, and IL-17 that are critically involved in various aspects of immune cell function (reviewed in [64]). Consequently, inhibiting JAKs blocks multiple aspects of cytokine signaling, which makes them attractive targets for many IMIDs. Of all protein kinase inhibitors, JAK inhibitors have entered the clinic first. Tofacitinib (also known as CP-690550) is a potent JAK1 and JAK3 blocker, that also inhibits JAK2 to a certain extent. It was effective in preclinical models of arthritis and transplantation [65, 66]. Tofacitinib successively entered clinical trials, which demonstrated efficacy in RA [67, 68], IBD [69], and psoriasis [70]. In 2012 tofacitinib was approved for the treatment of RA in the USA, Japan and Russia. However, the European Medicines Agency (EMA) did not approve tofacitinib for RA, mainly due to concerns about the risk of serious infections. Nevertheless, EULAR included tofacitinib in their recommendations for the treatment of RA as a therapeutic option after biological treatment has failed [71].

4 Conclusion

The treatment of IMIDs continues to improve as we develop a better understanding of the pathogenesis of these diseases and the pathways that are suitable for targeting. Importantly, however, the clinical exploration of novel targeted therapies also contributes directly to our understanding of the function and role of specific pathways in vivo. This interaction between fundamental immunobiology and translational research has been key to many novel developments in the field of IMIDs.

These developments are not only related to an ongoing expansion of 'classical' target pathways (cytokines, growth factors, surface molecules, co-stimulation, adhesion) but also to fine-tuning of the way to approach these targets, as discussed for B cells. The key message here is that a single pathogenic pathway may operate in completely different ways depending on the exact immunological and tissue context. As we discussed recently for another key inflammatory pathways, the IL-23/IL-17 axis, studying the context of

inflammation is as important as understanding the pathway to determine how, when and where this pathway should be optimally targeted [72, 73].

This may be further improved by new developments in recombinant antibody technology allows for the generation of bispecific antibodies that have the ability to bind to two different epitopes on the same or different antigens. This may have significant advantages over targeting one epitope, especially in complex multifaceted diseases [74], since with a single therapeutic entity two targets can be blocked or engaged. This approach has been rapidly adopted by the oncology and hematology field, and attempts are also made in the field of clinical immunology and rheumatology. An example of this is a bispecific hexavalent antibody comprising epratuzumab and veltuzumab (anti-CD22/CD20), which may lead to improved treatment of SLE and other IMIDs, but has not been formally tested yet [75].

Finally, new horizons are opening with completely novel targets such as the intracellular signaling pathways. This review discussed a few examples in order to highlight the enormous progresses and promises ahead of us, but is obviously far from complete. For example, there is crucial emerging knowledge in the role of epigenetic modifications in the initiation and maintenance of tissue inflammation and, accordingly, small molecules modifying for example DNA methylation and histone modifications are in (pre)clinical development [76]. To date, one clinical trial with a histone deacetylase (HDAC) inhibitor has been performed in systemic juvenile inflammatory arthritis. Oral administration of the nonselective HDACi givinostat (ITF2357) resulted in significant therapeutic benefit after 12 weeks, particularly with respect to arthritis activity, with a relatively good safety profile [77]. These and other new developments will continue to revolutionize the treatment of IMIDs and contribute to the ongoing evolution from nonspecific immune suppression to targeted immunomodulation and, ultimately, genuine disease modification and cure.

Acknowledgements

SWT is supported by a VENI grant and a Clinical Fellowship from the Netherlands Organization for Scientific Research (NWO/ZonMw), and grants from the Dutch Arthritis Foundation. DLB is supported by a VICI grant from the Netherlands Organization for Scientific Research (NWO), and grants from the Dutch Arthritis Foundation.

Disclosure of conflicts of interest: The authors declare no competing financial interests.

References

1. Edwards JC, Szczepanski L, Szechinski J et al (2004) Efficacy of B-cell-targeted therapy with rituximab in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. N Engl J Med 350:2572–2581
2. Stone JH, Merkel PA, Spiera R et al (2010) Rituximab versus cyclophosphamide for ANCA-associated vasculitis. N Engl J Med 363:221–232
3. Looney RJ, Anolik J, Sanz I (2010) A perspective on B-cell-targeting therapy for SLE. Mod Rheumatol 20:1–10
4. Looney RJ, Anolik JH, Campbell D et al (2004) B cell depletion as a novel treatment for systemic lupus erythematosus: a phase I/II dose-escalation trial of rituximab. Arthritis Rheum 50:2580–2589
5. Smith V, Piette Y, van Praet JT et al (2013) Two-year results of an open pilot study of a 2-treatment course with rituximab in patients with early systemic sclerosis with diffuse skin involvement. J Rheumatol 40:52–57
6. Meijer JM, Meiners PM, Vissink A et al (2010) Effectiveness of rituximab treatment in primary Sjogren's syndrome: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Arthritis Rheum 62:960–968
7. Hauser SL, Waubant E, Arnold DL et al (2008) B-cell depletion with rituximab in relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med 358:676–688
8. Bluml S, McKeever K, Ettinger R, Smolen J, Herbst R (2013) B-cell targeted therapeutics in clinical development. Arthritis Res Ther 15(Suppl 1):S4
9. Tan CS, Koralnik IJ (2010) Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy and other disorders caused by JC virus: clinical features and pathogenesis. Lancet Neurol 9:425–437
10. Castillo J, Milani C, Mendez-Allwood D (2009) Ofatumumab, a second-generation anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody, for the treatment of lymphoproliferative and autoimmune disorders. Expert Opin Investig Drugs 18:491–500
11. Taylor PC, Quattrocchi E, Mallett S, Kurrasch R, Petersen J, Chang DJ (2011) Ofatumumab, a fully human anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody, in biological-naive, rheumatoid arthritis patients with an inadequate response to methotrexate: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial. Ann Rheum Dis 70:2119–2125
12. Ostergaard M, Baslund B, Rigby W et al (2010) Ofatumumab, a human anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody, for treatment of rheumatoid arthritis with an inadequate response to one or more disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs: results of a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase I/II study. Arthritis Rheum 62:2227–2238
13. Sorensen PS, Lisby S, Grove R et al (2014) Safety and efficacy of ofatumumab in relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis: a phase 2 study. Neurology 82:573–581
14. Kausar F, Mustafa K, Sweis G et al (2009) Ocrelizumab: a step forward in the evolution of B-cell therapy. Expert Opin Biol Ther 9:889–895
15. Rigby W, Tony HP, Oelke K et al (2012) Safety and efficacy of ocrelizumab in patients with rheumatoid arthritis and an inadequate response to methotrexate: results of a forty-eight-week randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel-group phase III trial. Arthritis Rheum 64:350–359
16. Tak PP, Mease PJ, Genovese MC et al (2012) Safety and efficacy of ocrelizumab in patients with rheumatoid arthritis and an inadequate response to at least one tumor necrosis factor inhibitor: results of a forty-eight-week randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel-group phase III trial. Arthritis Rheum 64:360–370
17. Mysler EF, Spindler AJ, Guzman R et al (2013) Efficacy and safety of ocrelizumab in active proliferative lupus nephritis: results from a randomized, double-blind, phase III study. Arthritis Rheum 65:2368–2379
18. Kappos L, Li D, Calabresi PA et al (2011) Ocrelizumab in relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis: a phase 2, randomised, placebo-controlled, multicentre trial. Lancet 378:1779–1787
19. Liebman HA, Saleh MN, Bussel JB et al (2013) Low-dose anti-CD20 veltuzumab given intravenously or subcutaneously is active in relapsed immune thrombocytopenia: a phase I study. Br J Haematol 162:693–701
20. Goldenberg DM, Morschhauser F, Wegener WA (2010) Veltuzumab (humanized anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody): characterization, current clinical results, and future prospects. Leuk Lymphoma 51:747–755
21. Tedder TF (2009) CD19: a promising B cell target for rheumatoid arthritis. Nat Rev Rheumatol 5:572–577
22. Yazawa N, Hamaguchi Y, Poe JC, Tedder TF (2005) Immunotherapy using unconjugated CD19 monoclonal antibodies in animal models for B lymphocyte malignancies and autoimmune disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102: 15178–15183
23. Herbst R, Wang Y, Gallagher S et al (2010) B-cell depletion in vitro and in vivo with an

afucosylated anti-CD19 antibody. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 335:213–222

24. Deiss A, Brecht I, Haarmann A, Buttmann M (2013) Treating multiple sclerosis with monoclonal antibodies: a 2013 update. Expert Rev Neurother 13:313–335
25. Dorner T, Shock A, Smith KG (2012) CD22 and autoimmune disease. Int Rev Immunol 31: 363–378
26. Tedder TF, Poe JC, Haas KM (2005) CD22: a multifunctional receptor that regulates B lymphocyte survival and signal transduction. Adv Immunol 88:1–50
27. Carnahan J, Stein R, Qu Z et al (2007) Epratuzumab, a CD22-targeting recombinant humanized antibody with a different mode of action from rituximab. Mol Immunol 44: 1331–1341
28. Steinfeld SD, Tant L, Burmester GR et al (2006) Epratuzumab (humanised anti-CD22 antibody) in primary Sjogren's syndrome: an open-label phase I/II study. Arthritis Res Ther 8:R129
29. Wallace DJ, Kalunian K, Petri MA et al (2014) Efficacy and safety of epratuzumab in patients with moderate/severe active systemic lupus erythematosus: results from EMBLEM, a phase IIb, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre study. Ann Rheum Dis 73:183–190
30. Wallace DJ, Gordon C, Strand V et al (2013) Efficacy and safety of epratuzumab in patients with moderate/severe flaring systemic lupus erythematosus: results from two randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre studies (ALLEVIATE) and follow-up. Rheumatology (Oxford) 52:1313–1322
31. Avery DT, Kalled SL, Ellyard JI et al (2003) BAFF selectively enhances the survival of plasmablasts generated from human memory B cells. J Clin Invest 112:286–297
32. Baker KP, Edwards BM, Main SH et al (2003) Generation and characterization of LymphoStat-B, a human monoclonal antibody that antagonizes the bioactivities of B lymphocyte stimulator. Arthritis Rheum 48:3253–3265
33. Navarra SV, Guzman RM, Gallacher AE et al (2011) Efficacy and safety of belimumab in patients with active systemic lupus erythematosus: a randomised, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. Lancet 377:721–731
34. Stohl W, Merrill JT, McKay JD et al (2013) Efficacy and safety of belimumab in patients with rheumatoid arthritis: a phase II, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, dose-ranging Study. J Rheumatol 40:579–589
35. Vincent FB, Saulep-Easton D, Figgett WA, Fairfax KA, Mackay F (2013) The BAFF/APRIL system: emerging functions beyond B cell biology and autoimmunity. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev 24:203–215
36. Davidson A (2010) Targeting BAFF in autoimmunity. Curr Opin Immunol 22:732–739
37. Genovese MC, Lee E, Satterwhite J et al (2013) A phase 2 dose-ranging study of subcutaneous tabalumab for the treatment of patients with active rheumatoid arthritis and an inadequate response to methotrexate. Ann Rheum Dis 72:1453–1460
38. Stohl W (2014) Therapeutic targeting of the BAFF/APRIL axis in systemic lupus erythematosus. Expert Opin Ther Targets 18: 473–489
39. Gensicke H, Leppert D, Yaldizli O et al (2012) Monoclonal antibodies and recombinant immunoglobulins for the treatment of multiple sclerosis. CNS Drugs 26:11–37
40. Gatto B (2008) Atacicept, a homodimeric fusion protein for the potential treatment of diseases triggered by plasma cells. Curr Opin Investig Drugs 9:1216–1227
41. Schneider P (2005) The role of APRIL and BAFF in lymphocyte activation. Curr Opin Immunol 17:282–289
42. Dall'Era M, Chakravarty E, Wallace D et al (2007) Reduced B lymphocyte and immunoglobulin levels after atacicept treatment in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus: results of a multicenter, phase Ib, double-blind, placebo-controlled, dose-escalating trial. Arthritis Rheum 56:4142–4150
43. van Vollenhoven RF, Kinnman N, Vincent E, Wax S, Bathon J (2011) Atacicept in patients with rheumatoid arthritis and an inadequate response to methotrexate: results of a phase II, randomized, placebo-controlled trial. Arthritis Rheum 63:1782–1792
44. Genovese MC, Kinnman N, de La BG, Pena RC, Tak PP (2011) Atacicept in patients with rheumatoid arthritis and an inadequate response to tumor necrosis factor antagonist therapy: results of a phase II, randomized, placebo-controlled, dose-finding trial. Arthritis Rheum 63:1793–1803
45. Kappos L, Hartung HP, Freedman MS et al (2014) Atacicept in multiple sclerosis (ATAMS): a randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind, phase 2 trial. Lancet Neurol 13:353–363
46. Fernandez L, Salinas GF, Rocha C et al (2013) The TNF family member APRIL dampens collagen-induced arthritis. Ann Rheum Dis 72:1367–1374

47. Arthur JS, Ley SC (2013) Mitogen-activated protein kinases in innate immunity. Nat Rev Immunol 13:679–692
48. Hammaker D, Firestein GS (2010) "Go upstream, young man": lessons learned from the p38 saga. Ann Rheum Dis 69(Suppl 1):i77–i82
49. Hommes D, van den Blink B, Plasse T et al (2002) Inhibition of stress-activated MAP kinases induces clinical improvement in moderate to severe Crohn's disease. Gastroenterology 122:7–14
50. Dotan I, Rachmilewitz D, Schreiber S et al (2010) A randomised placebo-controlled multicentre trial of intravenous semapimod HCl for moderate to severe Crohn's disease. Gut 59:760–766
51. Salh B (2007) c-Jun N-terminal kinases as potential therapeutic targets. Expert Opin Ther Targets 11:1339–1353
52. Guma M, Firestein GS (2012) c-Jun N-terminal kinase in inflammation and rheumatic diseases. Open Rheumatol J 6:220–231
53. Han Z, Boyle DL, Chang L et al (2001) c-Jun N-terminal kinase is required for metalloproteinase expression and joint destruction in inflammatory arthritis. J Clin Invest 108:73–81
54. Hayden MS, Ghosh S (2011) NF-kappaB in immunobiology. Cell Res 21:223–244
55. Vallabhapurapu S, Karin M (2009) Regulation and function of NF-kappaB transcription factors in the immune system. Annu Rev Immunol 27:693–733
56. Tak PP, Firestein GS (2001) NF-kappaB: a key role in inflammatory diseases. J Clin Invest 107:7–11
57. Tak PP, Gerlag DM, Aupperle KR et al (2001) Inhibitor of nuclear factor kappaB kinase beta is a key regulator of synovial inflammation. Arthritis Rheum 44:1897–1907
58. Tas SW, Vervoordeldonk MJ, Hajji N, May MJ, Ghosh S, Tak PP (2006) Local treatment with the selective IkappaB kinase beta inhibitor NEMO-binding domain peptide ameliorates synovial inflammation. Arthritis Res Ther 8:R86
59. Kwak JH, Jung JK, Lee H (2011) Nuclear factor-kappa B inhibitors; a patent review (2006-2010). Expert Opin Ther Pat 21: 1897–1910
60. Sehnert B, Burkhardt H, Wessels JT et al (2013) NF-kappaB inhibitor targeted to activated endothelium demonstrates a critical role of endothelial NF-kappaB in immune-mediated diseases. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110: 16556–16561
61. Sun SC (2012) The noncanonical NF-kappaB pathway. Immunol Rev 246:125–140
62. Noort AR, van Zoest KP, Weijers EM et al (2014) NF-kappaB inducing kinase is a key regulator of inflammation-induced and tumor-associated angiogenesis. J Pathol 234:375
63. Li K, McGee LR, Fisher B et al (2013) Inhibiting NF-kappaB-inducing kinase (NIK): discovery, structure-based design, synthesis, structure-activity relationship, and co-crystal structures. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 23:1238–1244
64. Shuai K, Liu B (2003) Regulation of JAK-STAT signalling in the immune system. Nat Rev Immunol 3:900–911
65. Milici AJ, Kudlacz EM, Audoly L, Zwillich S, Changelian P (2008) Cartilage preservation by inhibition of Janus kinase 3 in two rodent models of rheumatoid arthritis. Arthritis Res Ther 10:R14
66. Changelian PS, Flanagan ME, Ball DJ et al (2003) Prevention of organ allograft rejection by a specific Janus kinase 3 inhibitor. Science 302:875–878
67. Fleischmann R, Kremer J, Cush J et al (2012) Placebo-controlled trial of tofacitinib monotherapy in rheumatoid arthritis. N Engl J Med 367:495–507
68. Burmester GR, Blanco R, Charles-Schoeman C et al (2013) Tofacitinib (CP-690,550) in combination with methotrexate in patients with active rheumatoid arthritis with an inadequate response to tumour necrosis factor inhibitors: a randomised phase 3 trial. Lancet 381:451–460
69. Sandborn WJ, Ghosh S, Panes J et al (2012) Tofacitinib, an oral Janus kinase inhibitor, in active ulcerative colitis. N Engl J Med 367:616–624
70. Boy MG, Wang C, Wilkinson BE et al (2009) Double-blind, placebo-controlled, dose-escalation study to evaluate the pharmacologic effect of CP-690,550 in patients with psoriasis. J Invest Dermatol 129:2299–2302
71. Smolen JS, Landewe R, Breedveld FC et al (2014) EULAR recommendations for the management of rheumatoid arthritis with synthetic and biological disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs: 2013 update. Ann Rheum Dis 73:492–509
72. Baeten DL, Kuchroo VK (2013) How Cytokine networks fuel inflammation: interleukin-17 and a tale of two autoimmune diseases. Nat Med 19:824–825
73. Yeremenko N, Paramarta JE, Baeten D (2014) The interleukin-23/interleukin-17 immune axis as a promising new target in the treatment of spondyloarthritis. Curr Opin Rheumatol 26:361–370
74. Byrne H, Conroy PJ, Whisstock JC, O'Kennedy RJ (2013) A tale of two specificities:

bispecific antibodies for therapeutic and diagnostic applications. Trends Biotechnol 31: 621–632

75. Rossi EA, Chang CH, Goldenberg DM (2014) Anti-CD22/CD20 Bispecific antibody with enhanced trogocytosis for treatment of Lupus. PLoS One 9:e98315
76. Grabiec AM, Reedquist KA (2013) The ascent of acetylation in the epigenetics of rheumatoid arthritis. Nat Rev Rheumatol 9:311–318
77. Vojinovic J, Damjanov N, D'Urzo C et al (2011) Safety and efficacy of an oral histone deacetylase inhibitor in systemic-onset juvenile idiopathic arthritis. Arthritis Rheum 63:1452–1458

Chapter 10

Application of Humanized Mice in Immunological Research

Wenwei Tu and Jian Zheng

Abstract

During the past decade, the development of humanized mouse models and their general applications in biomedical research greatly accelerated the translation of outcomes obtained from basic research into potential diagnostic and therapeutic strategies in clinic. In this chapter, we firstly present an overview on the history and current progress of diverse humanized mouse models and then focus on those equipped with reconstituted human immune system. The update advancement in the establishment of humanized immune system mice and their applications in the studies of the development of human immune system and the pathogenesis of multiple human immune-related diseases are intensively reviewed here, while the shortcoming and perspective of these potent tools are discussed as well. As a valuable bridge across the gap between bench work and clinical trial, progressive humanized mouse models will undoubtedly continue to play an indispensable role in the wide area of biomedical research.

Key words Humanized mice, Immunology, Immune regulation

1 Introduction

During the past century, the application of rodent animal models, especially diverse gene-engineered mouse models, provided indispensable platforms and numerous valuable information for the advances in experimental medicine and biological research. However, the gap between species is still the most challenging obstacle for translation of results from rodents to humans. With the great advancement of technology in molecular biology and gene modification, the attempt to establish "humanized" mouse models has made a leap since 1990s [1–3]. Nowadays, a wide variety of humanized mouse models have been generated and applied in nearly all fields of biomedical research [4]. In this chapter, we briefly review the history and classification of humanized mouse models and then summarize the current situation and recent advancement of their application in biomedical research, especially in the research of immune-related diseases.

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_10,

1.1 History and Classification of Humanized Mice

In general, the "humanized mice" are composed of three main classes: human gene-expressed transgenic mice (*human gene-transgenic mice*), which are modified by gene knock-in or replacement technology to express one or more human specific genes; humanized mice carrying human tissue, such as the liver (*humanized liver mice*) in which murine hepatocytes are completely or partly replaced by infused human-original hepatocytes; humanized mice equipped with functional human immune system (*humanized immune system mice*), which are established on immunodeficient mice by transplanting human immune organs or cells to reconstitute human immune system in mice and thus referred to special "humanized mice." In the following section, we briefly review the history and current advance of human gene-transgenic mice and humanized liver mice, and then focus on humanized immune system mice.

1.1.1 Human Gene-Transgenic Mice

Human gene-transgenic mice are closer to gene engineered mice rather than "humanized mice." Although the expressions of human gene or protein in transgenic mice provides the platform for studying in vivo role of specific human gene or molecule, the value of these data is limited in translational medicine due to the lack of human microenvironment and signal networks in these mice.

The most widely used human gene-transgenic mice are human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-transgenic mice [5]. These HLA-expressed transgenic mice represent for a useful tool in studying in vivo TCR-restricted immune responses and thus were adopted in the studies of immune-related diseases during the first 10 years of this century. For example, HLA-A0201-transgenic mice were used in inducing $CD8^+$ T cell-restricted type I diabetes (T1D) [6] and experimental autoimmune encephalitis (EAE) [7], while HLA-DRB1-transgenic mice were applied in establishing $CD4^+$ T cell-mediated EAE [8], system lupus erythematosus (SLE) [9] and rheumatoid arthritis (RA) models [10]. More recently, the respective role of HLA-DR2 and HLA-DQ8 in EAE [11] and autoimmune diabetes [12] was also studied through transgenic mice. Meanwhile, transgenic mice with distinct HLA subtype expression favor the study of HLA-related susceptibility on specific diseases, such as EAE [13], experimental autoimmune uveitis [14], arthritis [15–17], allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis-like pulmonary responses [18], and celiac disease [19]. Although the application of HLA-transgenic mice has been reduced due to the simplification of diseases into specialized immune responses, the combination of HLA-transgenic technology and reconstitution of human immune system in immunodeficient mice has re-assigned them vitality in biomedical research, which will be discussed in the next section.

Other transgenic mice used in immune-related studies included humanized α1KI mice [20], humanized θ-defensins mice [21], humanized toll-like receptor (TLR) 4/MD2 mice [22],

humanized type I interferon (IFN) mice [23], and humanized tumor necrosis factor (TNF) mice [24]. Similar to HLA-transgenic mice, their combination with humanized-immune system in mice will certainly strengthen their translational capability in the future.

1.1.2 Humanized Liver Mice

Humanized liver mice were established as early as 2001 and mainly applied in the study of drug metabolism, excretion, toxicity [25, 26], and the in vivo activity of enzymes such as human cytochrome P450 [27]. Moreover, the establishment of chimeric mice with humanized liver accelerated the progress of the studies in hepatitis virus B [28, 29], C [30, 31], D [32], and human cytomegalovirus infection [33], which had all been blocked by the lack of optimal animal models in "pre-humanized mice time." On the other side, Chen et al. tried to stabilize the function of cryopreserved human hepatocytes in immune competent mice through a novel system called "human ectopic artificial livers (HEALs)," which involved juxtacrine and paracrine signal in polymeric scaffolds. They claimed that mice transplanted with HEALs exhibited persistent normal liver function for weeks and thus provided a window for drug-related investigation [34]. However, the efficacy and value of humanized liver mice in the development of drug are still on debate due to the proposed side effects such as ongoing liver injury caused by transgenic and the influences on "normal metabolism" mediated by exogenous treatment [35, 36]. Apart from these, the potential application of humanized liver mice in immune-related research also deserves further exploration because liver also represents for a critical component of human immune system.

1.1.3 Humanized Immune System Mice

The development of humanized immune system mice could be divided into three phases corresponding to the establishment of *Prkdc*^{scid} (protein kinase, DNA activated, catalytic polypeptide; severe combined immunodeficiency) mutation in CB17 mice, the development of NOD (non-obese diabetic)-SCID mice, and the generation of immunodeficient mice homozygous for mutation at IL (interleukin)-2 receptor γ chain locus [2, 37]. Each breakthrough mentioned previously significantly improved the engraftment of human immune cells or pluripotent stem cells and stood as milestone on the way to "real humanized mice." The engraftment of multiple human immune components in these mice surpassed conventional human-gene knock-in in breaking the limited viewpoint of studying specific molecules under isolated environment. This unique advantage of humanized immune system mice favors their general application in immune-related studies, and opens a window for researchers to observe the interaction among human immune cells in vivo. In the following content, we focus on the characteristics and application of these mouse models and simply refer them as "humanized mice" if not otherwise specified.

Currently, IL2γc$^{-/-}$ mice established on NOD/scid and recombination activating gene 2 (Rag2)$^{-/-}$ Balb/C background were most widely used strains for the reconstitution of human immune system in vivo [38–40]. Recently, by using bone marrow, liver, thymus (BLT) co-transplantation, Lavender et al. engrafted high levels of multi-lineage hematopoiesis and organized lymphoid tissues in C57BL/6-Rag2$^{-/-}$γc$^{-/-}$CD47$^{-/-}$ triple-knockout mice. These humanized mice sustained human cell and tissue engraftment as long as 29 weeks post-transplantation without the development of chronic graft-versus-host diseases (GVHD), and thus represented for a new advancement in establishment of humanized mice [41].

1.2 Reconstitution of Immune System in Humanized Mice

The reconstitution of functional immune system is the key to evaluate the successful establishment of humanized mice. The graft used for reconstituting human immune system includes stem cells [42], BLT [41], and peripheral blood cells [43] according to specific objectives. Generally, stem cell and BLT transplantation exhibit advantage in establishing stable multi-lineage hematopoietic cells but might need additional treatment for improving development of specific cell subpopulations. On the contrary, humanized mice established by peripheral blood cells provide a ready platform for studying the functions of mature immune cells but the length of window appropriate for research is still limited by chronic GVHD and ongoing reduced engraftment. To maximize the potential of humanized mouse model, some progresses have been made recently. Firstly, pretreatment or gene-engineering of pluripotent stem cell exhibited satisfactory effects on improving engraftment of immune cells [38, 42, 44]. Secondly, human growth factors, cytokines [44, 45] or signal regulatory protein alpha (SIRPa)-expressed [46] immunodeficient mice demonstrated superior engraftment for specific immune cell subpopulations as well. In the following paragraphs, we briefly review current status of the reconstitution of specific immune cell subpopulations in humanized mice.

Lymphocytes are most important components of immune system and thus draw a major attention. Although human peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) transplantation led to rapid reconstitution of human lymphocytes in humanized mice, it was found that after initial activation and induction of antibody production, human T cell lymphocytes enter an unresponsiveness status due to loss of human professional antigen-presenting cells (APC), which could be reversed by adoptive transfer of human APC [47] or activating organ-resident myeloid dendritic cells (DC) through poly(I:C) treating [48]. Meanwhile, stem cell-transplanted humanized mice displayed diversified T cell repertoire, but the gap between HLA and murine major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules prohibited the induction of efficient T cell-mediated primary immune responses in vivo [49, 50].

To overcome these problems, HLA-expressed immunodeficient mice were generated and their efficacy has been confirmed [51]. Another concern origins from Th1 and Th17 immunocompetence in humanized mice [52], which supports the utility of their application as surrogate model in transplantation rejection and autoimmunity but might cause some unwanted immune responses against murine tissue antigen as well.

Distinct from their T cell companion, reconstitution of functional B lymphocytes is generally poor in humanized mice and needed to improve in the future although their primary repertoire were principally unaltered by the differences between mouse and human stromal environments [53] and their ability to produce antigen-specific antibody was partly developed [54].

As described previously, the reconstitution of myeloid cells not only guarantees immune system intact, but also determines the development and function of both adaptive and innate lymphocytes [47, 48, 55]. Unfortunately, monocytes and other myeloid cells usually exhibit immature phenotype and impaired function in humanized mice [56], which could be partly rescued by human colony stimulating factor (CSF)-1 [57]. However, the improvements in their survival, differentiation and even migration and residence [58] are still urgently required. Besides leukocytes, other blood components also play important roles during immune response and regulation. Recently, Hu et al. established the full reconstitution of human platelets in humanized mice after depletion of murine macrophage [59], which represents for an interesting attempt in constructing a more "humanized" circulation in mice.

In summary, the optimization of humanized mouse model is still on the way and the advances in molecular biology, cellular biology, and system biology will definitely bring new era to the development of this useful tool.

2 Applications of Humanized Mice

The applications of humanized mice cover nearly all fields of biomedical research and here we concentrate on immune-related studies, especially those aiming at the mechanisms and translational potentials of immune regulation and suppression. We also briefly summarize the benefits brought by these potent models in tumor, infectious diseases, and vaccine studies.

2.1 Development of Immune System

2.1.1 Lymphocytes

2.1.1.1 T Cells

Benefiting from humanized mouse model established by BLT or $CD34^+$ stem cell transplantation, research on the development of human T cells made a great progress in the past 5 years. In 2011, Choi et al. induced human $CD4^+CD8^+$ double-positive (DP) T cells, $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ single-positive (SP) T cells, $CD34^+CD38^{lo}CD1a^-$ (thymus setting-progenitors, TSP),

$CD34^+CD38^{lo}CD1a^-$ (early T lineage progenitors, ETP), and $CD34^+CD38^+CD1a^+$ pre-T cells in liver of humanized mice by intrahepatic injection of $CD34^+$ stem cells, establishing a wonderful platform for investigating human T cell development [60]. However, Joo et al. found that human T cells educated by murine MHC in mice without a human thymus differ from normal human T cells marked as higher expression of CD45RO and promyelocytic leukemia zinc figure protein (PLZF) regardless of similar development stages [61]. Correspondingly, Danner et al. generated HLA-DR4-expressed NOD-$Rag1^{-/-}\gamma c^{-/-}$ mice and demonstrated the critical role of HLA class II molecule for development of functional T cells by infusion with HLA-DR-matched human hematopoietic stem cells [62]. Meanwhile, the roles of IL-12 [63] and Notch [64] signals during the development of human $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells were evaluated by human hematopoietic stem cell-transplanted mice. Moreover, using a human stem cell factor, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) and IL-3-expressed NOD/scid-$\gamma c^{-/-}$ mice, Billerbeck et al. found the increased accumulation of human $CD4^+Foxp3^+$ T cells in blood, spleen, bone marrow and liver. Most importantly, these $CD4^+Foxp3^+$ T cells exhibited potent suppressive capability on T cell proliferation, which made a significant contribution to study of human regulatory T cells (Treg) development in vivo [65].

2.1.1.2 B Cells

As described previously, the development of human B cells in humanized mice is relatively weak compared to T cells. In 2011, Choi et al. evaluated the efficacy of Busulfan, a chemotherapeutic agent, and claimed that it could efficiently improve the reconstitution of human specific antibody-producing B cells, T cells, macrophage, and even DC from $CD34^+$ cord blood cells with less toxic effects [66]. On the other hand, Kim et al. found that co-transplantation of fetal bone tissue with fetal thymus could facilitate the development and reconstitution of human B cells from fetal liver-derived $CD34^+$ cells together with T cells [67].

2.1.1.3 Other Lymphocytes

Besides adaptive lymphocytes like T and B cells, innate lymphocytes development-related factors were also illustrated in humanized mouse model. As early as in 2008, Huntington and Di Santo made a periodic review on the application of humanized mice in the research of NK cell development [68]. In 2011, Pek et al. further confirmed the crucial role of IL-15 in NK cell development in bone marrow and liver with humanized mouse model [69]. We believe that more studies in the development of other innate lymphocytes such as NKT, γδ-T cells and innate-like T cells (ILT) will be reported in the near future.

2.1.2 Myeloid Cells and Other Cells

Myeloid cells are generally regarded as more fragile and difficult to survive in "strange environment", which made it attractive and subtle to improve reconstitution of these sensitive cells. The

addition of human original cytokines such as GM-CSF and IL-4 was generally accepted as an efficient way to improve DC maturation [70]. Similarly, the effects of macrophage colony-stimulating factor (M-CSF) and Fms-related tyrosine kinase (FLT)-3 ligand on promoting the development of macrophage [71], and $CD141^+$ and $CD1c^+$ DC [72] have also been confirmed in humanized mouse model respectively. Moreover, the development of megakaryocytes was replicated and used as index of dengue virus-infection in humanized mouse model recently [73], which also supported the multi-lineage hematopoietic cell development in humanized mice. Finally, transplantation of human stem cells from bone marrow of patients with bone marrow failure syndrome into humanized mice provided invaluable tools for evaluating novel gene-targeted therapy before clinical trial [74].

In summary, the reconstitution of diverse human immune cell populations from their pluripotent progenitors in immunodeficient mice has become a potent platform for investigating the development of human immune system while the next question is how to create a more "humanized" environment in mice for human cells [75].

2.2 Autoimmune Diseases

The advances in the study of autoimmune diseases in humanized mice, especially those T cell-mediated diseases, are always correlated with development of HLA-transgenic technology. In 1999, Bachmaier et al. generated a CD4–CD8– double-knockout mice transgenic for human CD4 and HLA-DQ6 to specifically reconstitute the human HLA-DQ6/CD4 arm in mice and established a dilated cardiomyopathy model [76], which was one of the earliest attempt for applying humanized mouse model in the study of autoimmune diseases. Using similar strategy, Eming et al. established a RA model in a HLA-DR4/human CD4/TCR combined transgenic mice with the stimulation of a RA-related human autogenic protein HCgp-39 in 2002 [77]. However, the lack of human immune system reconstitution in these models constrained their representative for the whole map occurring during autoimmune diseases. On the other side, Shultz et al. established T1D model in NOD/scid-$\gamma c^{-/-}$ mice by co-transplanting with human stem cell and islet cells [78, 79]. Importantly, this group pointed out the potential of HLA-transgenic immunodeficient mice in optimization of these models and provided some interesting preliminary data [78]. Soon after, inflammatory arthritis and type 2 diabetes models were established in HLA-transgenic humanized mice by David [80] and Schultz groups [81] respectively. As we mentioned previously, T cell-mediated immune responses were generally incomplete in humanized mice established on conventional immunodeficient mice, which usually led to insignificant clinical symptoms [82] and thus limited the application of these models. The involvement of HLA not only improves the efficacy of immune responses, but also provides a platform for study of the

relationship between HLA subtypes and specific diseases susceptibility. Nevertheless, the complexity and individuality of HLA phenotypes in healthy donors or patients still remain as the biggest challenge in rebuild of physiopathology process in relatively limited HLA-expressed humanized mice.

Due to relatively weak reconstitution of human B cells in humanized mice, the establishment of B cell or antibody-mediated autoimmune diseases seems to be more difficult than those T cell-mediated autoimmune diseases. Kerekov et al. rebuilt the clinical pathogenesis in humanized mice with cells transferred from SLE patients and evaluated the potential of B cell-targeted therapy with a chimeric molecule containing a monoclonal antibody against human inhibitory complement receptor type I coupled to a decapeptide that mimic DNA antigenicity [83]. In 2012, another group led by Duffield recapitulated systemic vasculitis in humanized mice by treating them with anti-proteinase-3 IgG isolated from patients [84]. With the improvement in reconstitution of multiple components of human immune system in humanized mice, it is predictable that the induction of diverse human B cell-mediated autoimmune diseases in vivo will be accessible soon.

2.3 Transplantation-Related Diseases

Application of humanized mice models in transplantation-related diseases arises as early as the birth of humanized mice but the process is so tortuous till now due to chronic exogenous rejection and ongoing decrease of immune cells [85]. In 2001, Coates established an allogeneic skin rejection model in humanized NOD/scid chimeric mice and examined the therapeutic effects of human myeloid DC transduced with an adenoviral IL-10 gene [86]. In 2006, Marcheix et al. rebuilt a human chronic vascular rejection model in humanized SCID/beige mice with human mesenteric arterial grafts [87]. In 2012, Yi et al. determined the suppressive capacity of in vitro-expanded human $CD4^+$ Treg on porcine islet xenograft rejection in humanized mouse model and found the crucial role of IL-10 in Treg-mediated protection [88]. In above three studies, investigators planted solid grafts into immunodeficient mice before reconstitution of human immune system and induced rejection by infusion of mature human cells. However, the long-term outcome of these models is still not clear.

In order to further mimic clinical situation, human $CD34^+$ stem cells were applied in establishing humanized mice. Using this strategy, three independent groups reported allogeneic islet transplantation [89], xenogeneic islet rejection [90], and xenogeneic skin rejection [91] models during 2010–2012. Unfortunately, insufficient development of immune cell populations in these humanized mice still stayed as an obstacle and even led to the failure of rejection [89]. To solve this problem, some other groups tried to develop a more “mature” human immune system in humanized mice by transplanting human peripheral blood cells.

In 2013, our group reported a novel human allogenic GVHD model established on humanized mice reconstituted with human PBMC [92]. This model reproduced typical clinical process of acute GVHD occurring during allogeneic bone marrow transplantation without apparent interruption of exogenous reactivity. Using this model, we evaluated the protective effects of human $CD8^+$ Treg induced ex vivo by allogeneic CD40-activated B cells and found that human $CD8^+$ Treg could inhibit GVHD and induce long-term tolerance without compromising general immunity and graft-versus-tumor (GVT) activity [92]. The potent regulatory activity of the $CD8^+$ Treg was mainly mediated by the expression of cytotoxic lymphocyte antigen (CTLA)-4 on cell surface, while their alloantigen-specificity and the ability to induce the long-term tolerance favor their clinical application. More importantly, this strategy might reduce clinical dependence on limited HLA-match donors and largely improve the survival chance of millions of patients who are waiting for bone marrow transplantation.

Humanized mouse model undoubtedly brings new hope for transplantation research, but we also need to keep in mind that a lot of questions are still waiting to be answered on this way. As emphasized by Brehm and Shultz, keys to successful humanized mouse model included available immunodeficient mouse strains, the choice of tissue to transplant and the specific human immune cell population that can be grafted [85].

2.4 Other Inflammatory Disease

Besides autoimmune diseases and transplantation-related diseases, humanized mice models are also useful to study some other inflammatory diseases.

In 2002, Hammad et al. compared the Th2 allergic inflammation in the lung of humanized mice reconstituted with PBMC. To induce inflammatory reaction, DCs from home dust mite (HDM)-allergic patients or healthy donors were injected intratracheally and mice were then repeated exposed to aerosol of HDM. In contrast to IFN-γ secretion induced in mice receiving normal DCs, those injected with DCs from patients induced IL-4 and IL-5 production accompanied with the increase of IgE production, which represents characteristics of Th2 response [93]. In 2003, Firouzi et al. used a humanized SCID mouse model confirmed the crucial role of T cells during multiple sclerosis-associated retrovirus particle-caused brain hemorrhage [94], while Sheu et al. found that circulating IgM played the main pathogenic role in skeletal muscle ischemia-reperfusion injury based on their research on hPBL-SCID mice in 2009 [95]. In the meantime, Unsinger et al. established a sepsis model in humanized mice elevated human pro- and anti-inflammatory cytokines as well as a dramatic increase in human T and B cell apoptosis, which was generally found in patients with sepsis [96]. More recently, Vudattu et al. determined the adverse effects of anti-CTLA-4 antibody (ipilimumab) including hepatitis,

lymphadenopathy, and other inflammatory sequelae in humanized mouse model [97].

In addition to immunopathology study, humanized mouse model was also applied in studying the underlying mechanisms of injury repair. By plating retroviral vector-modified human skin on nude mice and adding human keratinocyte growth factor (KGF) to artificial wound in the skin, the re-epithelialization was significantly accelerated [98]. Although this model could not be described as "real" humanized mice because no human immune system was involved in it, this attempt initiated an innovative application of humanized mice.

Compared to satisfactory reconstitution of circulating blood cells, the successful reconstitution of mucosa immunity in humanized mice is still absent till now. Mucosa, especially respiratory and digestive tract surface, plays indispensable role in protection and immune regulation. However, the residence and exchange of immune components in the locus are still difficult to rebuild in animal models because the physiological dynamics remains largely unknown [99]. Another reason is due to their complex gnotobiotic microenvironment. To meet this requirement, Gordon's group firstly established a humanized gnotobiotic mice by transplanting fresh or frozen adult human fecal microbial communities into germ-free C57BL/6J mice and then investigated the effect of diet on human gut microbiome [100]. Similarly, Kashyap et al. determined the relationship among diet, gastrointestinal transit and gut microbiota using the same model [101], while Macrobal et al. further compared the difference between gnotobiotic humanized mice and conventional mice urine and fecal metabolomics profiles [102]. Recently, another exciting breakthrough in immune reconstitution of the gastrointestinal tract was reported by Nochi's group. They developed human gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT) in mouse cryptopatches and succeeded in generating functional intestinal immunity marked by human IgA secretion in a BLT-NOD/scid mice model [103]. The combination of this humanized mouse model and gnotobiotics transfer will greatly improve our understanding on intestinal physiology and immune regulation.

2.5 Other Applications

2.5.1 Tumor

The occurrence of humanized mouse model provided a perfect platform for evaluating immunotherapy against tumor. The earliest attempts of inducing antitumor immune responses in humanized mice focused on the generation of specific antibody but the outcome varied due to unstable humanization of models [104, 105]. In the new century, researchers started to pay more attention on developing complete tumorigenicity, especially metastasis process and its relationship with stromal cells, in immunocompetent humanized mice, and made some significant advances in multiple fields like human prostate cancer [106], mixed-lineage leukemia

(MLL) [107], human primary squamous cell carcinoma [108], and human T-cell leukemia virus (HTLV)-induced T cell leukemia [109]. Based on these progresses, some novel immunotherapy strategies were evaluated on humanized mouse models, such as inhibitory receptor Ig-like transcript (ILT)-3 depletion or blockade in melanoma [110] and IL-15-enhanced NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity against human breast cancer [111]. Recently, our group reported a novel application of pamidronate, a phosphoantigen generally used to treat osteoporosis, in treating Epstein-Barr virus (EBV)-induced B cell lymphoproliferative disease in humanized mouse model reconstituted with human PBMC [112]. This "new application of an old drug" was mediated by expanding and activating human Vγ9Vδ2-T cells, a small cell population of human lymphocytes, which might inspire further exploration of currently available resources. More importantly, the established of donor- and tissue-specific humanized mouse tumor models will undoubtedly play an indispensable role during the development of individual therapies in the future [113].

2.5.2 Infectious Disease

2.5.2.1 HIV

The development of humanized mice represents a milestone in the history of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) study. The new generation of humanized mice not only improved our understanding on transmission, latency, and pathogenesis of HIV [114–119], but also provided unprecedented platform for antiviral study. Besides further exploration of efficient virus-specific neutralization antibodies [120–125] and conventional antiretroviral or antimicrobial therapies [126–128] in these models, the efficacy of vectored immunoprophylaxis [129] and CCR5-targetd treatment [130–132] in preventing HIV transmission were evaluated as well. Meanwhile, the crucial roles of HIV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells [133, 134] and plasmacytoid DC (pDC) [135, 136] in the replication of virus and activation of immune responses, and their potentials in targeted therapy were also investigated. Other novel immunotherapy assays performed in humanized mouse model included blockade of programmed cell death (PD)-1 receptor [137, 138], engineering HIV-resistant T cells from short-hairpin RNA (shRNA)-expressing hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells [139], and inhibition of HIV replication by a chimera containing an RNA aptamer with high binding affinity to the HIV envelop protein gp120 and virus neutralization properties and a small interfering RNA (siRNA) triggering sequence-specific degradation of HIV RNAs [140]. Moreover, a preliminary study on mechanisms underlying viral controlling in HLA-B*57 elite controller or suppressor (ES) was completed in humanized BLT mice and demonstrated that elite suppressors are capable of controlling HIV-1 due to the possession of unique host factors rather than infection with defective virus in vivo [141]. Nowadays, we could even make in-depth study on the cell dynamics in HIV-infected humanized mice model

with the help of intravital microscopy [142]. Therefore, it is countable that the future molecular biology will bring more surprise to the efforts of gene therapy against HIV [143].

2.5.2.2 Other Infectious Disease

Except for application in HIV-related studies, humanized mouse model also brought span-new opportunities for other human infectious diseases [144], especially those blood-borne pathogen-caused diseases such as dengue virus infection [145–149], EBV infection [150–155], HCMV infection [156], HTLV infection [157], and malaria parasite infection [158]. On the other hand, humanized mouse models for Leishmaniasis [159], Salmonella Typhi infection [160, 161], herpesvirus infection [162, 163], Mycobacteria infection [164, 165], and group B Streptococcus (GBS) infection [166] have been established. These efforts fill in the lacks of suitable animal models for those human-specific pathogen-caused diseases and push forward the correlating investigations on development of prevention and treatment, although some technological obstacles like the replication of natural infection and transmission routes are still needed to resolved.

In 2011, our group used PBMC-transplanted humanized mouse model to evaluate a novel therapeutic strategy by targeting the host rather than the virus for treating influenza virus infection. We demonstrated that aminobisphosphonate can control influenza disease through boosting human Vγ9Vδ2-T cell immunity and this beneficial effect is active against viruses of varying subtypes and virulence [43]. Nevertheless, differences in the characteristics of molecules, tissues, and organs between human and mice might impair efficiency of pathogen infection and initiation of specific immune responses [167]. In 2005, Lassning et al. increased the susceptibility of mice on human coronavirus by crossing aminopeptidase N (APN), the receptor for human coronavirus (hCoV)-229E, and transgenic mice into signal transducer and activator of transcription (Stat)-1 null mice [168]. This work, together with HLA- and human cytokines/growth factor-transgenic technology [169], provided successful examples for future studying human infectious agents in humanized mice. In the next stage, improvement of versatility and variability of human immune system in humanized mouse model and application of gene-modified pathogens [170] will definitely enhance translational efficiency of these models.

2.5.3 Vaccine

The usage of humanized mice in the development of vaccines targeting human diseases including EBV, HIV-1, dengue virus, influenza virus, severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) corona virus, and carcino-embryonic antigen (CEA) has obtained outstanding achievements during the past decade, while the introduction of HLA transgenic immunodeficient mice further accelerated the advancement in this field [171–173]. With the improvement of immune cell population reconstitution, more and more novel vaccination protocol will be carried out in humanized mice.

3 Perspective

Compared to conventional mice and non-human primate model, humanized mice exhibit great advantage in translational potential, reproductive capacity and data repeatability, economical and ethical concerns. The increasing applications of diverse humanized mice models in biomedical research during the past two decades significantly improved our understanding on human physiological and pathological, especially immunological process at systemic, cellular, and molecular levels. This further accelerated the development of current translational medicine significantly. Nevertheless, there are several major caveats on their development remain to be dealt with, including complete replacement of murine MHC with diversified HLA molecules and efficient methodology to express corresponding growth factors and cytokines at specific time and organs [174]; how to prolong the maintenance of human engraftment, promote the development of myeloid cells and increase relatively weak quantity and quality of immune cells [175]; and the limited development of lymph nodes, inter-organ traffic of immune cells, and the reconstitution of red blood cells and granulocytes [176]. In another word, the most important issue is to find the convenient and cost-effective ways to construct appropriate human-like microenvironment including physical structure, intercellular contact and molecular signals transfer in humanized mice. It is foreseeable that knowledge exchange in the age of big data will bring an even more bright future to this advancing tool than ever.

Acknowledgment

This work was supported in part by the Area of Excellence program supported by the University Grants Committee of the Hong Kong SAR, China (AoE/M-12/06 and AoE/M-06/08).

References

1. Peault B, Weissman I, Baum C (1993) Analysis of candidate human blood stem cells in "humanized" immune-deficiency SCID mice. Leukemia 7(Suppl 2):S98–S101
2. Shultz LD, Ishikawa F, Greiner DL (2007) Humanized mice in translational biomedical research. Nat Rev Immunol 7(2):118–130
3. von Bubnoff A (2008) Mighty mice. Scientists are still improving the humanized mouse model but are optimistic about its future role in evaluating AIDS vaccine candidates. IAVI Rep 12(5):1, 8–11
4. Shultz LD et al (2011) Humanized mice as a preclinical tool for infectious disease and biomedical research. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1245:50–54
5. Taneja V, David CS (1998) HLA transgenic mice as humanized mouse models of disease and immunity. J Clin Invest 101(5): 921–926
6. Niens M et al (2011) Prevention of "Humanized" diabetogenic CD8 T-cell responses in HLA-transgenic NOD mice by a multipeptide coupled-cell approach. Diabetes 60(4):1229–1236
7. Mars LT et al (2007) CD8 T cell responses to myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein-derived peptides in humanized HLA-A*0201-

transgenic mice. J Immunol 179(8): 5090–5098

8. Quandt JA et al (2004) Unique clinical and pathological features in HLA-DRB1*0401-restricted MBP 111-129-specific humanized TCR transgenic mice. J Exp Med 200(2): 223–234
9. Dudek NL et al (2007) T cell epitopes of the La/SSB autoantigen in humanized transgenic mice expressing the HLA class II haplotype DRB1*0301/DQB1*0201. Arthritis Rheum 56(10):3387–3398
10. Snir O et al (2011) Identification and functional characterization of T cells reactive to citrullinated vimentin in HLA-DRB1*0401-positive humanized mice and rheumatoid arthritis patients. Arthritis Rheum 63(10): 2873–2883
11. Greene MT et al (2008) Differential induction of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by myelin basic protein molecular mimics in mice humanized for HLA-DR2 and an MBP(85-99)-specific T cell receptor. J Autoimmun 31(4):399–407
12. Tai N et al (2011) IL-10-conditioned dendritic cells prevent autoimmune diabetes in NOD and humanized HLA-DQ8/RIP-B7.1 mice. Clin Immunol 139(3):336–349
13. Kaushansky N et al (2009) HLA-DQB1*0602 determines disease susceptibility in a new "humanized" multiple sclerosis model in HLA-DR15 (DRB1*1501;DQB1*0602) transgenic mice. J Immunol 183(5): 3531–3541
14. Pennesi G et al (2003) A humanized model of experimental autoimmune uveitis in HLA class II transgenic mice. J Clin Invest 111(8):1171–1180
15. Behrens M et al (2011) Trans heterodimer between two non-arthritis-associated HLA alleles can predispose to arthritis in humanized mice. Arthritis Rheum 63(6):1552–1561
16. Behrens M et al (2010) Mechanism by which HLA-DR4 regulates sex-bias of arthritis in humanized mice. J Autoimmun 35(1):1–9
17. Szanto S et al (2004) Induction of arthritis in HLA-DR4-humanized and HLA-DQ8-humanized mice by human cartilage proteoglycan aggrecan but only in the presence of an appropriate (non-MHC) genetic background. Arthritis Rheum 50(6):1984–1995
18. Koehm S et al (2007) HLA-DRB1 alleles control allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis-like pulmonary responses in humanized transgenic mice. J Allergy Clin Immunol 120(3):570–577
19. de Kauwe AL et al (2009) Resistance to celiac disease in humanized HLA-DR3-DQ2-transgenic mice expressing specific anti-gliadin CD4+ T cells. J Immunol 182(12): 7440–7450
20. Sanchez D et al (2011) Similarity of fine specificity of IgA anti-gliadin antibodies between patients with celiac disease and humanized alpha1KI mice. J Agric Food Chem 59(7): 3092–3100
21. Welkos S et al (2011) Humanized theta-defensins (retrocyclins) enhance macrophage performance and protect mice from experimental anthrax infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 55(9):4238–4250
22. Hajjar AM et al (2012) Humanized TLR4/MD-2 mice reveal LPS recognition differentially impacts susceptibility to *Yersinia pestis* and *Salmonella enterica*. PLoS Pathog 8(10): e1002963
23. Harari D et al (2014) Bridging the species divide: transgenic mice humanized for type-I interferon response. PLoS One 9(1):e84259
24. Winsauer C et al (2014) Cellular sources of pathogenic and protective TNF and experimental strategies based on utilization of TNF humanized mice. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev 25(2):115–123
25. Strom SC, Davila J, Grompe M (2010) Chimeric mice with humanized liver: tools for the study of drug metabolism, excretion, and toxicity. Methods Mol Biol 640:491–509
26. Nishimura T et al (2013) Using chimeric mice with humanized livers to predict human drug metabolism and a drug-drug interaction. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 344(2):388–396
27. Kakuni M et al (2014) Chimeric mice with humanized livers: a unique tool for in vivo and in vitro enzyme induction studies. Int J Mol Sci 15(1):58–74
28. Belloni L et al (2012) IFN-alpha inhibits HBV transcription and replication in cell culture and in humanized mice by targeting the epigenetic regulation of the nuclear cccDNA minichromosome. J Clin Invest 122(2): 529–537
29. Volz T et al (2013) The entry inhibitor Myrcludex-B efficiently blocks intrahepatic virus spreading in humanized mice previously infected with hepatitis B virus. J Hepatol 58(5):861–867
30. Dorner M, Ploss A (2011) Deconstructing hepatitis C virus infection in humanized mice. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1245:59–62
31. von Schaewen M, Ding Q, Ploss A (2014) Visualizing hepatitis C virus infection in humanized mice. J Immunol Methods 410: 50–59
32. Giersch K et al (2014) Persistent hepatitis D virus mono-infection in humanized mice is

efficiently converted by hepatitis B virus to a productive co-infection. J Hepatol 60(3): 538–544

33. Kawahara T et al (2013) Human cytomegalovirus infection in humanized liver chimeric mice. Hepatol Res 43(6):679–684
34. Chen AA et al (2011) Humanized mice with ectopic artificial liver tissues. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108(29):11842–11847
35. Bissig KD, Grompe M (2013) Response to "Can 'humanized' mice improve drug development in the 21st century?". Trends Pharmacol Sci 34(8):425
36. Peltz G (2013) Can 'humanized' mice improve drug development in the 21st century? Trends Pharmacol Sci 34(5):255–260
37. Pearson T, Greiner DL, Shultz LD (2008) Creation of "humanized" mice to study human immunity. Curr Protoc Immunol Chapter 15:p. Unit 15 21
38. Lang J et al (2011) Generation of hematopoietic humanized mice in the newborn BALB/c-Rag2null Il2rgammanull mouse model: a multivariable optimization approach. Clin Immunol 140(1):102–116
39. Sanchez FM et al (2013) Production and characterization of humanized Rag2-/-gammac -/- mice. Methods Mol Biol 1031:19–26
40. Brehm MA et al (2010) Parameters for establishing humanized mouse models to study human immunity: analysis of human hematopoietic stem cell engraftment in three immunodeficient strains of mice bearing the IL2rgamma(null) mutation. Clin Immunol 135(1):84–98
41. Lavender KJ et al (2014) Production of bone marrow, liver, thymus (BLT) humanized mice on the C57BL/6 Rag2(-/-)gammac(-/-) CD47(-/-) background. J Immunol Methods 407:127–134
42. Bernard D, Peakman M, Hayday AC (2008) Establishing humanized mice using stem cells: maximizing the potential. Clin Exp Immunol 152(3):406–414
43. Tu W et al (2011) The aminobisphosphonate pamidronate controls influenza pathogenesis by expanding a gammadelta T cell population in humanized mice. J Exp Med 208(7): 1511–1522
44. Drake AC, Chen Q, Chen J (2012) Engineering humanized mice for improved hematopoietic reconstitution. Cell Mol Immunol 9(3):215–224
45. Chen Q, Khoury M, Chen J (2009) Expression of human cytokines dramatically improves reconstitution of specific human-blood lineage cells in humanized mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106(51):21783–21788
46. Strowig T et al (2011) Transgenic expression of human signal regulatory protein alpha in Rag2-/-gamma(c)-/- mice improves engraftment of human hematopoietic cells in humanized mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108(32):13218–13223
47. Jarman ER et al (2000) Deficient cytokine response of human allergen-specific T lymphocytes from humanized SCID mice and reconstitution by professional antigen-presenting cells. J Allergy Clin Immunol 105(5):967–974
48. Vuckovic S et al (2008) Compartmentalization of allogeneic T-cell responses in the bone marrow and spleen of humanized NOD/SCID mice containing activated human resident myeloid dendritic cells. Exp Hematol 36(11):1496–1506
49. Marodon G et al (2009) High diversity of the immune repertoire in humanized NOD.SCID.gamma c-/- mice. Eur J Immunol 39(8):2136–2145
50. Pham HP et al (2012) Half of the T-cell repertoire combinatorial diversity is genetically determined in humans and humanized mice. Eur J Immunol 42(3):760–770
51. Shultz LD et al (2010) Generation of functional human T-cell subsets with HLA-restricted immune responses in HLA class I expressing NOD/SCID/IL2r gamma(null) humanized mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107(29):13022–13027
52. Rajesh D et al (2010) Th1 and Th17 immunocompetence in humanized NOD/SCID/IL2rgammanull mice. Hum Immunol 71(6): 551–559
53. Ippolito GC et al (2012) Antibody repertoires in humanized NOD-scid-IL2Rgamma(null) mice and human B cells reveals human-like diversification and tolerance checkpoints in the mouse. PLoS One 7(4):e35497
54. Watanabe Y et al (2009) The analysis of the functions of human B and T cells in humanized NOD/shi-scid/gammac(null) (NOG) mice (hu-HSC NOG mice). Int Immunol 21(7):843–858
55. Lockridge JL et al (2011) Analysis of the CD1 antigen presenting system in humanized SCID mice. PLoS One 6(6):e21701
56. Gille C et al (2012) Monocytes derived from humanized neonatal NOD/SCID/IL2Rgamma(null) mice are phenotypically immature and exhibit functional impairments. Hum Immunol 73(4):346–354
57. Rathinam C et al (2011) Efficient differentiation and function of human macrophages in humanized CSF-1 mice. Blood 118(11): 3119–3128

58. Kim SS et al (2012) Humanized mice for studying human leukocyte integrins in vivo. Methods Mol Biol 757:509–521
59. Hu Z, Yang YG (2012) Full reconstitution of human platelets in humanized mice after macrophage depletion. Blood 120(8):1713–1716
60. Choi B et al (2011) Human T cell development in the liver of humanized NOD/SCID/IL-2Rgamma(null)(NSG) mice generated by intrahepatic injection of CD34(+) human (h) cord blood (CB) cells. Clin Immunol 139(3):321–335
61. Joo SY et al (2012) Systemic human T cell developmental processes in humanized mice cotransplanted with human fetal thymus/liver tissue and hematopoietic stem cells. Transplantation 94(11):1095–1102
62. Danner R et al (2011) Expression of HLA class II molecules in humanized NOD.Rag1KO.IL2RgcKO mice is critical for development and function of human T and B cells. PLoS One 6(5):e19826
63. Billerbeck E et al (2014) Insufficient interleukin-12 signalling favours differentiation of human CD4(+) and CD8(+) T cells into GATA-3(+) and GATA-3(+) T-bet(+) subsets in humanized mice. Immunology 143(2):202–218
64. Haji Y et al (2014) Activation of Notch1 promotes development of human CD8(+) single positive T cells in humanized mice. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 447(2):346–351
65. Billerbeck E et al (2011) Development of human CD4+FoxP3+ regulatory T cells in human stem cell factor-, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor-, and interleukin-3-expressing NOD-SCID IL2Rgamma(null) humanized mice. Blood 117(11):3076–3086
66. Choi B et al (2011) Human B cell development and antibody production in humanized NOD/SCID/IL-2Rgamma(null) (NSG) mice conditioned by busulfan. J Clin Immunol 31(2):253–264
67. Kim M et al (2011) Co-transplantation of fetal bone tissue facilitates the development and reconstitution in human B cells in humanized NOD/SCID/IL-2Rgammanull (NSG) mice. J Clin Immunol 31(4):699–709
68. Huntington ND, Di Santo JP (2008) Humanized immune system (HIS) mice as a tool to study human NK cell development. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 324:109–124
69. Pek EA et al (2011) Characterization and IL-15 dependence of NK cells in humanized mice. Immunobiology 216(1–2):218–224
70. Chen Q et al (2012) GM-CSF and IL-4 stimulate antibody responses in humanized mice by promoting T, B, and dendritic cell maturation. J Immunol 189(11):5223–5229
71. Li Y et al (2013) Induction of functional human macrophages from bone marrow promonocytes by M-CSF in humanized mice. J Immunol 191(6):3192–3199
72. Ding Y et al (2014) FLT3-ligand treatment of humanized mice results in the generation of large numbers of CD141+ and CD1c+ dendritic cells in vivo. J Immunol 192(4):1982–1989
73. Sridharan A et al (2013) Inhibition of megakaryocyte development in the bone marrow underlies dengue virus-induced thrombocytopenia in humanized mice. J Virol 87(21):11648–11658
74. Frecha C et al (2012) A novel lentiviral vector targets gene transfer into human hematopoietic stem cells in marrow from patients with bone marrow failure syndrome and in vivo in humanized mice. Blood 119(5):1139–1150
75. Tanner A et al (2014) Humanized mice as a model to study human hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Stem Cells Dev 23(1):76–82
76. Bachmaier K et al (1999) Generation of humanized mice susceptible to peptide-induced inflammatory heart disease. Circulation 99(14):1885–1891
77. Eming R et al (2002) Humanized mice as a model for rheumatoid arthritis. Arthritis Res 4(Suppl 3):S133–S140
78. Shultz LD et al (2007) Humanized NOD/LtSz-scid IL2 receptor common gamma chain knockout mice in diabetes research. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1103:77–89
79. King M et al (2008) Humanized mice for the study of type 1 diabetes and beta cell function. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1150:46–53
80. Taneja V, David CS (2010) Role of HLA class II genes in susceptibility/resistance to inflammatory arthritis: studies with humanized mice. Immunol Rev 233(1):62–78
81. Greiner DL et al (2011) Humanized mice for the study of type 1 and type 2 diabetes. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1245:55–58
82. Zayoud M et al (2013) Subclinical CNS inflammation as response to a myelin antigen in humanized mice. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol 8(4):1037–1047
83. Kerekov N et al (2011) Humanized SCID mice models of SLE. Curr Pharm Des 17(13):1261–1266
84. Little MA et al (2012) Anti-proteinase 3 anti-neutrophil cytoplasm autoantibodies recapitulate systemic vasculitis in mice with a humanized immune system. PLoS One 7(1), e28626

85. Brehm MA, Shultz LD (2012) Human allograft rejection in humanized mice: a historical perspective. Cell Mol Immunol 9(3):225–231
86. Coates PT et al (2001) Human myeloid dendritic cells transduced with an adenoviral interleukin-10 gene construct inhibit human skin graft rejection in humanized NOD-scid chimeric mice. Gene Ther 8(16):1224–1233
87. Marcheix B et al (2006) Multiple human mesenteric arterial grafts from the same donor to study human chronic vascular rejection in humanized SCID/beige mice. J Heart Lung Transplant 25(6):675–682
88. Yi S et al (2012) Adoptive transfer with in vitro expanded human regulatory T cells protects against porcine islet xenograft rejection via interleukin-10 in humanized mice. Diabetes 61(5):1180–1191
89. Jacobson S et al (2010) Alloreactivity but failure to reject human islet transplants by humanized Balb/c/Rag2gc mice. Scand J Immunol 71(2):83–90
90. Jung KC et al (2011) In situ induction of dendritic cell-based T cell tolerance in humanized mice and nonhuman primates. J Exp Med 208(12):2477–2488
91. Waldron-Lynch F et al (2012) Analysis of human biologics with a mouse skin transplant model in humanized mice. Am J Transplant 12(10):2652–2662
92. Zheng J et al (2013) Human CD8+ regulatory T cells inhibit GVHD and preserve general immunity in humanized mice. Sci Transl Med 5(168):168ra9
93. Hammad H et al (2002) Monocyte-derived dendritic cells induce a house dust mite-specific Th2 allergic inflammation in the lung of humanized SCID mice: involvement of CCR7. J Immunol 169(3):1524–1534
94. Firouzi R et al (2003) Multiple sclerosis-associated retrovirus particles cause T lymphocyte-dependent death with brain hemorrhage in humanized SCID mice model. J Neurovirol 9(1):79–93
95. Sheu EG et al (2009) Restoration of skeletal muscle ischemia-reperfusion injury in humanized immunodeficient mice. Surgery 146(2): 340–346
96. Unsinger J et al (2009) Sepsis-induced human lymphocyte apoptosis and cytokine production in "humanized" mice. J Leukoc Biol 86(2):219–227
97. Vudattu NK et al (2014) Humanized mice as a model for aberrant responses in human T cell immunotherapy. J Immunol 193(2): 587–596
98. Escamez MJ et al (2004) An in vivo model of wound healing in genetically modified skin-humanized mice. J Invest Dermatol 123(6):1182–1191
99. Wahl A, Victor Garcia J (2014) The use of BLT humanized mice to investigate the immune reconstitution of the gastrointestinal tract. J Immunol Methods 410:28–33
100. Turnbaugh PJ et al (2009) The effect of diet on the human gut microbiome: a metagenomic analysis in humanized gnotobiotic mice. Sci Transl Med 1(6):6ra14
101. Kashyap PC et al (2013) Complex interactions among diet, gastrointestinal transit, and gut microbiota in humanized mice. Gastroenterology 144(5):967–977
102. Marcobal A et al (2013) A metabolomic view of how the human gut microbiota impacts the host metabolome using humanized and gnotobiotic mice. ISME J 7(10):1933–1943
103. Nochi T et al (2013) Cryptopatches are essential for the development of human GALT. Cell Rep 3(6):1874–1884
104. Chen L et al (1996) Immunoresponses of humanized SCID mice to human lung cancer cells. Chin Med Sci J 11(2):110–112
105. Lando PA et al (1995) Tumor-reactive superantigens suppress tumor growth in humanized SCID mice. Int J Cancer 62(4): 466–471
106. Yonou H et al (2001) Establishment of a novel species- and tissue-specific metastasis model of human prostate cancer in humanized non-obese diabetic/severe combined immunodeficient mice engrafted with human adult lung and bone. Cancer Res 61(5):2177–2182
107. Moriya K et al (2012) Development of a multi-step leukemogenesis model of MLL-rearranged leukemia using humanized mice. PLoS One 7(6):e37892
108. Patel GK et al (2012) A humanized stromal bed is required for engraftment of isolated human primary squamous cell carcinoma cells in immunocompromised mice. J Invest Dermatol 132(2):284–290
109. Tezuka K et al (2014) An animal model of adult T-cell leukemia: humanized mice with HTLV-1-specific immunity. Blood 123(3): 346–355
110. Suciu-Foca N et al (2007) Soluble Ig-like transcript 3 inhibits tumor allograft rejection in humanized SCID mice and T cell responses in cancer patients. J Immunol 178(11): 7432–7441
111. Wege AK et al (2011) Humanized tumor mice--a new model to study and manipulate

the immune response in advanced cancer therapy. Int J Cancer 129(9):2194–2206

112. Xiang Z et al (2014) Targeted activation of human Vgamma9Vdelta2-T cells controls Epstein-Barr virus-induced B cell lymphoproliferative disease. Cancer Cell 26(4):565–576
113. Zhou Q et al (2014) Humanized NOD-SCID IL2rg-/- mice as a preclinical model for cancer research and its potential use for individualized cancer therapies. Cancer Lett 344(1):13–19
114. Berges BK, Rowan MR (2011) The utility of the new generation of humanized mice to study HIV-1 infection: transmission, prevention, pathogenesis, and treatment. Retrovirology 8:65
115. Denton PW et al (2012) Generation of HIV latency in humanized BLT mice. J Virol 86(1):630–634
116. Gorantla S, Gendelman HE, Poluektova LY (2012) Can humanized mice reflect the complex pathobiology of HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders? J Neuroimmune Pharmacol 7(2):352–362
117. Deruaz M, Luster AD (2013) BLT humanized mice as model to study HIV vaginal transmission. J Infect Dis 208(Suppl 2):S131–S136
118. Nixon CC et al (2013) HIV-1 infection of hematopoietic progenitor cells in vivo in humanized mice. Blood 122(13):2195–2204
119. Denton PW, Garcia JV (2012) Mucosal HIV-1 transmission and prevention strategies in BLT humanized mice. Trends Microbiol 20(6):268–274
120. Klein F et al (2012) HIV therapy by a combination of broadly neutralizing antibodies in humanized mice. Nature 492(7427):118–122
121. Joseph A et al (2010) Inhibition of in vivo HIV infection in humanized mice by gene therapy of human hematopoietic stem cells with a lentiviral vector encoding a broadly neutralizing anti-HIV antibody. J Virol 84(13):6645–6653
122. Hur EM et al (2012) Inhibitory effect of HIV-specific neutralizing IgA on mucosal transmission of HIV in humanized mice. Blood 120(23):4571–4582
123. Horwitz JA et al (2013) HIV-1 suppression and durable control by combining single broadly neutralizing antibodies and antiretroviral drugs in humanized mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110(41):16538–16543
124. Halper-Stromberg A et al (2014) Broadly Neutralizing Antibodies and Viral Inducers Decrease Rebound from HIV-1 Latent Reservoirs in Humanized Mice. Cell 158(5):989–999
125. Biswas S et al (2011) Humoral immune responses in humanized BLT mice immunized with West Nile virus and HIV-1 envelope proteins are largely mediated via human CD5+ B cells. Immunology 134(4):419–433
126. Dash PK et al (2012) Long-acting nanoformulated antiretroviral therapy elicits potent antiretroviral and neuroprotective responses in HIV-1-infected humanized mice. AIDS 26(17):2135–2144
127. Nischang M et al (2012) Humanized mice recapitulate key features of HIV-1 infection: a novel concept using long-acting antiretroviral drugs for treating HIV-1. PLoS One 7(6):e38853
128. Singh M et al (2014) Minocycline attenuates HIV-1 infection and suppresses chronic immune activation in humanized NOD/LtsZ-scidIL-2Rgamma(null) mice. Immunology 142(4):562–572
129. Balazs AB et al (2014) Vectored immunoprophylaxis protects humanized mice from mucosal HIV transmission. Nat Med 20(3):296–300
130. Hofer U et al (2013) Pre-clinical modeling of CCR5 knockout in human hematopoietic stem cells by zinc finger nucleases using humanized mice. J Infect Dis 208(Suppl 2):S160–S164
131. Neff CP et al (2011) A topical microbicide gel formulation of CCR5 antagonist maraviroc prevents HIV-1 vaginal transmission in humanized RAG-hu mice. PLoS One 6(6):e20209
132. Terahara K et al (2013) Expansion of activated memory CD4+ T cells affects infectivity of CCR5-tropic HIV-1 in humanized NOD/SCID/JAK3null mice. PLoS One 8(1):e53495
133. Dudek TE, Allen TM (2013) HIV-specific CD8(+) T-cell immunity in humanized bone marrow-liver-thymus mice. J Infect Dis 208(Suppl 2):S150–S154
134. Dudek TE et al (2012) Rapid evolution of HIV-1 to functional CD8(+) T cell responses in humanized BLT mice. Sci Transl Med 4(143):143ra98
135. Zhang L et al (2011) Efficient infection, activation, and impairment of pDCs in the BM and peripheral lymphoid organs during early HIV-1 infection in humanized rag2(-)/(-) gamma C(-)/(-) mice in vivo. Blood 117(23):6184–6192
136. Li G et al (2014) Plasmacytoid dendritic cells suppress HIV-1 replication but contribute to

HIV-1 induced immunopathogenesis in humanized mice. PLoS Pathog 10(7): e1004291

137. Palmer BE et al (2013) In vivo blockade of the PD-1 receptor suppresses HIV-1 viral loads and improves CD4+ T cell levels in humanized mice. J Immunol 190(1):211–219
138. Seung E et al (2013) PD-1 blockade in chronically HIV-1-infected humanized mice suppresses viral loads. PLoS One 8(10): e77780
139. Ringpis GE et al (2012) Engineering HIV-1-resistant T-cells from short-hairpin RNA-expressing hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells in humanized BLT mice. PLoS One 7(12):e53492
140. Neff CP et al (2011) An aptamer-siRNA chimera suppresses HIV-1 viral loads and protects from helper CD4(+) T cell decline in humanized mice. Sci Transl Med 3(66):66
141. Salgado M et al (2014) HLA-B*57 elite suppressor and chronic progressor HIV-1 isolates replicate vigorously and cause CD4+ T cell depletion in humanized BLT mice. J Virol 88(6):3340–3352
142. Murooka TT, Mempel TR (2013) Intravital microscopy in BLT-humanized mice to study cellular dynamics in HIV infection. J Infect Dis 208(Suppl 2):S137–S144
143. Bennett MS, Akkina R (2013) Gene therapy strategies for HIV/AIDS: preclinical modeling in humanized mice. Viruses 5(12):3119–3141
144. Legrand N et al (2009) Humanized mice for modeling human infectious disease: challenges, progress, and outlook. Cell Host Microbe 6(1):5–9
145. Cox J et al (2012) Mosquito bite delivery of dengue virus enhances immunogenicity and pathogenesis in humanized mice. J Virol 86(14):7637–7649
146. Frias-Staheli N et al (2014) Utility of humanized BLT mice for analysis of dengue virus infection and antiviral drug testing. J Virol 88(4):2205–2218
147. Jaiswal S et al (2012) Enhanced humoral and HLA-A2-restricted dengue virus-specific T-cell responses in humanized BLT NSG mice. Immunology 136(3):334–343
148. Jaiswal S et al (2014) Dengue virus infection induces broadly cross-reactive human IgM antibodies that recognize intact virions in humanized BLT-NSG mice. Exp Biol Med (Maywood) 240(1):67–78
149. Mota J, Rico-Hesse R (2011) Dengue virus tropism in humanized mice recapitulates human dengue fever. PLoS One 6(6):e20762
150. White RE et al (2012) EBNA3B-deficient EBV promotes B cell lymphomagenesis in humanized mice and is found in human tumors. J Clin Invest 122(4):1487–1502
151. Sato K et al (2011) A novel animal model of Epstein-Barr virus-associated hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis in humanized mice. Blood 117(21):5663–5673
152. Kuwana Y et al (2011) Epstein-Barr virus induces erosive arthritis in humanized mice. PLoS One 6(10):e26630
153. Heuts F et al (2014) T cells modulate Epstein-Barr virus latency phenotypes during infection of humanized mice. J Virol 88(6):3235–3245
154. Fujiwara S (2014) Reproduction of Epstein-Barr virus infection and pathogenesis in humanized mice. Immune Netw 14(1):1–6
155. Antsiferova O et al (2014) Adoptive transfer of EBV Specific CD8+ T cell clones can transiently control EBV infection in humanized mice. PLoS Pathog 10(8):e1004333
156. Hakki M et al (2014) HCMV infection of humanized mice after transplantation of G-CSF-mobilized peripheral blood stem cells from HCMV-seropositive donors. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant 20(1):132–135
157. Banerjee P et al (2010) Adult T-cell leukemia/lymphoma development in HTLV-1-infected humanized SCID mice. Blood 115(13):2640–2648
158. Kaushansky A et al (2014) Of men in mice: the success and promise of humanized mouse models for human malaria parasite infections. Cell Microbiol 16(5):602–611
159. Wege AK et al (2012) Leishmania major infection in humanized mice induces systemic infection and provokes a nonprotective human immune response. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 6(7):e1741
160. Libby SJ et al (2010) Humanized nonobese diabetic-scid IL2rgammanull mice are susceptible to lethal *Salmonella Typhi* infection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107(35): 15589–15594
161. Mian MF et al (2011) Humanized mice for *Salmonella typhi* infection: new tools for an old problem. Virulence 2(3):248–252
162. Berges B, Tanner A (2014) Modeling of human herpesvirus infections in humanized mice. J Gen Virol 95(Pt 10):2106–2117
163. Tanner A et al (2013) Human herpesvirus 6A infection and immunopathogenesis in humanized Rag2(-)/(-) gammac(-)/(-) mice. J Virol 87(22):12020–12028
164. Lee J et al (2013) Engrafted human cells generate adaptive immune responses to

Mycobacterium bovis BCG infection in humanized mice. BMC Immunol 14:53

165. Heuts F et al (2013) CD4+ cell-dependent granuloma formation in humanized mice infected with mycobacteria. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110(16):6482–6487
166. Ernst W et al (2013) Humanized mice, a new model to study the influence of drug treatment on neonatal sepsis. Infect Immun 81(5):1520–1531
167. Brehm MA et al (2013) Humanized mice for the study of infectious diseases. Curr Opin Immunol 25(4):428–435
168. Lassnig C et al (2005) Development of a transgenic mouse model susceptible to human coronavirus 229E. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102(23):8275–8280
169. Akkina R (2013) New generation humanized mice for virus research: comparative aspects and future prospects. Virology 435(1):14–28
170. Leung C et al (2013) Infectious diseases in humanized mice. Eur J Immunol 43(9): 2246–2254
171. Koo GC, Hasan A, O'Reilly RJ (2009) Use of humanized severe combined immunodeficient mice for human vaccine development. Expert Rev Vaccines 8(1): 113–120
172. Akkina R (2013) Human immune responses and potential for vaccine assessment in humanized mice. Curr Opin Immunol 25(3): 403–409
173. Yu CI et al (2008) Broad influenza-specific CD8+ T-cell responses in humanized mice vaccinated with influenza virus vaccines. Blood 112(9):3671–3678
174. Macchiarini F et al (2005) Humanized mice: are we there yet? J Exp Med 202(10): 1307–1311
175. Garcia S, Freitas AA (2012) Humanized mice: current states and perspectives. Immunol Lett 146(1–2):1–7
176. Shultz LD et al (2012) Humanized mice for immune system investigation: progress, promise and challenges. Nat Rev Immunol 12(11):786–798

Chapter 11

Humanized Mice as Preclinical Models in Transplantation

N. Safinia, P.D. Becker*, T. Vaikunthanathan*, F. Xiao, R. Lechler, and G. Lombardi

Abstract

Animal models have been instrumental in our understanding of the mechanisms of rejection and the testing of novel treatment options in the context of transplantation. We have now entered an exciting era with research on humanized mice driving advances in translational studies and in our understanding of the function of human cells in response to pathogens and cancer as well as the recognition of human allogeneic tissues in vivo. In this chapter we provide a historical overview of humanized mouse models of transplantation to date, outlining the distinct strains and share our experiences in the study of human transplantation immunology.

Key words Humanized mouse model, Transplantation, Immunology

1 Introduction

Transplantation remains the treatment of choice for patients with end stage organ disease. Despite improvements in short-term outcome, the obligatory protracted use of powerful nonspecific immunosuppressants has led to an accelerated rise in morbidity and mortality as a result of chronic rejection and associated toxicity.

There is, therefore, enormous interest for other therapeutic alternatives in the current struggle to improve long-term outcomes, thus negating the use of conventional immunosuppressive drugs.

Translational research has relied heavily on studies conducted in animal models, offering a powerful tool in the fundamental understanding of therapeutics and biology behind diseases. However, the significant use of traditional murine models has exposed the caveats of species-specific differences in the immune systems between humans and mice and, in some instances,

*Author contributed equally with all other contributors.

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_11,

hampering the translation of novel protocols to the clinic having resulted in serious harm to research volunteers. An example being the adverse effects of anti-CD28 monoclonal antibody (mAb) in patients despite the lack of effects in mice [1].

Recent years have seen the evolution of humanized mouse models in which human hematolymphoid cells and tissues are engrafted in immunodeficient mice, providing a unique opportunity to study human biology in an animal surrogate. These models have proven to be particularly useful in the transplant setting, lending knowledge to the basic immunological mechanisms underlying allogeneic transplant rejection. More recently considerable effort has been placed on optimizing the various humanized mouse models to ensure better engraftment of the human immune system, as well as broadening the scope of various models of transplantation, to now include skin, islets, and artery.

These mice have proved to be invaluable preclinical models for the evaluation of human specific therapeutics. This chapter details the different strains of mice available, the materials used for reconstitution and the transfer options together with a review of the most well-known humanized mouse models in the setting of graft-versus-host disease (GvHD) and allograft rejection.

2 Strain Development for Humanized Mice and Immune Cell Reconstitution

The concept of humanized mouse models is centered on the reconstitution of immunodeficient mice with viable human cells/tissues with the rationale of emulating an in vivo setting in line with human physiology. Mice in an immunodeficient state are more receptive to xenografts, allowing for the assembly of various human systems without the complication of graft rejection [2]. Of importance, to promote the successful engraftment of human cells and tissues in these mice, both the murine innate and adaptive immune systems need to be suppressed.

The discovery of the severe combined immunodeficiency (*Prkdcscid*), SCID mutation, in 1983 was the turning point in the development of humanized mouse models. The catalytic subunit of *Prkdc* is implicated in the rearrangement of B and T cell receptors, and as such mice homozygous for this mutation display impaired development of T and B lymphocytes [3–5].

Initial studies using the CB17-*scid* mice described the successful engraftment of human peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) [6], haematopoietic stem cells (HSC) [7] and fetal tissues [8]. Despite this, the overall level of engraftment with human cells reported was low, in part due to the rejection of the cells by the host's active innate immune response, most notably natural killer (NK) cells, left unaffected by the mutation. In addition, the CB17-scid mice also showed leakiness of murine T and B cells, whereby

mature murine T and B cells developed in these aging mice, due to the spontaneous rearrangement of T- and B-cell receptors.

Attempts to improve this model saw the preconditioning of SCID mice with γ-radiation which, despite emptying the mouse of almost all of the host stem and haematopoietic cells, led to radiation sensitivity, as a result of the underlying defect in DNA repair [9, 10]. Further efforts to improve engraftment led to the proposal of a second injection of human cells and chemical macrophage depletion [11–13]. Nonetheless, the search for improved engraftment in these mice and the persistence of the host innate immune system was the driving incentive in the quest for a universal humanized mouse model.

Since SCID mice were highly sensitive to radiation, an alternative was the use of mice deficient in the expression of either recombination-activating gene (Rag)-1 (*Rag1null*) or Rag-2 (*Rag2null*), required for the generation of mature T and B cells [14, 15]. In this regard, Rag-1 and Rag-2 knockout mice established a new strain with restrained leakiness of murine T and B cells and radiation sensitivity previously ascribed to earlier strains, but still retained high levels of host NK cells.

In view of the inconvenience of a persistent host innate immunity, and in the search of better mouse strains that supported human cell engraftment, the *Prkdcscid* mutation was crossed onto different strain backgrounds. As a result, the later derivation of the non-obese diabetic (NOD)-*scid* mice allowed for higher levels of human cell engraftment as compared to the CB17-*scid* mice. With the aforementioned effects of the SCID mutation on the host's adaptive immune system, the combination of the NOD background synergistically dampens the host's immune system via several defects in the innate immunity including: defective macrophage function, reduced NK function and numbers, impaired dendritic cell (DC) maturation, lack of C5 complement component, and a polymorphism in the inhibitory receptor signal regulatory protein-alpha (SIRPα), described in detail below. It is important, however, to highlight that the spontaneous mutation in the *c5* gene, precluding macrophages to secrete C5, does not seem to be responsible for the better engraftment of human cells on NOD background strains [16]. Moreover, since NOD diabetes is T-cell mediated, the incorporation of SCID mutation resulted in diabetes-free mice. While these NOD-*scid* mice are considered the "gold standard" in xeno-transplantation studies, leakiness alongside a predisposition to thymic lymphomas in the majority of the mice, severely decreases their life-span [17, 18], making this model still far from ideal.

Introduction of a Rag1 or Rag2 mutation in NOD mice resulted in reduced leakiness of murine immune cells, although the engraftment levels in these mice remained low [19–21] and the problems with the development of lymphomas still persisted [18, 22].

2.1 Persistence of Murine Innate Immune System and Targeted Disruption of IL2-Rγ^c Gene

In the following years, research was focused on developing mice both free from murine B and T cells and devoid of an innate immune system, particularly with regards to NK cell function. Since several groups were working to solve the problem, many different mouse backgrounds were used. In addition to the scid mutation on the CB17 mice, the disruption of the lysosomal trafficking (*Lyst*) gene by the beige mutation (*Lystbg*) resulted in impaired NK cell function. These mutations were crossed onto BALB/c [23] and C57BL/6 [24] backgrounds. Although SCID/Beige strains of mice still required high numbers of human cells, it was a very useful model for skin engraftment since it accepted human skin grafts with minimal infiltration of murine immune cells [25].

In later years, protocols to increase levels of PBMC engraftment were published [26] and a year later protocols to attain a higher level of engrafted human cells from transplanted cord blood HSC [27].

Further attempts to improve the model saw the targeted mutations in the β2 microglobulin (*β2m*) and perforin (*Prf1*) genes. Mice lacking *β2m* (*β2mnull*) had a drastic reduction in major histocompatibility complex class I (MHC I) molecules leading to impaired NK development [28]. In line with this, a knock-out of *β2m* in NOD-*scid* mice (NOD-*scid*-$\beta2m^{-/-}$) showed improved engraftment rates as compared to the NOD-*scid* mice, due to the abolishment of NK cell activity secondary to homozygosity for the $\beta2m^{-/-}$ allele [28]. However, this model still proved to be problematic in view of the eventuality of thymic lymphomas and mice with $\beta2m^{-/-}$ also prone to developing hemochromatosis [29].

A major breakthrough in this area was the targeted disruption of the murine IL-2 receptor common gamma chain (*IL2-Rγc*) gene, a gene encoding the common cytokine chain and essential signaling component for the action of cytokines: IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21 [2, 30].

Strains with the IL2-Rγ^c mutation (γ^c), when selectively bred together with NOD-*scid*-, NOD-*Rag1*-, or BALB/c-Rag2-deficient mice, creating NOD-*scid* gamma (NSG), NOD-*Rag1* gamma (NRG) and BALB/c-*Rag2* gamma (BRG), yielded a variety of more severely immunocompromised recipient mice, achieving far superior levels of human cell engraftment [31]. It was shown that the absence of functional receptors for IL-7, IL-15, and other cytokines might prevent the development of NK cells and early lymphoma cells, resulting in better engraftment of the transferred cells in turn prolonging the life expectancy of these mice (for a comprehensive mouse strain review *see* ref. 2).

Although throughout this book chapter we use simplified abbreviations of mouse strains, the general consensus when detailing primary papers requires, that the full genotype be mentioned, since gross abridgements of mice strains can result in exclusion of vital information, for example, both NOD.Cg-*PrkdcscidIl2rγtm1Wjl*/SzJ and NODShi.Cg-*PrkdcscidIl2rγtm1Sug*/Jic are NSG strains,

but the former has a complete deletion of the IL-2Rγ chain while the latter has a truncation and can still bind cytokines. For the purpose of this chapter, to differentiate these strains they are referred to as NSG and NOG mice, respectively. All the strains detailed above are in current use with their applicative selection dependent on the associated relative merits and drawbacks to each model.

As the years progressed and science advanced, it became increasingly more apparent that the specific strain background was integral in the development of successful humanized mouse models. The NOD mouse background was ordinarily considered superlative in this respect, offering a number of genetic advantages that promoted the engraftment of human immune systems [17]. In agreement, a direct comparison of immunodeficient IL2-Rγ$^{c-/-}$ mice on either a NOD background (NSG, NOG) or BRG revealed that the NOD background supported significantly higher levels of human cell engraftment following the injection of human HSCs [26, 32, 33].

The strength accredited to the NOD mouse model was found to be attributed to a polymorphism of the *SIRPα* gene. SIRPα expressed on murine host macrophages interacts with CD47, expressed on the surface of human cells, providing an inhibitory signal to the murine macrophage, referred to as the "don't eat me signal," preventing phagocytosis. Whilst polymorphisms in the NOD mice increase the receptive activity of SIRPα, distinct polymorphisms in BALB/c mice blunt its response leaving human cells open to host phagocytosis [34].

In order to validate the importance of SIRPα in models of humanized mice, BRG mice were genetically manipulated to introduce the human SIRPα so as to regenerate the "don't eat me signal" resulting in significantly improved levels of HSC engraftment. Bearing in mind the flaws of the NOD background with regard to radiation sensitivity and their short life-span precluding any complex genetic manipulation, the success of BRG-hSIRPα mouse strains with engraftment, on par with NSG models, has opened the gates to experimental genetics on a more robust mouse strain [35].

2.2 Engraftment of Human Immune Cells; the Role of Cytokines, HLA-Transgenic (Tg) Mice, CD47 Gene Inactivation

Research around the world on humanized mouse models initially concentrated on the success of effective human cell engraftment; however as the field matured in both technology and understanding, the focus shifted to challenging the fundamental integrity of the engrafted human immune system. In the early 1990s Lapidot et al. used several cytokines/growth factors to enhance the humanization of immunodeficient mice with human HSCs [7]. Following this, several research groups have adopted the rationale put forward by Lapidot, now looking at the administration of human factors/cytokines, in isolation or as produced from non-hematopoietic cells, with low or undetectable cross-reactivity with their mouse counterpart (reviewed in [36, 37]).

In this fashion, exogenous IL-7 and IL-15 have been reported to boost the development of human T and NK cells in BRG mice [38–40]. However, the systemic injection of these cytokines was found to pollute the desired physiological environment whilst also bringing into question issues of cost-effectiveness. In answer to this predicament lentiviral expression and hydrodynamic injections of DNA were trialed to avert from the concerns of physiological adulteration [38, 41, 42]. However, these transgenic mice overexpressing cytokines under the CMV promoter have the potential to undesirably transform the development of the engrafting immune system expanding/depleting or favoring some cell population/functions over others [43].

By far the most reliable approach is the knock-in replacement of mouse genes with their human counterparts. This method ensures the physiological and site-specific regulation of gene expression; however, it does come with its own shortcomings of cost, time and labour. Recently, Flavell's group demonstrated the feasibility of this endeavor by knocking in human cytokines/factors into corresponding BRG mouse loci [37] investigating the effects of the single cytokine/factor CSF-1 [44], IL-3/GM-CSF [45], and thrombopoietin [46] on the development and function of an engrafted human immune system. Following this success, they pushed yet further, interbreeding their transgenic mice resulting in the creation of the mouse strains known as MITRG and the MISTRG, which also incorporated the human SIRPα [47]. This strain outperformed NSG mice, showing the maturation of a functional human immune system including, myeloid cells, monocytes, basophils, eosinophils, DC and NK cells, as well as haematopoietic stem cell survivor. However, the significant number of reconstituted human cells, required in the MISTRG strain, over-populates the mice, limiting the development of essential murine cells, giving rise to anaemia.

Other than the provocation of cytokines and growth factors in these immunodeficient mice, different pre- and post-myeloablative regimens have also been proposed to facilitate engraftment. Therefore, pretreatment regimens now include radiation, chemotherapy, or a combination. Other studies have highlighted additional pretreatment options, targeting the remaining murine cells. Examples include the depletion of macrophages with clodronate-containing liposomes [48] or anti-CD122 mAB for NK cell depletion [7, 19]. In addition, a review by Nevozhay et al. provides an outline of the irradiation protocols and effective doses in various different mouse models [49].

While the total B cell repertoire seems to be accounted for, differentiation and function of these cells is suboptimal in humanized mice [50, 51]. This is in due in part to the lack/limited $CD4^+$ T cell help.

It was demonstrated that thymopoiesis is normal in humanized mice, but the muffled "cross talk" between murine thymic stroma

and human haematopoietic precursors may prove to be suboptimal [52]. Furthermore, the lack of proper education by human MHC class I and II (HLAs) and expression of mouse MHC on the thymus is in part responsible for the poor T cell education. Hence, several HLA-transgenic (Tg) mice were crossed on immunodeficient backgrounds to generate humanized mice with HLAs. This HLA-Tg humanized mice showed improved T cell responses with detectable tetramers + T cells after vaccination protocols [53, 54]. Recently, Garcia et al. generated a murine MHC deficient, HLA-Tg Rag/γ^c bearing the human SIRPα gene, which improved reconstitution after injection of human HSC and HLA-restricted T cell responses [55].

Reports of several new strains tackling different problems have just been published, amongst them is the B6-Rag2/γ^c with a CD47 gene inactivation (CD47$^{-/-}$) which achieved human immune system reconstitution in the bone marrow, liver, and thymus (BLT) humanized mouse model [56, 57] and the Kit mutants in NSG and BRG backgrounds that allowed human HSC reconstitution and sustained multilineage throughout several serial transplantations, without the need for preconditioning the mice [58].

Whilst the incorporation of the γ^c deficiency in several mouse strains has significantly advanced humanized mouse models, these mice rarely develop lymph nodes (with exception of the mesenteric) and show extremely low levels of human cell reconstitution in the gut in the BLT model [59, 60].

Such studies merely highlight the plastic designs of current humanized mouse models on the path to defining the "perfect" model. However, for now the decision as to which strain of mice is to be used relies on the underlying question and hypothesis that needs to be tested in the field of interest. The diversity of protocols and approaches extends far wider than the choice of mouse strain alone, also calling into question the specific human immune cell population that can be engrafted, pretreatment options, the route of transfer as well as the choice of tissue to transplant.

2.3 Route of Administration and Post-treatment Options

Figure 1 depicts the various routes of administration of immune cells in mice to date [6]. Transfer options include injection of human PBMCs into the peritoneal cavity, intravenous injection into the tail and organs (e.g. spleen) of adult mice (reviewed in [61]). It has been reported that when SCID mice were injected in the peritoneal cavity with human PBMCs, cells were detected in that area for 3 weeks as compared to the injection in other organs, where cells were detected up to 5 months [62]. On the other hand, administration of human HSCs has been reported in newborns and adult mice. The injection of cells into the bone marrow cavity (i.e. femur) has been trialed, but it is only used on rare occasions. More commonly is the intracardiac and intrahepatic injection of human HSCs in newborn mice harboring the IL2-R$\gamma^{c-/-}$ and

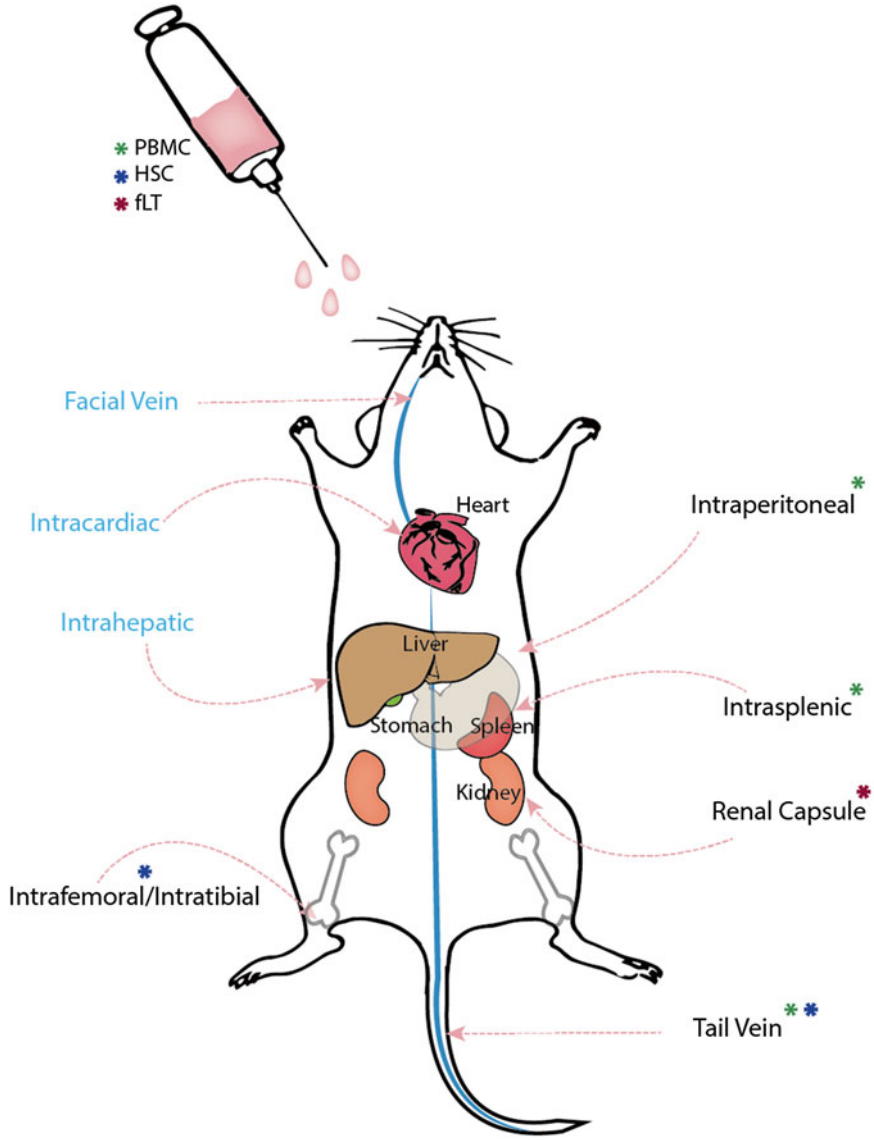


Fig. 1 Routes of human cell administration in immunodeficient mice. Transfer options include the injection of human cells intravenously via the tail vein, into the peritoneal cavity, intraosseously via the femur, intrahepatically, intrasplenically, and beneath the renal capsule. Routes written in *blue* (intravenous, via the facial vein, intracardiac, and intrahepatic) all denote routes of administration applied in newborn mice, PBMCs are routinely delivered to adult mice through intravenous injections into the tail vein or intrasplenic or intraperitoneal injections. Human stem cells are injected into adult mice intravenously via the tail vein or intrasplenically. Fetal liver and thymus fragments are delivered to adult mice under the renal capsule. Abbreviations: *fLT* fetal liver thymus fragments,*HSC* human stem cells, *PBMC* peripheral blood mononuclear cells. Figure adapted from Schultz et al. 2007

the intravenous injection of human HSCs into adult mice, where injection of newborn mice showed more efficient engraftment than adult mice [32].

More complex models include the transplantation of human fetal thymus and liver under the kidney capsule, follow by irradiation and administration of human HSC [61]. This model, known as the bone marrow (although they are in fact from fetal origin), liver and thymus (BLT) model, has high levels of human cell engraftment, adequate T cell education and when performed in NOD-*scid* mice, colonization of human cells in the gut [59, 60].

Overall, these studies highlight the various factors that have to be borne in mind in the efficient engraftment of human cells in the humanized mouse models.

3 Application of Humanized Mouse Models of Transplantation

3.1 Graft-Versus-Host Disease

GvHD is a fatal complication that may develop in patients receiving allogeneic bone marrow transplants (BMT) for the treatment of various haematological conditions such as acute/chronic leukemia, aplastic anaemia or congenital immunodeficiency.

Over 20 years ago, Mosier et al. first demonstrated that the induction of xenogenic GvHD was possible in the CB17-*scid*, immunodeficient mice, following transplantation of human PBMCs [6]. In recent years many other humanized mouse models have been used in the GvHD research, namely: NOG [63], NOD-scid [63], NOD-*scid-B2m*$^{-/-}$ [64], NSG [65], and the BRG mice [48]. Several limitations have hindered the outright translation of these models in the setting of GvHD primarily when considering the relative levels of engraftment, in the CB17-*scid* and the NOD-scid mice in particular, where the host's innate immune system interferes with complete engraftment. Furthermore, a relatively large number of human PBMCs have to be administered, intraperitoneally, to induce disease [66], which conflicts with the usual route of administration in humans, where cells are infused intravenously. Van Rijen et al. proposed a solution to this by using BRG mice which permitted the pathological induction of GvHD following intravenous injection of human PBMCs [48]. However, drawbacks to this model necessitated a large number of cells to be infused and the requirement of total body irradiation, prior to injection, which resulted in considerable variation in disease onset. In the search for the optimal humanized mouse model for the study of GvHD, research to date has suggested that the use of the NOG or NSG mice provides the most stable platform. In these models, smaller numbers of donor cells have been shown to be sufficient where intravenous injection/total body irradiation have not been necessary [63, 65].

In agreement, we have recently compared the engraftment of human lymphocyte populations in both NSG and BRG mouse strains [67]. In this study we concluded that NSG mice are associated with faster rates of engraftment and development of GvHD,

with phenotypic analysis of the engrafted cells demonstrating the prevalence of tissue homing with a T-effector memory phenotype. This finding correlates with the response reported in human GvHD, whereby a strong anti-host effector cell reactivity and cutaneous tissue infiltration has been well documented, thus suggesting the strengths of this model as an informative preclinical tool.

Despite these successes, it must, however, be noted that the symptoms induced in humanized mice of GvHD correlate with the levels of human cell engraftment [19] with the suggestion that this may not necessarily correlate with the human GvHD phenotype. It is, therefore, difficult to translate the induced GvHD response to the acute and chronic equivalent of the human GvHD. Studies have proposed that the differentiation between acute and chronic GvHD in mice can be based on the predominant T cell subset: Th1 in acute-, Th2 in chronic- GvHD or cytokine production: TGF-α/IL-1 in acute-, TGF-β in chronic- GvHD and/or the presence of autoantibody production or systemic fibrosis, classified within the category of chronic GvHD [68]. In this regard, the use of humanized mice to inform translational research in the study GvHD is also reliant on careful histological and cytokine/infiltrating cell analysis.

3.2 Skin Allografts

For many years human skin allografts have been considered ideal in the study of allogeneic transplantation immunology in humanized mouse models in view of the considerable immunogenicity of skin allografts and the relative abundance of the organ [69]. Additionally, the rationale for their use is not only based on the ease of harvest of the source of tissue specimens from healthy individuals, but also the possibility of concurrently recovering autologous PBMC from the skin donor. Of significance, once engrafted on the immunodeficient mice, the transplanted tissue preserves its original architecture.

Early attempts to generate humanized mouse models of skin transplantation utilized the CB17-*scid* host [70, 71]. In this regard, Kawamura et al. transplanted human skin allografts on CB17-*scid* mice engrafted with either PBMCs from a donor that had or had not been previously sensitized to alloantigens [72]. They showed that PBMCs from the sensitized donor were unable to reject skin allografts, proposing that unless pre-existing alloreactive memory cells were present the PBMCs injected into these mice were not functional.

Attempts to improve the model and levels of PBMC engraftment, saw higher numbers (3×10^8) of human PBMCs injected in these mice, following pretreatment with the anti-asialo GM1 polyclonal antibody, which depleted murine NK cells [71]. A second strategy also included the irradiation of the CB17-*scid* mice prior to injection of human splenocytes [70], resulting in higher levels of human cell engraftment as compared to the human PBMC. This approach also accelerated the study of rejection of human skin

allografts, whereby within 3 weeks of human skin transplantation, 75 % of the engrafted splenocytes had rejected the human skin.

The evolution of the humanized mouse model saw groups using the SCID/Beige mice, allowing the engraftment of human PBMCs without the need to deplete the NK cells [23, 73]. Moreover, these mice readily accepted the human skin grafts, with minimal injury or infiltration with murine immune cells [74]. This mouse model has since proven useful in characterizing allograft injury mediated by human T cells [75, 76]. Despite the merits of this model, the poor reconstruction of the immune system, whereby the survival of innate immune cells and B cells was incomplete in comparison to the overpowering persistence of T cells, warranted continued efforts directed at developing a model with a more comprehensive human immune system. In this regard, adult SCID/Beige mice were irradiated and injected with human $CD34^+$ HSC derived from the peripheral blood of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor-mobilized individuals [74]. Despite the promising concept the results were disappointing, still falling short of developing a replica human immune system in mice.

Recent years have seen the use of NSG mice as potential models to study skin allograft rejection mediated by human PBMC. However, human skin grafts on unmanipulated NSG mice showed extensive perivascular infiltration of murine immune cells that resulted in graft injury [77]. Injection of human PBMCs into GR1-depleted NSG mice bearing human skin allografts resulted in allograft rejection, complete loss of human vasculature and destruction of the epidermal and dermal layers, with infiltration of human CD45 cells [77]. The high engraftment of human cells and consistent rejection of human skin allografts in NSG mice have also been the impetus for the use of this model by our group and others to study the potential of regulatory T cell (Treg) therapy in preventing transplant rejection [78–80]. In agreement, we have shown the efficacy of human graft-specific Tregs, enriched based on co-expression of activation markers CD69 and CD71, in preventing alloimmune dermal tissue injury in NSG (and BRG) mice, transplanted with human skin. In our model, mice were reconstituted with allogeneic PBMCs (5×10^6), depleted of $CD25^+$ cells, at 4–6 weeks after transplantation in order to induce allograft damage, with or without in vitro-expanded Tregs [80]. We further showed that higher doses of PBMCs (10×10^6 to 20×10^6 per mouse) routinely resulted in engraftment of both CD4 and CD8 T cells, whereas lower doses resulted in the predominant engraftment of CD4 T cells, with no detectable antigen presenting cell (APC) compartments. In this study, successful human cell engraftment was established whereby $CD45^+$ cells constituted >0.5 % of total splenic lymphocytes. In this regard, the model proved valuable in supporting the importance of allospecific Tregs in the setting of transplantation.

A subsequent study by our group provided further supporting evidence to these findings [79]. Of note, in this study only BRG mice were used, necessitating weekly intraperitoneal injection of anti-mouse Gr1. However, no difference between the two different mouse models was noted in our studies [80].

3.3 Islet allografts

Type I diabetes is a chronic autoimmune condition, characterised by the destruction of insulin-secreting pancreatic β cells, resulting in the dysregulation of blood glucose levels. Available treatment options include human islet cell transplantation, with the promise of restoring normal glycemic control [81]. However, this treatment modality is fraught by late-stage allograft rejection and the need to be maintained on lifelong immunosuppression [82]. As a result, humanized mouse models have been invaluable in the investigation into the mechanisms of rejection alongside the trial of novel therapeutic strategies of immunomodulation in order to suppress T-cell-mediated alloimmune responses [83–85].

As in the case of the humanized mouse model of skin transplantation, initial experiments, using humanized mice in islet transplantation were carried out using CB17-*scid* mice [11, 86]. It was demonstrated that the transplantation of human islets under the renal capsule restored normoglycemia in these mice that had been rendered diabetic by a single intraperitoneal injection of streptozotocin (STZ) [86]. In this study, the injection of allogeneic splenocytes resulted in rejection of the transplanted islets, characterized by infiltration of human CD8 T cells at the graft site.

Subsequent developments in the model of islet cell transplantation saw the use of the NSG mice, after reports of high engraftment levels of human PBMCs, allowing for the careful study of human T cell function, following their injection. As such, the injection of allogeneic PBMCs into STZ-treated diabetic NSG mice, successfully transplanted with human islet allografts, resulted in hyperglycemia and a loss of detectable human C peptide [87]. The rejection was confirmed histologically by the absence of insulin-positive cells at the graft site and the presence of a marked cellular infiltrate.

Further studies used BRG mice in the generation of the humanized mouse model of islet cell transplantation, highlighting the validity of this model, as well, to test novel cell therapy intervention in providing protection against human islet allograft rejection [88].

In the studies outlined above, however, mice were reconstituted with human PBMCs with the limitation of a predominant engraftment of T cells. In this regard, our group has shown the utility of HSC reconstituted NSG mice in studying innate immune responses to human islet allografts [85]. Here, NSG mice at 4–6 weeks of age were irradiated with 240 cGy and within 24 h received intravenous injection of 2×10^5 $CD34^+$ stem cells, enriched by

positive selection from cord blood (NHS Cord Blood Bank, London, UK). The mice generated in this study were approximately 30 % chimeric with human $CD45^+$ cells, encompassing T and B cells, as well as Tregs ($CD4^+CD25^+FOXP3^+$), monocytes/macrophages, $CD11c^+$ DCs, and NK cells, promoting the reconstitution of human lymphohematopoiesis. However, despite the faithful presence of B cells in their entirety, in support of published work [89–91], associated responses were impaired in the mice. This may have arisen secondary to a defective interaction between the human B and T cells, apparent from a lack of HLA expression in the mouse thymus [91, 92]. This notion was validated by studies showing that the injection of human $CD34^+$ cells into immunodeficient transgenic mice, expressing HLA molecules improved antigen-specific T-cell interactions and antibody responses [91, 93].

In our study, 12–16 weeks post-injection of human $CD34^+$ cells and continual assessment of human engraftment, mice were given a single intraperitoneal injection of STZ and 2–3 days post-injection were transplanted with human islet allograft under the kidney capsule. In this model, we were also able to study the biology of Tregs in protection against allograft rejection where, a total of 6×10^6 ex vivo expanded human Tregs, expressing the same HLA-DR as the engrafted $CD34^+$ stem cells were injected intravenously into recipient mice immediately after islet transplantation.

The presence of complement protein, C3d, deposition and infiltration of macrophages ($CD11b^+$) and neutrophils ($CD66b^+$) into rejecting islet allografts in these mice supported the advantage of this model in detailing the intricacies of the innate immune responses. In addition, one of the assets of this model was the absence of GvHD [8], as compared to PBMC reconstituted NSG mice which die of GvHD within the first 30 days, making this model ideal in the study of interventional transplantation therapies [87]. Based on the merits posed by the use of this model, we were able to show a delay in islet rejection post adoptive transfer of Tregs. Moreover, histological analysis demonstrated that there were significantly less infiltrating macrophages, neutrophils, and $CD4^+$ T cells, with the preservation of the islet structure, in the grafts from the Treg-treated animals. This model not only provided supportive data for the development of clinical strategies to use Treg cell therapy in the control of human islet rejection, but also provided a mechanistic insight into the biology of Treg function in vivo.

In agreement with previously published work we provided data that the suppressive properties of Tregs were not limited to the effects on T cell response, but also the inhibition of the pathology mediated by the cells of the innate immune system [94, 95]. Thus, we suggest that the HSC reconstituted NSG mice are currently a favored model to study human islet rejection.

3.4 Artery Allografts

In view that the endothelial cell lining of blood vessels is one of the main targets of acute and chronic rejection [96] several investigators sought to develop a humanized mouse model of the blood vessels to study the immunology behind this process and test novel treatment options. In this regard, Wood et al. developed a model, using the BRG mice, reconstituted with human PBMCs, and incorporating a human aortic graft to study human Treg function in vivo [97]. Their results showed that grafts from mice reconstituted with PBMCs alone exhibited extensive areas of vascular intimal hyperplasia and a decrease in luminal diameter, whereas the co-transfer of expanded Tregs prevented this vasculopathy [97]. Such a study highlights the important use of this model as a preclinical platform for the investigation of novel therapeutic interventions. In line with this, a subsequent study by the same group reported the use of the same mouse strain, showing the inhibition of transplant arteriosclerosis with the combined regimen of low dose rapamycin and Tregs [98]. This study highlights the importance of humanized mouse models as influential preclinical platforms, supporting the concept that rapamycin can be incorporated as an adjunctive therapy to improve the efficacy of Treg based cell therapy in clinical practice.

It must, however, be noted that one of the first models of xeno-vessels transplantation was in SCID/Beige mice with pig epicardial coronary arteries inserted into the murine infrarenal aorta [99]. Other studies progressed onto the transplantation of human arteries [100], with subsequent injection of allogeneic PBMCs, evoking an immune response against the transplanted arterial graft, resembling post transplant human graft arteriosclerosis [101].

Moreover, the injection of human HSC in SCID/Beige mice has also been used to study artery graft rejection [74]. In this model, human artery allografts were rapidly infiltrated with human macrophages and extensively calcified following transplant on HSC-engrafted SCID/Beige mice.

Despite these studies, when comparing the BRG mice as compared to the SCID/Beige for vascular allograft rejection, it has been proposed that the former is more advantageous in view of both the engraftment of human artery and human PBMCs. As a result, this model has been used extensively in recent studies of human artery allografts [97, 102, 103].

4 Conclusions and Future Perspective

The true diversity of humanized mouse models of transplantation have allowed for their extensive use in several different settings. These models now form an integral part of translational biomedical research providing insight into the complexities of transplantation immunology and the power of therapeutic interventions.

While the field is ever-growing in science and knowledge, the search for the perfect humanized mouse model of transplantation is far from over. This warrants the necessity to not only optimize the currently available models, but also develop new models of transplantation to study other organs of interest such as liver, lung, and gut. Additionally, following recent advances in the area of regenerative medicine, the future may see the use of artificial human organs, HSCs developed from embryonic stem cells or inducible pluripotent stem cells in this setting. Although these techniques have not as yet found their way to the field of humanized mice, it is only a matter of time before new models will arise from the transplantation of artificial human organs and HSCs.

References

1. Suntharalingam G, Perry MR, Ward S, Brett SJ, Castello-Cortes A, Brunner MD, Panoskaltsis N (2006) Cytokine storm in a phase 1 trial of the anti-CD28 monoclonal antibody TGN1412. N Engl J Med 355:1018–1028
2. Shultz LD, Ishikawa F, Greiner DL (2007) Humanized mice in translational biomedical research. Nat Rev Immunol 7:118–130
3. Bosma GC, Davisson MT, Ruetsch NR, Sweet HO, Shultz LD, Bosma MJ (1989) The mouse mutation severe combined immune deficiency (SCID) is on chromosome 16. Immunogenetics 29:54–57
4. Malynn BA, Blackwell TK, Fulop GM, Rathbun GA, Furley AJ, Ferrier P, Heinke LB, Phillips RA, Yancopoulos GD, Alt FW (1988) The scid defect affects the final step of the immunoglobulin VDJ recombinase mechanism. Cell 54:453–460
5. Schuler W, Weiler IJ, Schuler A, Phillips RA, Rosenberg N, Mak TW, Kearney JF, Perry RP, Bosma MJ (1986) Rearrangement of antigen receptor genes is defective in mice with severe combined immune deficiency. Cell 46:963–972
6. Mosier DE, Gulizia RJ, Baird SM, Wilson DB (1988) Transfer of a functional human immune system to mice with severe combined immunodeficiency. Nature 335:256–259
7. Lapidot T, Pflumio F, Doedens M, Murdoch B, Williams DE, Dick JE (1992) Cytokine stimulation of multilineage hematopoiesis from immature human cells engrafted in SCID mice. Science 255:1137–1141
8. McCune JM, Namikawa R, Kaneshima H, Shultz LD, Lieberman M, Weissman IL (1988) The SCID-hu mouse: murine model for the analysis of human hematolymphoid differentiation and function. Science 241:1632–1639
9. Fulop GM, Phillips RA (1990) The scid mutation in mice causes a general defect in DNA repair. Nature 347:479–482
10. Greiner DL, Hesselton RA, Shultz LD (1998) SCID mouse models of human stem cell engraftment. Stem Cells 16:166–177
11. Shiroki R, Poindexter NJ, Woodle ES, Hussain MS, Mohanakumar T, Scharp DW (1994) Human peripheral blood lymphocyte reconstituted severe combined immunodeficient (hu-PBL-SCID) mice. A model for human islet allograft rejection. Transplantation 57:1555–1562
12. Olive C, Cheung C, Falk MC (1998) T cell engraftment in lymphoid tissues of human peripheral blood lymphocyte reconstituted SCID mice with or without prior activation of cells. Immunol Cell Biol 76:520–525
13. Shibata S, Asano T, Noguchi A, Naito M, Ogura A, Doi K (1998) Peritoneal macrophages play an important role in eliminating human cells from severe combined immunodeficient mice transplanted with human peripheral blood lymphocytes. Immunology 93:524–532
14. Shinkai Y, Rathbun G, Lam KP, Oltz EM, Stewart V, Mendelsohn M, Charron J, Datta M, Young F, Stall AM et al (1992) RAG-2-deficient mice lack mature lymphocytes owing to inability to initiate V(D)J rearrangement. Cell 68:855–867
15. Mombaerts P, Iacomini J, Johnson RS, Herrup K, Tonegawa S, Papaioannou VE (1992) RAG-1-deficient mice have no mature B and T lymphocytes. Cell 68:869–877
16. Yamauchi T, Takenaka K, Urata S, Shima T, Kikushige Y, Tokuyama T, Iwamoto C,

Nishihara M, Iwasaki H, Miyamoto T, Honma N, Nakao M, Matozaki T, Akashi K (2013) Polymorphic Sirpa is the genetic determinant for NOD-based mouse lines to achieve efficient human cell engraftment. Blood 121:1316–1325

17. Shultz LD, Schweitzer PA, Christianson SW, Gott B, Schweitzer IB, Tennent B, McKenna S, Mobraaten L, Rajan TV, Greiner DL et al (1995) Multiple defects in innate and adaptive immunologic function in NOD/LtSz-scid mice. J Immunol 154:180–191
18. Prochazka M, Gaskins HR, Shultz LD, Leiter EH (1992) The nonobese diabetic scid mouse: model for spontaneous thymomagenesis associated with immunodeficiency. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 89:3290–3294
19. Berney T, Molano RD, Pileggi A, Cattan P, Li H, Ricordi C, Inverardi L (2001) Patterns of engraftment in different strains of immunodeficient mice reconstituted with human peripheral blood lymphocytes. Transplantation 72:133–140
20. Steinsvik TE, Gaarder PI, Aaberge IS, Lovik (1995) Engraftment and humoral immunity in SCID and RAG-2-deficient mice transplanted with human peripheral blood lymphocytes. Scand J Immunol 42:607–616
21. Martin A, Valentine M, Unger P, Yeung SW, Shultz LD, Davies TF (1994) Engraftment of human lymphocytes and thyroid tissue into scid and rag2-deficient mice: absent progression of lymphocytic infiltration. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 79:716–723
22. Shultz LD, Lang PA, Christianson SW, Gott B, Lyons B, Umeda S, Leiter E, Hesselton R, Wagar EJ, Leif JH, Kollet O, Lapidot T, Greiner DL (2000) NOD/LtSz-Rag1null mice: an immunodeficient and radioresistant model for engraftment of human hematolymphoid cells, HIV infection, and adoptive transfer of NOD mouse diabetogenic T cells. J Immunol 164:2496–2507
23. Mosier DE, Stell KL, Gulizia RJ, Torbett BE, Gilmore GL (1993) Homozygous scid/scid;beige/beige mice have low levels of spontaneous or neonatal T cell-induced B cell generation. J Exp Med 177:191–194
24. Christianson SW, Greiner DL, Schweitzer IB, Gott B, Beamer GL, Schweitzer PA, Hesselton RM, Shultz LD (1996) Role of natural killer cells on engraftment of human lymphoid cells and on metastasis of human T-lymphoblastoid leukemia cells in C57BL/6J-scid mice and in C57BL/6J-scid bg mice. Cell Immunol 171:186–199
25. Takizawa Y, Saida T, Tokuda Y, Dohi S, Wang YL, Urano K, Hioki K, Ueyama Y (1997) New immunodeficient (nude-scid, beige-scid) mice as excellent recipients of human skin grafts containing intraepidermal neoplasms. Arch Dermatol Res 289:213–218
26. Hesselton RM, Greiner DL, Mordes JP, Rajan TV, Sullivan JL, Shultz LD (1995) High levels of human peripheral blood mononuclear cell engraftment and enhanced susceptibility to human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection in NOD/LtSz-scid/scid mice. J Infect Dis 172:974–982
27. Lowry PA, Shultz LD, Greiner DL, Hesselton RM, Kittler EL, Tiarks CY, Rao SS, Reilly J, Leif JH, Ramshaw H, Stewart FM, Quesenberry PJ (1996) Improved engraftment of human cord blood stem cells in NOD/LtSz-scid/scid mice after irradiation or multiple-day injections into unirradiated recipients. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant 2:15–23
28. Christianson SW, Greiner DL, Hesselton RA, Leif JH, Wagar EJ, Schweitzer IB, Rajan TV, Gott B, Roopenian DC, Shultz LD (1997) Enhanced human CD4+ T cell engraftment in beta2-microglobulin-deficient NOD-scid mice. J Immunol 158:3578–3586
29. de Sousa M, Reimao R, Lacerda R, Hugo P, Kaufmann SH, Porto G (1994) Iron overload in beta 2-microglobulin-deficient mice. Immunol Lett 39:105–111
30. Ito M, Kobayashi K, Nakahata T (2008) NOD/Shi-scid IL2rgamma(null) (NOG) mice more appropriate for humanized mouse models. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 324:53–76
31. Shultz LD, Brehm MA, Bavari S, Greiner DL (2011) Humanized mice as a preclinical tool for infectious disease and biomedical research. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1245:50–54
32. Brehm MA, Cuthbert A, Yang C, Miller DM, DiIorio P, Laning J, Burzenski L, Gott B, Foreman O, Kavirayani A, Herlihy M, Rossini AA, Shultz LD, Greiner DL (2010) Parameters for establishing humanized mouse models to study human immunity: analysis of human hematopoietic stem cell engraftment in three immunodeficient strains of mice bearing the IL2rgamma(null) mutation. Clin Immunol 135:84–98
33. Lepus CM, Gibson TF, Gerber SA, Kawikova I, Szczepanik M, Hossain J, Ablamunits V, Kirkiles-Smith N, Herold KC, Donis RO, Bothwell AL, Pober JS, Harding MJ (2009) Comparison of human fetal liver, umbilical cord blood, and adult blood hematopoietic stem cell engraftment in NOD-scid/gammac−/−, Balb/c-Rag1−/−gammac−/−, and C.B-17-scid/bg immunodeficient mice. Hum Immunol 70:790–802

34. Takenaka K, Prasolava TK, Wang JC, Mortin-Toth SM, Khalouei S, Gan OI, Dick JE, Danska JS (2007) Polymorphism in Sirpa modulates engraftment of human hematopoietic stem cells. Nat Immunol 8:1313–1323
35. Strowig T, Rongvaux A, Rathinam C, Takizawa H, Borsotti C, Philbrick W, Eynon EE, Manz MG, Flavell RA (2011) Transgenic expression of human signal regulatory protein alpha in Rag2−/−gamma(c)−/− mice improves engraftment of human hematopoietic cells in humanized mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:13218–13223
36. Rongvaux A, Takizawa H, Strowig T, Willinger T, Eynon EE, Flavell RA, Manz MG (2013) Human hemato-lymphoid system mice: current use and future potential for medicine. Annu Rev Immunol 31:635–674
37. Willinger T, Rongvaux A, Strowig T, Manz MG, Flavell RA (2011) Improving human hemato-lymphoid-system mice by cytokine knock-in gene replacement. Trends Immunol 32:321–327
38. van Lent AU, Dontje W, Nagasawa M, Siamari R, Bakker AQ, Pouw SM, Maijoor KA, Weijer K, Cornelissen JJ, Blom B, Di Santo JP, Spits H, Legrand N (2009) IL-7 enhances thymic human T cell development in "human immune system" Rag2−/−IL-2Rgammac−/− mice without affecting peripheral T cell homeostasis. J Immunol 183:7645–7655
39. Huntington ND, Alves NL, Legrand N, Lim A, Strick-Marchand H, Mention JJ, Plet A, Weijer K, Jacques Y, Becker PD, Guzman C, Soussan P, Kremsdorf D, Spits H, Di Santo JP (2011) IL-15 transpresentation promotes both human T-cell reconstitution and T-cell-dependent antibody responses in vivo. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:6217–6222
40. Huntington ND, Legrand N, Alves NL, Jaron B, Weijer K, Plet A, Corcuff E, Mortier E, Jacques Y, Spits H, Di Santo JP (2009) IL-15 trans-presentation promotes human NK cell development and differentiation in vivo. J Exp Med 206:25–34
41. Chen Q, Khoury M, Chen J (2009) Expression of human cytokines dramatically improves reconstitution of specific human-blood lineage cells in humanized mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:21783–21788
42. O'Connell RM, Balazs AB, Rao DS, Kivork C, Yang L, Baltimore D (2010) Lentiviral vector delivery of human interleukin-7 (hIL-7) to human immune system (HIS) mice expands T lymphocyte populations. PLoS One 5: e12009
43. Billerbeck E, Barry WT, Mu K, Dorner M, Rice CM, Ploss A (2011) Development of human CD4+FoxP3+ regulatory T cells in human stem cell factor-, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor-, and interleukin-3-expressing NOD-SCID IL2Rgamma(null) humanized mice. Blood 117:3076–3086
44. Rathinam C, Poueymirou WT, Rojas J, Murphy AJ, Valenzuela DM, Yancopoulos GD, Rongvaux A, Eynon EE, Manz MG, Flavell RA (2011) Efficient differentiation and function of human macrophages in humanized CSF-1 mice. Blood 118:3119–3128
45. Willinger T, Rongvaux A, Takizawa H, Yancopoulos GD, Valenzuela DM, Murphy AJ, Auerbach W, Eynon EE, Stevens S, Manz MG, Flavell RA (2011) Human IL-3/GM-CSF knock-in mice support human alveolar macrophage development and human immune responses in the lung. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:2390–2395
46. Rongvaux A, Willinger T, Takizawa H, Rathinam C, Auerbach W, Murphy AJ, Valenzuela DM, Yancopoulos GD, Eynon EE, Stevens S, Manz MG, Flavell RA (2011) Human thrombopoietin knockin mice efficiently support human hematopoiesis in vivo. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:2378–2383
47. Rongvaux A, Willinger T, Martinek J, Strowig T, Gearty SV, Teichmann LL, Saito Y, Marches F, Halene S, Palucka AK, Manz MG, Flavell RA (2014) Development and function of human innate immune cells in a humanized mouse model. Nat Biotechnol 32:364–372
48. van Rijn RS, Simonetti ER, Hagenbeek A, Hogenes MC, de Weger RA, Canninga-van Dijk MR, Weijer K, Spits H, Storm G, van Bloois L, Rijkers G, Martens AC, Ebeling SB (2003) A new xenograft model for graft-versus-host disease by intravenous transfer of human peripheral blood mononuclear cells in RAG2−/− gammac−/− double-mutant mice. Blood 102:2522–2531
49. Nevozhay D, Opolski A (2006) Key factors in experimental mouse hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Arch Immunol Ther Exp (Warsz) 54:253–269
50. Becker PD, Legrand N, van Geelen CM, Noerder M, Huntington ND, Lim A, Yasuda E, Diehl SA, Scheeren FA, Ott M, Weijer K, Wedemeyer H, Di Santo JP, Beaumont T, Guzman CA, Spits H (2010) Generation of human antigen-specific monoclonal IgM antibodies using vaccinated "human immune system" mice. PLoS One 5
51. Villaudy J, Schotte R, Legrand N, Spits H (2014) Critical assessment of human antibody generation in humanized mouse models. J Immunol Methods 410C:18–27

52. Huntington ND, Alves NL, Legrand N, Lim A, Strick-Marchand H, Plet A, Weijer K, Jacques Y, Spits H, Di Santo JP (2011) Autonomous and extrinsic regulation of thymopoiesis in human immune system (HIS) mice. Eur J Immunol 41:2883–2893
53. Strowig T, Gurer C, Ploss A, Liu YF, Arrey F, Sashihara J, Koo G, Rice CM, Young JW, Chadburn A, Cohen JI, Munz C (2009) Priming of protective T cell responses against virus-induced tumors in mice with human immune system components. J Exp Med 206:1423–1434
54. Billerbeck E, Horwitz JA, Labitt RN, Donovan BM, Vega K, Budell WC, Koo GC, Rice CM, Ploss A (2013) Characterization of human antiviral adaptive immune responses during hepatotropic virus infection in HLA-transgenic human immune system mice. J Immunol 191:1753–1764
55. Serra-Hassoun M, Bourgine M, Boniotto M, Berges J, Langa F, Michel ML, Freitas AA, Garcia S (2014) Human hematopoietic reconstitution and HLA-restricted responses in nonpermissive alymphoid mice. J Immunol 193:1504–1511
56. Lavender KJ, Messer RJ, Race B, Hasenkrug KJ (2014) Production of bone marrow, liver, thymus (BLT) humanized mice on the C57BL/6 Rag2(−/−)gammac(−/−) CD47(−/−) background. J Immunol Methods 407:127–134
57. Lavender KJ, Pang WW, Messer RJ, Duley AK, Race B, Phillips K, Scott D, Peterson KE, Chan CK, Dittmer U, Dudek T, Allen TM, Weissman IL, Hasenkrug KJ (2013) BLT-humanized C57BL/6 Rag2−/−gammac−/− CD47−/− mice are resistant to GVHD and develop B- and T-cell immunity to HIV infection. Blood 122:4013–4020
58. Cosgun KN, Rahmig S, Mende N, Reinke S, Hauber I, Schafer C, Petzold A, Weisbach H, Heidkamp G, Purbojo A, Cesnjevar R, Platz A, Bornhauser M, Schmitz M, Dudziak D, Hauber J, Kirberg J, Waskow C (2014) Kit regulates HSC engraftment across the human-mouse species barrier. Cell Stem Cell 15:227–238
59. Denton PW, Nochi T, Lim A, Krisko JF, Martinez-Torres F, Choudhary SK, Wahl A, Olesen R, Zou W, Di Santo JP, Margolis DM, Garcia JV (2012) IL-2 receptor gamma-chain molecule is critical for intestinal T-cell reconstitution in humanized mice. Mucosal Immunol 5:555–566
60. Nochi T, Denton PW, Wahl A, Garcia JV (2013) Cryptopatches are essential for the development of human GALT. Cell Rep 3:1874–1884
61. Shultz LD, Brehm MA, Garcia-Martinez JV, Greiner DL (2012) Humanized mice for immune system investigation: progress, promise and challenges. Nat Rev Immunol 12:786–798
62. Tary-Lehmann M, Saxon A, Lehmann PV (1995) The human immune system in hu-PBL-SCID mice. Immunol Today 16:529–533
63. Ito R, Katano I, Kawai K, Hirata H, Ogura T, Kamisako T, Eto T, Ito M (2009) Highly sensitive model for xenogenic GVHD using severe immunodeficient NOG mice. Transplantation 87:1654–1658
64. Nervi B, Rettig MP, Ritchey JK, Wang HL, Bauer G, Walker J, Bonyhadi ML, Berenson RJ, Prior JL, Piwnica-Worms D, Nolta JA, DiPersio JF (2007) Factors affecting human T cell engraftment, trafficking, and associated xenogeneic graft-vs-host disease in NOD/SCID beta2mnull mice. Exp Hematol 35:1823–1838
65. King MA, Covassin L, Brehm MA, Racki W, Pearson T, Leif J, Laning J, Fodor W, Foreman O, Burzenski L, Chase TH, Gott B, Rossini AA, Bortell R, Shultz LD, Greiner DL (2009) Human peripheral blood leucocyte non-obese diabetic-severe combined immunodeficiency interleukin-2 receptor gamma chain gene mouse model of xenogeneic graft-versus-host-like disease and the role of host major histocompatibility complex. Clin Exp Immunol 157:104–118
66. Martino G, Anastasi J, Feng J, Mc Shan C, DeGroot L, Quintans J, Grimaldi LM (1993) The fate of human peripheral blood lymphocytes after transplantation into SCID mice. Eur J Immunol 23:1023–1028
67. Ali N, Flutter B, Sanchez Rodriguez R, Sharif-Paghaleh E, Barber LD, Lombardi G, Nestle FO (2012) Xenogeneic graft-versus-host-disease in NOD-scid IL-2Rgammanull mice display a T-effector memory phenotype. PLoS One 7:e44219
68. Schroeder MA, DiPersio JF (2011) Mouse models of graft-versus-host disease: advances and limitations. Dis Model Mech 4:318–333
69. Lee WP, Yaremchuk MJ, Pan YC, Randolph MA, Tan CM, Weiland AJ (1991) Relative antigenicity of components of a vascularized limb allograft. Plast Reconstr Surg 87:401–411
70. Alegre ML, Peterson LJ, Jeyarajah DR, Weiser M, Bluestone JA, Thistlethwaite JR (1994) Severe combined immunodeficient mice engrafted with human splenocytes have functional human T cells and reject human allografts. J Immunol 153:2738–2749

71. Murray AG, Petzelbauer P, Hughes CC, Costa J, Askenase P, Pober JS (1994) Human T-cell-mediated destruction of allogeneic dermal microvessels in a severe combined immunodeficient mouse. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 91:9146–9150
72. Kawamura T, Niguma T, Fechner JH Jr, Wolber R, Beeskau MA, Hullett DA, Sollinger HW, Burlingham WJ (1992) Chronic human skin graft rejection in severe combined immunodeficient mice engrafted with human PBL from an HLA-presensitized donor. Transplantation 53:659–665
73. Roder JC, Helfand SL, Werkmeister J, McGarry R, Beaumont TJ, Duwe A (1982) Oxygen intermediates are triggered early in the cytolytic pathway of human NK cells. Nature 298:569–572
74. Kirkiles-Smith NC, Harding MJ, Shepherd BR, Fader SA, Yi T, Wang Y, McNiff JM, Snyder EL, Lorber MI, Tellides G, Pober JS (2009) Development of a humanized mouse model to study the role of macrophages in allograft injury. Transplantation 87:189–197
75. De Rosa SC, Herzenberg LA, Herzenberg LA, Roederer M (2001) 11-Color, 13-parameter flow cytometry: identification of human naive T cells by phenotype, function, and T-cell receptor diversity. Nat Med 7:245–248
76. Shiao SL, Kirkiles-Smith NC, Shepherd BR, McNiff JM, Carr EJ, Pober JS (2007) Human effector memory CD4+ T cells directly recognize allogeneic endothelial cells in vitro and in vivo. J Immunol 179:4397–4404
77. Racki WJ, Covassin L, Brehm M, Pino S, Ignotz R, Dunn R, Laning J, Graves SK, Rossini AA, Shultz LD, Greiner DL (2010) NOD-scid IL2rgamma(null) mouse model of human skin transplantation and allograft rejection. Transplantation 89:527–536
78. Issa F, Hester J, Goto R, Nadig SN, Goodacre TE, Wood K (2010) Ex vivo-expanded human regulatory T cells prevent the rejection of skin allografts in a humanized mouse model. Transplantation 90:1321–1327
79. Putnam AL, Safinia N, Medvec A, Laszkowska M, Wray M, Mintz MA, Trotta E, Szot GL, Liu W, Lares A, Lee K, Laing A, Lechler RI, Riley JL, Bluestone JA, Lombardi G, Tang Q (2013) Clinical grade manufacturing of human alloantigen-reactive regulatory T cells for use in transplantation. Am J Transplant 13:3010–3020
80. Sagoo P, Ali N, Garg G, Nestle FO, Lechler RI, Lombardi G (2011) Human regulatory T cells with alloantigen specificity are more potent inhibitors of alloimmune skin graft damage than polyclonal regulatory T cells. Sci Transl Med 3:83ra42
81. Fiorina P, Secchi A (2007) Pancreatic islet cell transplant for treatment of diabetes. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 36:999–1013, ix
82. Ryan EA, Paty BW, Senior PA, Bigam D, Alfadhli E, Kneteman NM, Lakey JR, Shapiro AM (2005) Five-year follow-up after clinical islet transplantation. Diabetes 54:2060–2069
83. Wood KJ, Bushell A, Hester J (2012) Regulatory immune cells in transplantation. Nat Rev Immunol 12:417–430
84. Fiorina P, Voltarelli J, Zavazava N (2011) Immunological applications of stem cells in type 1 diabetes. Endocr Rev 32:725–754
85. Xiao F, Ma L, Zhao M, Huang G, Mirenda V, Dorling A, Lechler R, Lombardi G (2014) Ex vivo expanded human regulatory T cells delay islet allograft rejection via inhibiting islet-derived monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 production in CD34+ stem cells-reconstituted NOD-scid IL2rgammanull mice. PLoS One 9:e90387
86. London NJ, Thirdborough SM, Swift SM, Bell PR, James RF (1991) The diabetic "human reconstituted" severe combined immunodeficient (SCID-hu) mouse: a model for isogeneic, allogeneic, and xenogeneic human islet transplantation. Transplant Proc 23:749
87. King M, Pearson T, Shultz LD, Leif J, Bottino R, Trucco M, Atkinson MA, Wasserfall C, Herold KC, Woodland RT, Schmidt MR, Woda BA, Thompson MJ, Rossini AA, Greiner DL (2008) A new Hu-PBL model for the study of human islet alloreactivity based on NOD-scid mice bearing a targeted mutation in the IL-2 receptor gamma chain gene. Clin Immunol 126:303–314
88. Wu DC, Hester J, Nadig SN, Zhang W, Trzonkowski P, Gray D, Hughes S, Johnson P, Wood KJ (2013) Ex vivo expanded human regulatory T cells can prolong survival of a human islet allograft in a humanized mouse model. Transplantation 96:707–716
89. Matsumura T, Kametani Y, Ando K, Hirano Y, Katano I, Ito R, Shiina M, Tsukamoto H, Saito Y, Tokuda Y, Kato S, Ito M, Motoyoshi K, Habu S (2003) Functional CD5+ B cells develop predominantly in the spleen of NOD/SCID/gammac(null) (NOG) mice transplanted either with human umbilical cord blood, bone marrow, or mobilized peripheral blood CD34+ cells. Exp Hematol 31:789–797
90. Baenziger S, Tussiwand R, Schlaepfer E, Mazzucchelli L, Heikenwalder M, Kurrer MO, Behnke S, Frey J, Oxenius A, Joller H,

Aguzzi A, Manz MG, Speck RF (2006) Disseminated and sustained HIV infection in CD34+ cord blood cell-transplanted Rag2−/−gamma c−/− mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:15951–15956

91. Shultz LD, Saito Y, Najima Y, Tanaka S, Ochi T, Tomizawa M, Doi T, Sone A, Suzuki N, Fujiwara H, Yasukawa M, Ishikawa F (2010) Generation of functional human T-cell subsets with HLA-restricted immune responses in HLA class I expressing NOD/SCID/IL2r gamma(null) humanized mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107:13022–13027
92. Watanabe Y, Takahashi T, Okajima A, Shiokawa M, Ishii N, Katano I, Ito R, Ito M, Minegishi M, Minegishi N, Tsuchiya S, Sugamura K (2009) The analysis of the functions of human B and T cells in humanized NOD/shi-scid/gammac(null) (NOG) mice (hu-HSC NOG mice). Int Immunol 21:843–858
93. Danner R, Chaudhari SN, Rosenberger J, Surls J, Richie TL, Brumeanu TD, Casares S (2011) Expression of HLA class II molecules in humanized NOD.Rag1KO. IL2RgcKO mice is critical for development and function of human T and B cells. PLoS One 6:e19826
94. Chen D, Zhang N, Fu S, Schroppel B, Guo Q, Garin A, Lira SA, Bromberg JS (2006) CD4+ CD25+ regulatory T-cells inhibit the islet innate immune response and promote islet engraftment. Diabetes 55:1011–1021
95. Harrison OJ, Powrie FM (2013) Regulatory T cells and immune tolerance in the intestine. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol 5
96. Libby P, Pober JS (2001) Chronic rejection. Immunity 14:387–397
97. Nadig SN, Wieckiewicz J, Wu DC, Warnecke G, Zhang W, Luo S, Schiopu A, Taggart DP, Wood KJ (2010) In vivo prevention of transplant arteriosclerosis by ex vivo-expanded human regulatory T cells. Nat Med 16:809–813
98. Hester J, Schiopu A, Nadig SN, Wood KJ (2012) Low-dose rapamycin treatment increases the ability of human regulatory T cells to inhibit transplant arteriosclerosis in vivo. Am J Transplant 12:2008–2016
99. Tellides G, Tereb DA, Kirkiles-Smith NC, Kim RW, Wilson JH, Schechner JS, Lorber MI, Pober JS (2000) Interferon-gamma elicits arteriosclerosis in the absence of leukocytes. Nature 403:207–211
100. Lorber MI, Wilson JH, Robert ME, Schechner JS, Kirkiles N, Qian HY, Askenase PW, Tellides G, Pober JS (1999) Human allogeneic vascular rejection after arterial transplantation and peripheral lymphoid reconstitution in severe combined immunodeficient mice. Transplantation 67:897–903
101. Pober JS, Bothwell AL, Lorber MI, McNiff JM, Schechner JS, Tellides G (2003) Immunopathology of human T cell responses to skin, artery and endothelial cell grafts in the human peripheral blood lymphocyte/severe combined immunodeficient mouse. Springer Semin Immunopathol 25:167–180
102. Abele-Ohl S, Leis M, Mahmoudian S, Weyand M, Stamminger T, Ensminger SM (2010) Rag2−/− gamma-chain−/− mice as hosts for human vessel transplantation and allogeneic human leukocyte reconstitution. Transpl Immunol 23:59–64
103. Feng G, Nadig SN, Backdahl L, Beck S, Francis RS, Schiopu A, Whatcott A, Wood KJ, Bushell A (2011) Functional regulatory T cells produced by inhibiting cyclic nucleotide phosphodiesterase type 3 prevent allograft rejection. Sci Transl Med 3:83ra40

Chapter 12

Dextran Sulfate Sodium (DSS)-Induced Acute Colitis in the Rat

Jérôme C. Martin, Gaëlle Bériou, and Régis Josien

Abstract

Inflammatory bowel diseases (IBDs) are complex multifactorial disease thought to result from inappropriate immune responses to the gut microbiota, in genetically susceptible individuals, under the influence of environmental factors. Among the different animal models developed to help in understanding IBDs pathophysiological mechanisms as well as to achieve pharmacological preclinical studies, the dextran sulfate sodium (DSS)-induced colitis model is the most widely used because of its simplicity, cost-effectiveness, and similarity with human IBDs. This section provides with a detailed protocol that we validated in our laboratory to perform DSS-induced acute colitis in the Sprague-Dawley (SPD) rat.

Key words Colitis, Animal models, Rats, Dextran sodium sulfate, Inflammatory bowel disease, Crohn's disease, Ulcerative colitis

1 Introduction

Crohn's disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC), the two major clinically defined forms of inflammatory bowel diseases (IBDs), are chronic remittent or progressive disorders of the gastrointestinal tract, with an estimated prevalence of 250 cases per 100,000 individuals in Western countries [1, 2]. Both CD and UC are characterized by intestinal inflammation and epithelial injury and are mediated by shared and distinct inflammatory pathways [3]. Etiology of IBDs is still not fully understood but it is widely acknowledged that they result from inappropriate and/or deregulated immune responses to the commensal gut microbiota, in genetically predisposed individuals and under the influence of environmental lifestyle factors [3]. Understanding these complex interactions is of importance in order to develop new targeted therapies of clinical interest that are still deeply of need. To achieve this, animal modelsof IBDs represent contributive tools as they allow manipulations and interventions that are not possible with human studies [4]. Among them, the dextran sulfate sodium

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_12,

(DSS)-induced colitis model is the most widely used one as beyond its shared characteristics with human IBDs etiology, pathogenesis, and therapeutic response, it is relatively simple, rapid to set up, and cost effective.

DSS is a sulfated polysaccharide whose colitogenic properties were first reported in hamsters [5] and extrapolated a few years later to mice [6] and rats [7, 8]. The exact mechanisms through which DSS induces intestinal inflammation are unclear but may be the result of direct damage of the monolayer of epithelial cells in the colon, leading to the crossing of intestinal contents (e.g., commensal bacteria and their products) into underlying tissue and therefore induction of inflammation [9]. Clinical manifestations of the colitis usually include watery diarrhea, occult blood in stools, and weight loss. In the acute model, rectal bleeding and diarrhea may occur as early as 2–3 days following DSS administration and inflammation is fully installed within 6–7 days. Animals then recover if DSS administration is stopped, allowing the study of gut epithelium healing. Weight loss starts 4–5 days following the initiation of DSS-treatment and continues over the next few days, including 4–5 days after DSS removal. Importantly, the DSS model is not dependent on adaptive immunity and is thus useful to analyze the contribution of the innate immune system to the installation of intestinal inflammation [10]. Inflammation is normally limited to the colon with some species-dependent variations [9]. Histopathological findings closely resemble that of human IBDs, especially UC [6], but the inflammatory environment created includes features of both CD and UC [11]. Finally, the DSS-induced colitis has been validated as a relevant model for testing of therapeutic compounds of interest to treat human disease [12].

In this chapter we describe the procedure we have validated in our laboratory to perform DSS-induced colitis in SPD rats.

2 Materials

1. Sprague-Dawley male rats (Centre d'Elevage Janvier, Le Genest-St Isle, France) 7–9 weeks old (weighing 170–200 g) (*see* **Note 1**).
2. 4.5–6.0 % w/v dextran sulfate sodium (DSS) salt (molecular weight 35,000–55,000 g/mol; TdB Consultancy AB, Uppsala, Sweden) in autoclaved drinking water.
3. Animal balance, accurate to 0.1 g.
4. Rat cages fitted with a water bottle.
5. Anesthesia induction chamber (4.0 % isoflurane, airflow 1 L/min).
6. Euthanasia induction chamber (CO_2, airflow 3 L/min).
7. 70 % Ethanol.

8. Sterile forceps.
9. 5 % PBS-buffered formalin.
10. Permanent ink marker for rat identification.
11. Scalpel.
12. PBS.
13. Small scissors.
14. Petri dishes.
15. Ice.

3 Methods

3.1 Prepare Rats for DSS-Induced Colitis

1. On the first day of DSS administration, house SPD rats at no more than four per cage. Rats should have ad libitum access to food and water.
2. Label each rat on the tail using the permanent ink marker (or any other convenient method if preferred). The DSS model is highly variable and labeling allows to follow-up each individual rat susceptibility to colitis.
3. Weigh all the rats to determine baseline weight. Try to equilibrate average weights to avoid significant differences between each group to be tested (e.g., water controls and DSS-treated rats).

3.2 Prepare the DSS Solution to Be Administered

1. Dissolve 5.5 % (w/v) DSS powder in the drinking autoclaved water of experimental rats. Stir at room temperature with a magnetic bar until a limpid solution is achieved. As DSS stability is better in a dry form, only prepare the volume required for the experiment (consider 40 mL/rat/day) (*see* **Note 2**).
2. Fill the cage water bottle with 400 mL of the DSS solution or water depending on the groups. Unused DSS solution can be stored in the fridge for up to 7 days.
3. Observe DSS solution or water intake to make sure that equal amounts are consumed in each groups. Refill cage water bottle with adapted drinking solution every 2–3 days (*see* **Note 3**).

3.3 Daily Monitor Rats for Disease Severity

(a) Measure body weight each day and calculate the % of weight loss as compared to baseline weight using the following formula (*see* **Note 4**):

(b) $[(\text{weight day } X - \text{baseline weight}) / \text{baseline weight}] \times 100$.

(c) Place each rat in an individual empty cage to collect and score feces for consistency and blood (Table 1).

3.4 Sacrifice Rats and Collect Organs

1. On the day of sacrifice, remove the food from cages 4 h before euthanasia. Rats should first be anesthetized in an induction chamber containing 4.0 % isoflurane (airflow 1 L/min).

Table 1
Clinical scoring of the DSS-induced acute colitis

Feces consistency	Score	Blood in feces	Score	Total
Normal	0	No blood	0	Consistency + blood scores
Wet	1	Bloody stools and/or blood around the anus	1	
Soft	2	Severe bleeding	2	
Water diarrhea	3	–	–	

Once unconscious, rats are transferred in a chamber saturated with CO_2 (airflow 3 L/min), according to approved institutional animal ethical protocols (*see* **Note 5**).

2. Collect blood for serum analyses.
3. Once sacrificed, spray 70 % ethanol onto the ventral face of the rat and carefully perform a midline incision to open the peritoneal cavity.
4. Remove and weigh the spleen (*see* **Note 6**).
5. If needed, remove mesenteric lymph nodes for cellular analyses and bacterial translocation assessment.
6. Carefully remove the colon by cutting just after the ileocecal junction and at the terminal end of the rectum.
7. Take a representative picture of colons from rats belonging to each different group.
8. Measure colon length (*see* **Note 7**).
9. Gently remove fecal content by manual displacement with forceps and by flushing with ice-cold PBS using a blunt needle attached to a syringe.
10. Cut colon pieces depending on need (*see* **Note 8**).
11. For histopathological analysis, cut a colon fragment of about 1 cm and carefully open it on the mesenteric face using small scissors. Remove diet content, feces, and blood by gently shaking the fragment in a petri dish filled with ice-cold PBS. Place the fragment in 5 % neutral buffered formalin for at least 24 h before treating it (*see* **Note 9**).
12. For RT-qPCR or WB analyses snap freeze tissues in liquid azote and store them –80 °C until use (*see* **Note 10**).
13. Colons can be cultured ex vivo to measure inflammatory mediators secretion. Prepare colon sections as in 11 but wash them in HBSS with 1.0 % penicillin and streptomycin. Measure

sample weight using a balance accurate to 0.1 mg. Cut the colon section in 1–2 mm fragments and transfer them in a 24-well plate containing 1.0 mL of serum-free RPMI 1640 medium with 1.0 % penicillin and streptomycin. Incubate 24 h a 37 °C, 5.0 % CO_2 incubator. Collect supernatants and centrifuge 10 min at 20,000 × *g*, 4 °C. Store at −80 °C until analysis (*see* **Note 11**).

4 Notes

1. In our experience DSS-colitis develops more efficiently and reproducibly in young rats that in older ones, probably due to food and water requirement considerations. Even if colitis can develop in both male and female rats, more robust colitis are obtained with males.
2. Severity of the colitis is highly variable, depending on rats strains used as well as vendors and housing facilities [8, 13]. Variability is also dependent on the DSS providers and manufacturing lots. It is thus recommended to purchase DSS in bulk from one given lot and to perform preliminary experiments to determine the optimal dose of DSS to be administered for inducing a robust colitis over a period of 7 days. Be careful that DSS MW is comprised between 35,000 and 55,000 g/mol, as it is also a critical parameter for colitis induction. For SPD rats, 4.5–6 % DSS doses should be tested to obtain a slow and steady onset of colitis.
3. Usually DSS is administered for 7 days to induce an acute colitis and then replaced by regular water to allow healing to occur. A complete recovery can be observed by day 20.
4. A body weight loss >20 % reflects a highly severe disease and rats should be sacrificed.
5. For analyzing the peak of acute colitis, sacrifice should be performed at days 6–7. After replacing the DSS solution by regular water, rats will continue to lose weight until days 10–12 but the healing process would have begun. To better analyze the healing phase, sacrifice rats between days 14 and 20.
6. Increased spleen weight can reflect the severity of inflammation. Culturing spleen lysates on LB agar is also helpful to appreciate bacterial translocations. Similarly, liver lysates can also be cultured.
7. In our experience, colon length from 9 weeks old rats in the water group is usually around 20 cm at sacrifice whereas it is around 14–16 cm in the DSS-treated group.
8. In SPD rats, DSS-induced colitis is more prominent in the distal part of the colon. When comparing different groups of

Table 2
Histopathological scoring of DSS-induced colitis

Aspect	Score
Normal	0
Slight increase in cellularity	1
Increased cellularity including neutrophils, mild edema	2
Focal erosions, ulcerations of the mucosa	3
Large and or multifocal mucosal ulcerations	4
Loss of mucosal architecture	5

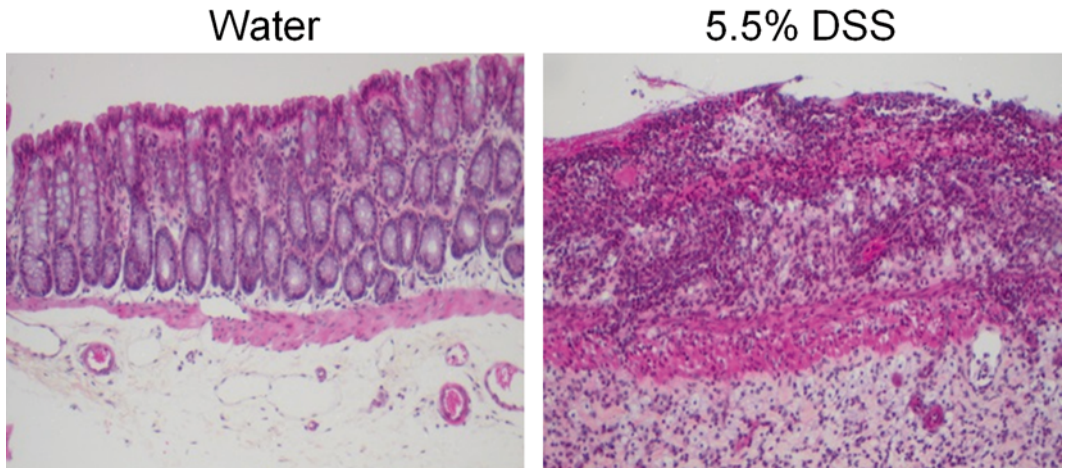


Fig. 1 Representative H&E staining of colon sections from water controls (*left panel*) or 5.5 % DSS-treated (*right panel*) rats during 7 days

animals, make sure that analyzed samples are coming from the same colon region.

9. Determination of histopathological severity should be performed in a blinded fashion by a trained pathologist on hematoxylin and eosin-stained sections. Histological scoring can be performed as indicated in Table 2. Figure 1 illustrates H&E sections of distal colon in water and DSS-treated animals.
10. DSS has been reported to inhibit the activity of both reverse transcriptase and Taq polymerase enzymes, epically when colons are removed before switching the DSS solution to regular water [14]. It is thus recommended to extract RNA with Qiagen RNeasy Mini Kit (Qiagen, Germantown, Maryland) or to remove DSS as described elsewhere [14].
11. Measuring sample weight is important here to report cytokine production by mg of tissue.

References

1. Baumgart DC, Sandborn WJ (2007) Inflammatory bowel disease: clinical aspects and established and evolving therapies. Lancet 369:1641–1657
2. Loftus EV Jr (2004) Clinical epidemiology of inflammatory bowel disease: Incidence, prevalence, and environmental influences. Gastroenterology 126:1504–1517
3. Kaser A, Zeissig S, Blumberg RS (2010) Inflammatory bowel disease. Ann Rev Immunol 28:573–621
4. Elson CO, Sartor RB, Tennyson GS et al (1995) Experimental models of inflammatory bowel disease. Gastroenterology 109: 1344–1367
5. Ohkusa T (1985) Production of experimental ulcerative colitis in hamsters by dextran sulfate sodium and changes in intestinal microflora. Nihon Shokakibyo Gakkai Zasshi 82:1327–1336
6. Okayasu I, Hatakeyama S, Yamada M et al (1990) A novel method in the induction of reliable experimental acute and chronic ulcerative colitis in mice. Gastroenterology 98:694–702
7. Kishimoto S, Kobayashi H, Shimizu S et al (1992) Changes of colonic vasoactive intestinal peptide and cholinergic activity in rats with chemical colitis. Dig Dis Sci 37:1729–1737
8. Gaudio E, Taddei G, Vetuschi A et al (1999) Dextran sulfate sodium (DSS) colitis in rats: clinical, structural, and ultrastructural aspects. Dig Dis Sci 44:1458–1475
9. Solomon L, Mansor S, Mallon P et al (2010) The dextran sulphate sodium (DSS) model of colitis: an overview. Comp Clin Pathol 19: 235–239
10. Dieleman LA, Ridwan BU, Tennyson GS et al (1994) Dextran sulfate sodium-induced colitis occurs in severe combined immunodeficient mice. Gastroenterology 107:1643–1652
11. te Velde AA, de Kort F, Sterrenburg E et al (2007) Comparative analysis of colonic gene expression of three experimental colitis models mimicking inflammatory bowel disease. Inflamm Bowel Dis 13:325–330
12. Melgar S, Karlsson L, Rehnström E et al (2008) Validation of murine dextran sulfate sodium-induced colitis using four therapeutic agents for human inflammatory bowel disease. Int Immunopharmacol 8:836–844
13. Tamaru T, Kobayashi H, Kishimoto S et al (1993) Histochemical study of colonic cancer in experimental colitis of rats. Dig Dis Sci 38: 529–537
14. Viennois E, Chen F, Laroui H et al (2013) Dextran sodium sulfate inhibits the activities of both polymerase and reverse transcriptase: lithium chloride purification, a rapid and efficient technique to purify RNA. BMC Res Notes 6:360

Chapter 13

Corneal Immunosuppressive Mechanisms, Anterior Chamber-Associated Immune Deviation (ACAID) and Their Role in Allograft Rejection

Oliver Treacy, Gerry Fahy, Thomas Ritter, and Lisa O'Flynn

Abstract

Corneal transplantation is the most frequently performed transplant procedure in humans. Human leukocyte antigen matching, while imperative for other types of organ transplants, is usually not performed before cornea transplantation. With the use of topical steroid immunosuppressants, which are subsequently tailed off to almost zero, most corneal transplants will not be rejected in recipients with low risk of graft rejection. This phenomenon has been described as immune privilege by Medawar many years ago. However, this immune privilege is relative and can be easily eroded, e.g. by postoperative nonspecific inflammation or other causes of corneal or ocular inflammation. Interestingly, corneas that are at high risk of rejection have a higher failure rate than other organs. Considerable progress has been made in recent years to provide a better understanding of corneal immune privilege. This chapter will review current knowledge on ocular immunosuppressive mechanisms including anterior chamber-associated immune deviation and discuss their role(s) in corneal allograft rejection. Ultimately, this evolving information will be of benefit in developing therapeutic strategies to prevent corneal transplant rejection.

Key words Cornea, Transplantation, ACAID, Immunosuppression, Tregs

1 Introduction

The cornea is one of only a select few tissues in the body that enjoy immune-privileged status by maintaining immunological ignorance (others include the brain, testes, the pregnant uterus, and the anterior chamber (AC) of the eye). Any corneal inflammatory events, if allowed to proceed unabated, may break down immunological barriers. The most serious consequence for the cornea is immunological destruction of corneal endothelial cells, which have no capacity to regenerate. The result of this rejection process is corneal edema, corneal opacification, and blindness. The concept of relative immune privilege, as applied to the cornea, is supported by observations of high survival rates of corneal allografts without routine human leukocyte antigen (HLA)

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_13,

matching between donor and host tissues and the use of only locally applied topical corticosteroids, as opposed to using systemic immunosuppressants which would be standard for other organ transplants. Corneal allograft-associated immune privilege, however, cannot be ascribed to one single mediator or mechanism and is likely to be the result of multiple anatomical, physiological, and immunomodulatory properties inherent to the allograft itself and also the host graft bed [1].

2 Physiological and Anatomical Properties of the Immune-Privileged Cornea

Physiologically, the normal, healthy cornea is both avascular and devoid of lymphatic vessels, thereby shielding itself from immune-mediated attack by denying potentially harmful infiltrating immune cells getting access to the graft and preventing transport of antigens and antigen-presenting cells (APCs) to secondary lymphoid tissues, such as the draining lymph nodes (DLN) [2]. It has been shown that maintenance of corneal avascularity is due to constitutive expression of soluble vascular endothelial growth factor receptor-1 (VEGFR-1) by epithelial cells [3]; with another study demonstrating that administration of VEGF receptor-3 (VEGFR-3) can also suppress hemangiogenesis [4]. Another naturally occurring angiogenesis inhibitor is endostatin. Endostatin can inhibit endothelial cell functions by several means, including attenuation of VEGF receptor signaling and its subsequent binding to $\alpha_5\beta_1$ integrins [5]. Furthermore, Tan and colleagues could show that both syngeneic and allogeneic corneal grafts produce endostatin and while levels remained high in syngeneic grafts, they began to decrease in allografts 10 days post-transplantation. This correlated with early recruitment of allo-specific T cells into grafts, which led to the destruction of endostatin-producing cells and ultimately allograft rejection in 75 % of cases [6]. The authors also found that local administration of exogenous endostatin treatment could attenuate allograft rejection.

Lymphangiogenesis, on the other hand, is suppressed by secretion of soluble VEGFR-2 (which inhibits VEGF-C activity) by keratocytes and corneal epithelial cells but, interestingly, does not affect hemangiogenesis [7]. In this study, the authors showed that soluble VEGFR-2 could inhibit lymphatic vessel infiltration into "high-risk" corneal grafts, that is, graft beds in which intrastromal sutures had been placed 2 weeks prior to transplantation to induce lymphangiogenesis and hemangiogenesis. Their results also showed that a single intracorneal injection of soluble VEGFR-2 was sufficient to significantly prolong corneal allograft survival compared to untreated recipients [7].

Another important factor with regard to corneal immune privilege is the weak or absence of expression of MHC class I

and II antigens, respectively, by corneal epithelial, stromal, and endothelial cells. This has the effect of limiting immunogenicity to foreign antigens as the capacity for antigen uptake is attenuated [8].

3 Soluble and Cell Membrane-Bound Mediators of Corneal Immunosuppression

In addition to the physiological and anatomical properties outlined above, the cornea also expresses numerous cell membrane-bound immunomodulatory molecules and molecules capable of inducing apoptosis of effector immune cells. These include Fas ligand (FasL, CD95L), complement regulatory proteins (CRPs), tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL), programmed death-ligand 1 (PD-L1), and MHC-Ib. FasL is an apoptosis-inducing molecule expressed by a number of ocular cells, including corneal epithelial and endothelial cells and can induce apoptosis of infiltrating Fas receptor (CD95)-expressing effector T cells and neutrophils [9, 10], thereby protecting the corneal graft from immune-mediated rejection. The importance of FasL was highlighted by studies in which murine corneal allografts with defective FasL expression, when transplanted, displayed a much higher incidence of immune-mediated rejection when compared to wild-type controls [11, 12]. Similar to FasL, corneal cells also express PD-L1 which, following engagement with its receptor programmed death (PD)-1 on T cells, leads to inhibition of T-cell proliferation and induction of apoptosis as well as reduced interferon (IFN)-γ secretion, thereby promoting corneal allograft survival [1, 13–15]. Further evidence supporting the key role of PD-L1 in determining the fate of corneal allografts comes by way of a study by Shen and co-workers where they reported that murine C57BL/6 PD-L1$^{-/-}$ allografts were more susceptible to rejection than wild-type allografts when placed into Balb/c hosts [14]. Furthermore, we have shown recently that lentivirus-mediated overexpression of PD-L1 on donor corneas leads to >80 % allograft survival compared to just 20 % in untreated allogeneic control grafts underlining the importance of this molecule in protecting corneal tissues from immune response [16]. TRAIL is another pro-apoptotic molecule that, similar to FasL and PD-L1, can induce apoptosis of inflammatory cells. However, although corneal cells do express TRAIL [17, 18] and evidence suggests adenovirus-mediated overexpression of TRAIL can prolong murine corneal allograft survival [19], no reports have yet been published establishing a link between TRAIL expression and preservation of corneal immune privilege specifically. CRPs play a vital role in protecting cells from complement-mediated damage and are expressed predominantly by the corneal epithelium [20]. Soluble CRPs are also present in physiologically relevant quantities in the aqueous humor (AH) that bathes the corneal endothelium and function to protect

this pivotal nonregenerative cell layer from complement-mediated lysis [20, 21]. Additionally, some CRPs, such as decay accelerating factor (DAF, also known as CD55), can disrupt APC:T cell interactions and contribute to corneal allograft immune privilege in this way [22] . Indeed, Esposito and colleagues [22] demonstrated in a murine corneal transplant model that when either the donor cornea or the recipient graft bed is deficient in DAF, rapid rejection ensues.

The AH contains a large amount of immunosuppressive molecules that contribute significantly to maintaining immunological ignorance. These include anti-inflammatory cytokines (e.g. tissue growth factor (TGF)-β2), complement inhibitors [21], neuropeptides, alpha-melanocyte stimulating hormone, vasoactive intestinal peptide, and calcitonin gene-related peptide [23–26]. A soluble version of FasL is also found in the AH and is an important endogenous immunosuppressant as it can suppress neutrophil recruitment and activation [27, 28]. As mentioned earlier, corneal cells only weakly express MHC class I molecules, if at all and this is an important characteristic in maintaining immune privilege. However, the corneal cells may become a target for natural killer (NK) cells, as these cells are programmed to target and kill any cell that does not express MHC class I molecules [29]. The cells at highest risk of attack are those comprising the corneal endothelium and it has been shown that rats undergoing corneal allograft rejection have NK cells present in their AH, which bathes the endothelium [30]. To counteract this possible NK cell-mediated cytolysis, however, the AH contains physiologically relevant levels of TGF-β and macrophage migration inhibitory factor, both of which are capable of neutralizing the effects of NK cells [31–34].

4 Anterior Chamber-Associated Immune Deviation and Corneal Allograft Fate

As described previously, key mechanisms which characterize ocular immune privilege are the unique anatomical and cellular barriers of the eye and the expression of key immunomodulatory molecules including but not limited to interleukin (IL)-10, TGF-β, FasL, and PD-L1 [9, 12, 14, 16, 20, 35–37]. In addition to maintaining a local immunosuppressive environment, the eye is also capable of orchestrating systemic immunoregulatory responses against intraocular antigens. This mechanism of ocular immunosuppression has been given the term anterior chamber-associated immune deviation (ACAID) [38–40]. In corneal transplantation, the donor allografts are in direct contact with the AC and it is this location that correlates closely with the allograft's capacity to survive and induce ACAID to donor alloantigens [41–43].

ACAID, an atypical systemic response to alloantigens is not, as once believed, due to immunological ignorance but rather an active process that induces unique cellular mechanisms which can suppress destructive cellular responses such as delayed type

hypersensitivity (DTH) and cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) [44]. Studies have illustrated AC injection of donor cells prior to orthotopic corneal transplantation results in a significant increase in the acceptance of corneal allografts in rats and mice [41, 45]. However, it is the introduction of alloantigens during and after routine keratoplasty that is believed to contribute to the ACAID role in corneal transplantation survival [41].

The AC contains AH consisting of biologically relevant concentrations of various immunomodulatory factors as previously described [20, 35–37]. Compelling evidence demonstrates that the F4/80-positive APCs in the eye, maintained in an immature state due to the presence of constitutively expressed TGF-β2, capture intraocular antigens [46]. These antigen-bearing APCs subsequently migrate through the blood stream to the marginal zone of the spleen where they induce the formation of ACAID-regulatory T cells (Tregs) [39, 41, 43, 47]. Both cell-associated and soluble antigen injected into the eye has been detected in the DLN at 6 h and in the spleen after 16–24 h post injection [48, 49]. Once ocular-derived APCs enter the spleen, a series of complex cellular interactions which are not yet fully understood involving CD4 + T cells, natural killer (NK) T cells, B cells, and γδT cells culminate in the generation of Tregs that suppress DTH responses in an antigen-specific manner [42, 50, 51].

Eventually, antigen-specific Tregs that mediate ACAID emerge from these cell clusters in the spleen [39, 44]. It is these antigen-specific CD4+ and CD8+ Tregs that contribute to ocular immune privilege by down-regulating immune responses and protecting a graft from immune rejection after transplantation [52]. The first "afferent" set of cells made up of $CD4^{+}$Tregs prevent the activation and differentiation of antigen-specific effector T helper cells (Th1). Following this, a second set of "efferent" cells consisting of the $CD8^{+}$Tregs are associated with the inhibition of DTH [40]. Interestingly, it is these different forms of immune tolerance which have been demonstrated to be involved in the induction of ACAID and play a role in the promotion of corneal allograft survival [53, 54]. These findings suggest that ACAID may be required for long-term survival of corneal allografts and indicates that immune privilege in the eye is sustained through the cooperation of various cells from organs other than the eye itself.

The concept of ACAID, in which antigen-bearing APCs migrate from the eye, is not yet proven in humans and animal studies have demonstrated that cells do not need to leave the ocular microenvironment for antigen to induce a reduced DTH [55, 56]. The nature of the APC which promotes ACAID-induced tolerance is unclear, but mice deficient in cells expressing the macrophage surface marker F4/80 fail to generate tolerance after injection following donor antigen challenge [57]. Others have suggested that ocular fluids containing material such as soluble proteins from incoming inflammatory cells enter the blood circulation and arrive

at the spleen where further amplification of the NKT cell/F4/80 spleen cell-mediated process of T-cell apoptosis occurs [58]. Winton et al. also suggest antigen may travel from the eye to the spleen, lymph nodes of the head and neck, and mesenteric lymph nodes in a soluble form through blood and lymph [56].

The CD4+ T cells which recognize alloantigen via the indirect pathway are the cells which are believed to be required for induction of corneal allograft rejection [59]. It also has been described that IFN-γ is not necessary for the rejection of MHC-mismatched corneal grafts. However, IFN-γ and Th1 immune mechanisms have been demonstrated to be necessary for the rejection of MHC-matched but minor histocompatibility mismatched corneal allografts [60]. Interestingly, it has been recently demonstrated that IFN-γ is needed for alloantigen-specific ACAID CD8+ Tregs to execute their suppressive function but not required for the establishment of ACAID CD8+ Tregs [51]. Paunicka et al. provide evidence that the Tregs induced by AC injection of alloantigens (i.e. ACAID) are different from the Tregs induced by corneal allografts [51]. For example, in vivo administration of anti-CD8 antibody abolishes ACAID but has no effect on the immune privilege of corneal allografts. The authors suggest that an additional role of IFN-γ in exerting suppression during ACAID may be its ability to enhance the susceptibility of CD4+ effector cells to be suppressed by CD8+ Tregs [51].

Several cell-based therapies have been explored for their capacity to modulate the immune system of the corneal transplant recipient [61–63]. As described, APCs are key players in determining the induction of ACAID or tolerance. APCs are the cells with the capacity to transmit antigen-specific signals and direct adaptive immune responses. In one study by Khan et al. corneal allograft survival was prolonged by intravenously administering CTLA4-KDEL-expressing dendritic cells (DCs), however, this was only when the DCs were capable of indirect presentation of alloantigen [62]. Using donor-derived tolerogenic DCs, Hattori et al. demonstrated that corneal allograft recipients significantly suppress the indirect pathway of allorecognition and that this led to the inhibition of CD4+IFN-γ T cell frequencies. This DC cell therapy was also associated with an increase in Foxp3 expression in the Treg cell compartment [61]. We have recently shown that intravenous injection of donor bone marrow-derived DCs (BMDCs) or donor BMDCs treated with dexamethasone significantly prolongs corneal allograft survival without the need for additional immunosuppression. With both cell therapies, a significant reduction in the level of allograft cellular infiltration and a significant increase in the ratio of intragraft FoxP3 expressing regulatory cells in both the allograft and the DLNs were observed [63].

As well as examining APC-derived cell therapies, much interest has also been focused on the development of mesenchymal stromal cell (MSC)-based therapies to promote corneal allograft survival

[64, 65]. We recently demonstrated that allogeneic MSC treatment prolongs corneal allograft survival by suppressing peripheral immune responses and promoting an intragraft immunoregulatory milieu. This response was associated with a higher proportion of splenic CD4+Foxp3+ Treg cells [64]. Interestingly, Zhang et al. illustrated that systemic administration of human umbilical cord-derived MSCs (hUC-MSC) could potentiate the antigen-specific immune-suppressive responses induced by ACAID. The authors also demonstrated how administration of hUC-MSC was associated with increased cytokine production and Treg cell expansion within the spleen, capable of promoting and maintaining ACAID [66].

Aside from Treg expansion in the spleen, the possibility that Tregs can be induced locally within the eye has been a topic of much debate [55]. However, there is some evidence to suggest that naïve T cells that gain access to the ocular microenvironment may be skewed toward a Treg phenotype in situ [55]. Tregs recruited into the eye from the periphery, therefore, may be critical to tip the balance and together with local conversion help induce an immunosuppressive microenvironment and bring about resolution of potential transplantation rejection [55]. It must be noted that ACAID is not maintained when DTH is present under normal conditions and ACAID may be disturbed/abolished due to surgery-induced trauma, viral infection or chronic inflammation, all of which may contribute to corneal allograft rejection.

5 Conclusions

Relative ocular immune privilege is a fascinating area of immunology research. It is not the result of a single immunosuppressive mechanism, but rather is a combination of both local and systemic immunomodulation involving soluble factors as well as regulatory cells. Although corneal transplants benefit from relative ocular immune privilege, this privilege can be lost with subsequent failure of the transplant and blindness. Transplant immunology and eye research is proving beneficial at identifying factors and processes that protect cells and tissues from immune-mediated destruction or rejection. Future research will further elucidate the mechanisms of ocular immune privilege and open new areas of immunomodulation, particularly with respect to patients at high risk of corneal transplant rejection, that may also benefit other transplant models or immune-mediated diseases.

Acknowledgements

This work was supported by the Science Foundation Ireland Investigator Award to TR (12/IA/1624) and by the European Union Regional Development Fund.

References

1. Niederkorn JY (2013) Corneal transplantation and immune privilege. Int Rev Immunol 32:57–67
2. Niederkorn JY (1999) The immune privilege of corneal allografts. Transplantation 67: 1503–1508
3. Ambati BK, Nozaki M, Singh N, Takeda A, Jani PD, Suthar T, Albuquerque RJ, Richter E, Sakurai E, Newcomb MT, Kleinman ME, Caldwell RB, Lin Q, Ogura Y, Orecchia A, Samuelson DA, Agnew DW, St Leger J, Green WR, Mahasreshti PJ, Curiel DT, Kwan D, Marsh H, Ikeda S, Leiper LJ, Collinson JM, Bogdanovich S, Khurana TS, Shibuya M, Baldwin ME, Ferrara N, Gerber HP, De Falco S, Witta J, Baffi JZ, Raisler BJ, Ambati J (2006) Corneal avascularity is due to soluble VEGF receptor-1. Nature 443:993–997
4. Cursiefen C, Chen L, Saint-Geniez M, Hamrah P, Jin Y, Rashid S, Pytowski B, Persaud K, Wu Y, Streilein JW, Dana R (2006) Nonvascular VEGF receptor 3 expression by corneal epithelium maintains avascularity and vision. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:11405–11410
5. Persano L, Crescenzi M, Indraccolo S (2007) Anti-angiogenic gene therapy of cancer: current status and future prospects. Mol Aspects Med 28:87–114
6. Tan Y, Cruz-Guilloty F, Medina-Mendez CA, Cutrufello NJ, Martinez RE, Urbieta M, Wilson D, Li Y, Perez VL (2012) Immunological disruption of antiangiogenic signals by recruited allospecific T cells leads to corneal allograft rejection. J Immunol 188:5962–5969
7. Albuquerque RJ, Hayashi T, Cho WG, Kleinman ME, Dridi S, Takeda A, Baffi JZ, Yamada K, Kaneko H, Green MG, Chappell J, Wilting J, Weich HA, Yamagami S, Amano S, Mizuki N, Alexander JS, Peterson ML, Brekken RA, Hirashima M, Capoor S, Usui T, Ambati BK, Ambati J (2009) Alternatively spliced vascular endothelial growth factor receptor-2 is an essential endogenous inhibitor of lymphatic vessel growth. Nat Med 15:1023–1030
8. Qazi Y, Hamrah P (2013) Corneal allograft rejection: immunopathogenesis to therapeutics. J Clin Cell Immunol 2013(Suppl 9), pii: 006
9. Griffith TS, Brunner T, Fletcher SM, Green DR, Ferguson TA (1995) Fas ligand-induced apoptosis as a mechanism of immune privilege. Science 270:1189–1192
10. Stuart PM, Yin X, Plambeck S, Pan F, Ferguson TA (2005) The role of Fas ligand as an effector molecule in corneal graft rejection. Eur J Immunol 35:2591–2597
11. Yamagami S, Kawashima H, Tsuru T, Yamagami H, Kayagaki N, Yagita H, Okumura K, Gregerson DS (1997) Role of Fas-Fas ligand interactions in the immunorejection of allogeneic mouse corneal transplants. Transplantation 64:1107–1111
12. Stuart PM, Griffith TS, Usui N, Pepose J, Yu X, Ferguson TA (1997) CD95 ligand (FasL)-induced apoptosis is necessary for corneal allograft survival. J Clin Invest 99:396–402
13. Hori J, Wang M, Miyashita M, Tanemoto K, Takahashi H, Takemori T, Okumura K, Yagita H, Azuma M (2006) B7-H1-induced apoptosis as a mechanism of immune privilege of corneal allografts. J Immunol 177:5928–5935
14. Shen L, Jin Y, Freeman GJ, Sharpe AH, Dana MR (2007) The function of donor versus recipient programmed death-ligand 1 in corneal allograft survival. J Immunol 179:3672–3679
15. Liechtenstein T, Dufait I, Bricogne C, Lanna A, Pen J, Breckpot K, Escors D (2012) PD-L1/PD-1 co-stimulation, a brake for T cell activation and a T cell differentiation signal. J Clin Cell Immunol 6: S12
16. Nosov M, Wilk M, Morcos M, Cregg M, O'Flynn L, Treacy O, Ritter T (2012) Role of lentivirus-mediated overexpression of programmed death-ligand 1 on corneal allograft survival. Am J Transplant 12:1313–1322
17. Lee HO, Herndon JM, Barreiro R, Griffith TS, Ferguson TA (2002) TRAIL: a mechanism of tumor surveillance in an immune privileged site. J Immunol 169:4739–4744
18. Wang S, Boonman ZF, Li HC, He Y, Jager MJ, Toes RE, Niederkorn JY (2003) Role of TRAIL and IFN-gamma in CD4+ T cell-dependent tumor rejection in the anterior chamber of the eye. J Immunol 171:2789–2796
19. Xie L, Shi W, Guo P (2003) Roles of tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand in corneal transplantation. Transplantation 76:1556–1559
20. Bora NS, Gobleman CL, Atkinson JP, Pepose JS, Kaplan HJ (1993) Differential expression of the complement regulatory proteins in the human eye. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 34: 3579–3584
21. Goslings WR, Prodeus AP, Streilein JW, Carroll MC, Jager MJ, Taylor AW (1998) A small molecular weight factor in aqueous humor acts on C1q to prevent antibody-dependent complement activation. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 39:989–995
22. Esposito A, Suedekum B, Liu J, An F, Lass J, Strainic MG, Lin F, Heeger P, Medof ME

(2010) Decay accelerating factor is essential for successful corneal engraftment. Am J Transplant 10:527–534

23. Taylor AW, Streilein JW, Cousins SW (1994) Alpha-melanocyte-stimulating hormone suppresses antigen-stimulated T cell production of gamma-interferon. Neuroimmunomodulation 1:188–194
24. Taylor AW, Streilein JW, Cousins SW (1994) Immunoreactive vasoactive intestinal peptide contributes to the immunosuppressive activity of normal aqueous humor. J Immunol 153: 1080–1086
25. Stein-Streilein J, Taylor AW (2007) An eye's view of T regulatory cells. J Leukoc Biol 81: 593–598
26. Taylor AW (2007) Ocular immunosuppressive microenvironment. Chem Immunol Allergy 92:71–85
27. Mochizuki M, Sugita S, Ishikawa N, Watanabe T (2000) Immunoregulation by aqueous humor. Cornea 19:S24–25
28. Niederkorn JY (2006) See no evil, hear no evil, do no evil: the lessons of immune privilege. Nat Immunol 7:354–359
29. Ljunggren HG, Karre K (1990) In search of the "missing self": MHC molecules and NK cell recognition. Immunol Today 11:237–244
30. Claerhout I, Kestelyn P, Debacker V, Beele H, Leclercq G (2004) Role of natural killer cells in the rejection process of corneal allografts in rats. Transplantation 77:676–682
31. Apte RS, Niederkorn JY (1996) Isolation and characterization of a unique natural killer cell inhibitory factor present in the anterior chamber of the eye. J Immunol 156: 2667–2673
32. Apte RS, Mayhew E, Niederkorn JY (1997) Local inhibition of natural killer cell activity promotes the progressive growth of intraocular tumors. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 38:1277–1282
33. Apte RS, Sinha D, Mayhew E, Wistow GJ, Niederkorn JY (1998) Cutting edge: role of macrophage migration inhibitory factor in inhibiting NK cell activity and preserving immune privilege. J Immunol 160:5693–5696
34. Lee HM, Kim KS, Kim J (2014) A comparative study of the effects of inhibitory cytokines on human natural killer cells and the mechanistic features of transforming growth factor-beta. Cell Immunol 290:52–61
35. Flynn TH, Mitchison NA, Ono SJ, Larkin DF (2008) Aqueous humor alloreactive cell phenotypes, cytokines and chemokines in corneal allograft rejection. Am J Transplant 8: 1537–1543
36. Hori J, Taniguchi H, Wang M, Oshima M, Azuma M (2010) GITR ligand-mediated local expansion of regulatory T cells and immune privilege of corneal allografts. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 51:6556–6565
37. Niederkorn JY (2011) Cornea: window to ocular immunology. Curr Immunol Rev 7: 328–335
38. Streilein JW (2003) New thoughts on the immunology of corneal transplantation. Eye (Lond) 17:943–948
39. Streilein JW, Niederkorn JY (2007) Induction of anterior chamber-associated immune deviation requires an intact, functional spleen. 1981. Ocul Immunol Inflamm 15:187–194
40. Masli S, Vega JL (2011) Ocular immune privilege sites. Methods Mol Biol 677:449–458
41. Niederkorn JY, Mellon J (1996) Anterior chamber-associated immune deviation promotes corneal allograft survival. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 37:2700–2707
42. Skelsey ME, Mellon J, Niederkorn JY (2001) Gamma delta T cells are needed for ocular immune privilege and corneal graft survival. J Immunol 166:4327–4333
43. Yan F, Cai L, Hui Y, Chen S, Meng H, Huang Z (2014) Tolerogenic dendritic cells suppress murine corneal allograft rejection by modulating CD28/CTLA-4 expression on regulatory T cells. Cell Biol Int 38:835–848
44. Wilbanks GA, Streilein JW (1990) Characterization of suppressor cells in anterior chamber-associated immune deviation (ACAID) induced by soluble antigen. Evidence of two functionally and phenotypically distinct T-suppressor cell populations. Immunology 71:383–389
45. She SC, Steahly LP, Moticka EJ (1990) Intracameral injection of allogeneic lymphocytes enhances corneal graft survival. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 31:1950–1956
46. Stein-Streilein J, Streilein JW (2002) Anterior chamber associated immune deviation (ACAID): regulation, biological relevance, and implications for therapy. Int Rev Immunol 21:123–152
47. Wilbanks GA, Streilein JW (1991) Studies on the induction of anterior chamber-associated immune deviation (ACAID). 1. Evidence that an antigen-specific, ACAID-inducing, cell-associated signal exists in the peripheral blood. J Immunol 146:2610–2617
48. Kuffova L, Netukova M, Duncan L, Porter A, Stockinger B, Forrester JV (2008) Cross presentation of antigen on MHC class II via the draining lymph node after corneal transplantation in mice. J Immunol 180:1353–1361

49. Forrester JV, Xu H (2012) Good news-bad news: the Yin and Yang of immune privilege in the eye. Front Immunol 3:338
50. Skelsey ME, Mayhew E, Niederkorn JY (2003) Splenic B cells act as antigen presenting cells for the induction of anterior chamber-associated immune deviation. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 44:5242–5251
51. Paunicka K, Chen PW, Niederkorn JY (2012) Role of IFN-gamma in the establishment of anterior chamber-associated immune deviation (ACAID)-induced CD8+ T regulatory cells. J Leukoc Biol 91:475–483
52. Mochizuki M, Sugita S, Kamoi K (2013) Immunological homeostasis of the eye. Prog Retin Eye Res 33:10–27
53. Yamada J, Kurimoto I, Streilein JW (1999) Role of CD4+ T cells in immunobiology of orthotopic corneal transplants in mice. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 40:2614–2621
54. Cunnusamy K, Paunicka K, Reyes N, Yang W, Chen PW, Niederkorn JY (2010) Two different regulatory T cell populations that promote corneal allograft survival. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 51:6566–6574
55. Zhou R, Horai R, Silver PB, Mattapallil MJ, Zarate-Blades CR, Chong WP, Chen J, Rigden RC, Villasmil R, Caspi RR (2012) The living eye "disarms" uncommitted autoreactive T cells by converting them to Foxp3(+) regulatory cells following local antigen recognition. J Immunol 188:1742–1750
56. Winton HL, Bidwell JL, Armitage WJ (2014) Thrombospondin-1 polymorphisms influence risk of corneal allograft rejection. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 55:2115–2120
57. Lin HH, Faunce DE, Stacey M, Terajewicz A, Nakamura T, Zhang-Hoover J, Kerley M, Mucenski ML, Gordon S, Stein-Streilein J (2005) The macrophage F4/80 receptor is required for the induction of antigen-specific efferent regulatory T cells in peripheral tolerance. J Exp Med 201:1615–1625
58. Faunce DE, Stein-Streilein J (2002) NKT cell-derived RANTES recruits APCs and CD8+ T cells to the spleen during the generation of regulatory T cells in tolerance. J Immunol 169:31–38
59. Boisgerault F, Liu Y, Anosova N, Ehrlich E, Dana MR, Benichou G (2001) Role of CD4+ and CD8+ T cells in allorecognition: lessons from corneal transplantation. J Immunol 167: 1891–1899
60. Hargrave SL, Hay C, Mellon J, Mayhew E, Niederkorn JY (2004) Fate of MHC-matched corneal allografts in Th1-deficient hosts. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 45:1188–1193
61. Hattori T, Saban DR, Emami-Naeini P, Chauhan SK, Funaki T, Ueno H, Dana R (2012) Donor-derived, tolerogenic dendritic cells suppress immune rejection in the indirect allosensitization-dominant setting of corneal transplantation. J Leukoc Biol 91:621–627
62. Khan A, Fu H, Tan LA, Harper JE, Beutelspacher SC, Larkin DF, Lombardi G, McClure MO, George AJ (2013) Dendritic cell modification as a route to inhibiting corneal graft rejection by the indirect pathway of allorecognition. Eur J Immunol 43:734–746
63. O'Flynn L, Treacy O, Ryan AE, Morcos M, Cregg M, Gerlach J, Joshi L, Nosov M, Ritter T (2013) Donor bone marrow-derived dendritic cells prolong corneal allograft survival and promote an intragraft immunoregulatory milieu. Mol Ther 21:2102–2112
64. Treacy O, O'Flynn L, Ryan AE, Morcos M, Lohan P, Schu S, Wilk M, Fahy G, Griffin MD, Nosov M, Ritter T (2014) Mesenchymal stem cell therapy promotes corneal allograft survival in rats by local and systemic immunomodulation. Am J Transplant 14(9):2023–2036
65. Lee HJ, Ko JH, Ko AY, Kim MK, Wee WR, Oh JY (2014) Intravenous infusion of mesenchymal stem/stromal cells decreased CCR7(+) antigen presenting cells in mice with corneal allotransplantation. Curr Eye Res 39:780–789
66. Zhang Y, Zhang M, Zhao S, Li X, Jia Z, Zhang L, Han ZC, Zhang X (2013) Effects of human umbilical cord-derived mesenchymal stem cells on anterior chamber-associated immune deviation. Int Immunopharmacol 15:114–120

Chapter 14

Food Allergies: Novel Mechanisms and Therapeutic Perspectives

Margherita Di Costanzo, Lorella Paparo, Linda Cosenza, Carmen Di Scala, Rita Nocerino, Rosita Aitoro, and Roberto Berni Canani

Abstract

Childhood food allergy (FA) rates have rapidly increased with significant direct medical costs for the health care system and even larger costs for the families with a food-allergic child. The possible causes of food allergy become the target of intense scrutiny in recent years. Increasing evidence underline the importance in early life of gut microbiome in the development of allergic diseases. There are a range of factors in the modern environment that may be associated with changes to both the gut microbiome and risk of FA, such as mode of delivery, antibiotic exposure, infant feeding practices, farming environment, and country of origin. Knowledge of the relationship between early life gut microbiome and allergic diseases may facilitate development of novel preventive and treatment strategies. Based on our current knowledge, there are no currently available approved therapies for food allergy. More studies are needed to evaluate the safety and efficacy of allergen-specific and allergen-nonspecific approaches, as well as combination approaches.

Key words Immunotherapy, Probiotics, Intestinal microflora, Immune system, Tolerance acquisition

1 Introduction

Food allergy (FA) is a major health issue in Western countries with a substantial effect on quality of life of both patients and their relatives. On the basis of numerous studies, food allergy likely affects nearly 5 % of adults and 8 % of children, with growing evidence of an increase in prevalence [1]. Although any food can provoke a reaction, relatively few foods are responsible for the vast majority of significant food induced allergic reactions: cow's milk (2.2 %), peanuts (1.8 %), and tree nuts (1.7 %) are the most common allergens in children, and shellfish (1.9 %), fruits (1.6 %), and vegetables (1.3 %) are the most common allergens in adults. Recent publications focusing on peanut allergy indicated increases with a doubling (UK) or tripling (USA) in diagnoses [2, 3]. In general, childhood FA to milk, egg, wheat, or soy typically resolves during childhood, whereas allergies to peanut, tree nuts, fish, and shellfish

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_14,

are persistent. However during the last decade, a changing pattern in FA was observed with an increased prevalence, severity of clinical manifestations, and risk of persistence until later ages in Western countries [4]. Over the last 20 years rates of potentially life-threatening reactions to food (anaphylaxis) have steadily risen in the developed world [5]. For these reasons, there is a strong need for an expansion of pre clinical research to improve understanding of the mechanisms and to develop novel effective strategies to prevent and treat FA.

2 New Insights into the Pathogenesis of Food Allergy

There is a complex interplay of environmental influence and genetics that underlie the immunopathogenesis of food allergy and the manifestations of various food-induced allergic disorders. The gut microbiota is emerging as a crucial "internal" environmental exposure [6]. We briefly summarize what are the evidences that demonstrate an association between microbial exposure in early life and the development of food allergy.

Microbial gut colonization begins after birth and this process is affected by the newborn infant's gestational age, mode of delivery and first feeding strategies. The colonizing bacteria originate mainly from the mother's gut and vaginal tract [7]. After delivery, breast feeding continues to enhance the original inoculum by the introduction of specific lactic acid bacteria, Bifidobacteria, and other bacteria from the mother's skin. These bacteria set the basis for gut microbiota development and modulation. An imbalance in the compositional configuration of the gut microbiota, dysbiosis, alters the host-microbiota homeostasis, which is a requisite for the development and function of immune cells in the gut associated lymphoid tissue. The importance of this reciprocal regulation of the microbiota and immune system culminates in early infancy, when the balance between homeostasis and inflammation programs later disease risk. In particular, early exposure to commensal bacteria plays a crucial role in Th1/Th2 polarization and proper immune regulatory mechanisms. Germ free animals do not develop oral tolerance and maintained a Th2 type immune response to orally administered ovalbumin. This could be corrected by the reconstitution of the microbiota at the neonatal stages, but not any reconstitution implemented at a later ages [8]. These findings documented a decisive role of the gut microbiota for the acquisition of food oral tolerance in early life. Exposure to a normal intestinal microflora in early life allows for a change in the lymphocyte Th1/lymphocyte Th2 balance, favoring a Th1 cell response [9], while an imbalance in the compositional configuration of the gut microbiota, dysbiosis, alters the host-microbiota homeostasis, producing a shift of the Th1/Th2 cytokine balance toward a Th2

response and a consequent activation of Th2 cytokines with an increased production of immunoglobulin E [10]. Imbalance in intestinal microbiota composition has been documented in patients with food allergy [11]. It was recently found that clostridia strains promote the development of regulatory T cells in the intestine, and when a mix of human clostridia strains were administered to mice, they could suppress the development of food allergy [12, 13]. Recently, a new link between dysbiosis and food allergy development has been provided. Maternal use of antibiotics before and during pregnancy was associated with an increased risk of cow's milk allergy in the offspring and the risk of cow's milk allergy increased with increasing number of child's antibiotics used from birth to diagnosis [14]. In a recent review Marrs et al. conducted a systematic review to test the hypothesis that microbial exposure can modulate the risk of developing FA and concluded that factors influencing microbial exposure, such as mode of delivery, rural animal exposure, diet, childhood infections, immunizations, and antibiotic use, may be partly responsible for rising FA burden, but further prospective studies using double-blind placebo controlled food challenges as an outcome are required [6].

3 Allergen-Specific and Non-allergen-specific Therapies

Based on our current knowledge of the immune basis of food allergy, therapeutic strategies have focused on reducing levels of allergen-specific IgE, enhancing levels of allergen-specific IgG or IgA, suppressing Th2 effector cells, or enhancing regulatory T cells through a variety of allergen-specific and allergen non-specific strategies [15].

3.1 Allergen-Specific Therapies

In the past 10 years allergen immunotherapy by the oral, sublingual, or epicutaneous routes has been the subject of intense research focus. Results are promising when desensitization, defined as protection from food-induced reactions while receiving therapy, is used as a primary outcome [16–18]. However, there is a lack of clarity about safety and long-term efficacy of the treatment. Adverse reactions to oral immunotherapy are not uncommon, and a significant number of subjects experience adverse reactions of sufficient severity or persistence to prevent continuation of immunotherapy. The most successful trials report that at least half of patients who begin immunotherapy do not achieve successful long term tolerance [19, 20]. Preclinical research on food allergy immunotherapy safety has primarily focused on modifications to allergen structure to reduce IgE binding. Allergens can be modified through heating, which denatures the proteins and destroys conformational epitopes; digestion, which forms peptides that are too short to cross-link IgE but maintain T cell epitopes would have the capacity to generate

T cell-mediated immunomodulation; and chemical modification, for example glycosylation of allergens can significantly modify their immunogenicity and allergenicity [15].

3.2 Modified Allergens and Adjuvants for Allergen Immunotherapy

Some allergens can be modified simply through heating. Heating denatures the proteins and destroys conformational epitopes, and there are also matrix effects that influence digestion and absorption of the allergens. Milk- or egg-allergic children enrolled in intervention studies in which they incorporated extensively heated milk or egg into the diet outgrew their unheated egg or milk allergy more quickly than a control group that received standard of care [21, 22], and this inclusion of milk or egg was associated with changes in immune parameters consistent with an immunotherapeutic response (elevation in IgG4, decreases in allergen-specific IgE). Heating to reduce allergenicity is applicable to egg or milk, but not to antigens such as peanut where high heat increases allergenicity rather than reducing it. Allergens can be also modified through digestion, which forms peptides that are too short to cross-link IgE but maintain T cell epitopes would have the capacity to generate T cell-mediated immunomodulation. Immuno-dominant peptides in the peanut allergens Ara h 1 [23] and Ara h 2 [24] have recently been identified with the goal of developing peptide immunotherapy. In addition to digestion and heating, allergens can be modified by chemical modification. Glycosylation of allergens can significantly modify their immunogenicity and allergenicity. Carbohydrate structures can both promote and suppress allergenicity. There is evidence that exposure of some allergens to high heat can enhance allergenicity through glycation, which allows for recognition of the allergens by pattern recognition receptors on antigen-presenting cells [25, 26]. But glycosylation can also result in enhanced immune tolerance. At preclinical level, research on improvements in efficacy of food allergy immunotherapy is focused on adjuvant optimization. Adjuvants that amplify either a Th1 response or a regulatory response may be necessary to sufficiently suppress the Th2-skewed immunity that drives the allergic response to foods. Many of these adjuvants are of microbial origin and range from whole heat-killed bacteria to co-administered purified microbial products to fusion proteins incorporating allergen and adjuvant in one. By binding to innate pattern recognition receptors on antigen-presenting cells, these adjuvants are thought to drive the T cell response away from a Th2 response. Adjuvants not only modify the nature of the immune response, but amplify the response such that significantly lower doses of allergen may be sufficient for an immunotherapeutic effect. The immune basis of tolerance induced by allergen immunotherapy for food allergy is still the subject of intensive research; immunotherapy is associated with elevations in allergen-specific IgG4 and IgA, and reductions in diversity of epitopes recognized by allergen-specific IgE, skin prick test wheal

size, allergen-induced basophil activation, and allergen-induced Th2 cytokine production [27–29]. These parameters are associated with immunotherapy, but so far there have been no biomarkers described that successfully predict tolerance versus desensitization in response to immunotherapy.

3.3 Allergen-Nonspecific Therapies

Therapies that are not allergen specific are especially attractive because many patients have multiple food allergies and allergen immunotherapy with specialized allergen adjuvant constructs may be of limited value in these patients. In this field, there is a significant interest in probiotics and the possibility of manipulating the microbiome for therapeutic purposes. Recently, we demonstrated that treatment of cow's milk allergy (CMA) infants with an extensively hydrolyzed casein formula (eHCF) supplemented with the probiotic *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* GG (LGG) accelerates oral tolerance acquisition to cow's milk [30, 31]. Subsequently, we tested the hypothesis that eHCF plus LGG induced effect on oral tolerance thanks to an influence of this dietary intervention on the composition of the gut microbiota (Fig. 1). High-throughput sequencing technology (16S rRNA-based sequence analysis) was used to compare fecal samples from newly diagnosed CMA infants, collected before and after treatment with eHCF plus LGG, to

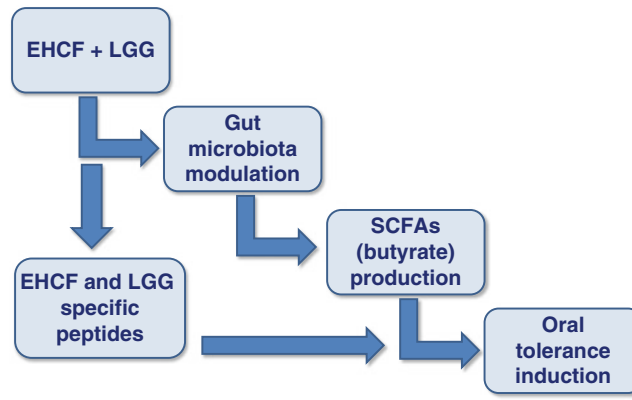


Fig. 1 A schematic representation of the potential mechanisms of action of eHCF plus LGG in children with cow's milk allergy. Treatment with EHCF plus LGG expanded gut microbiota populations associated with immunoregulatory effects and increased butyrate production at intestinal level. Gut microbiota is a crucial factor for food oral tolerance and it regulates an appropriate balance between immune effectors and regulatory pathways. Short chain fatty acids (SCFAs) such as propionate, acetate and butyrate are gut microbiota-derived bacterial fermentation products that selectively expand Tregs in the large intestine. These SCFAs stimulate the expansion and immune-suppressive properties of Tregs, such as the production of IL-10. Moreover, the specific immunomodulatory effect of eHCF plus LGG may be due to small specific peptides, which are absent in other formulas

those obtained from controls. Treatment with eHCF plus LGG expanded gut microbiota populations associated with immunoregulatory effects. Otherwise healthy infants with CMA were given eHCFs ($n=55$), eHCF with LGG ($n=71$), hydrolyzed rice formula ($n=46$), soy formula ($n=55$), or amino acid-based formula ($n=33$), and oral food challenges were performed after 12 months to assess acquisition of tolerance. The rate of tolerance after 12 months was significantly higher ($p<0.05$) in the groups receiving eHCF (43.6 %) or eHCF plus LGG (78.9 %) compared with the other groups: hydrolyzed rice formula (32.6 %), soy formula (23.6 %), and amino acid-based formula (18.2 %). Our in vitro and in vivo data suggest that eHCF containing LGG promotes oral tolerance through a combination of different mechanisms. These findings suggest a potential innovative therapeutic approach for children affected by FA.

References

1. Sicherer SH, Sampson HA (2014) Food allergy: epidemiology, pathogenesis, diagnosis, and treatment. J Allergy Clin Immunol 133: 291–307
2. Kotz D, Simpson CR, Sheikh A (2011) Incidence, prevalence, and trends of general practitioner-recorded diagnosis of peanut allergy in England, 2001 to 2005. J Allergy Clin Immunol 127:623–630
3. Rinaldi M, Harnack L, Oberg C et al (2012) Peanut allergy diagnoses among children residing in Olmsted County, Minnesota. J Allergy Clin Immunol 130:945–950
4. Skripak JM, Matsui EC, Mudd K et al (2007) The natural history of IgE-mediated cow's milk allergy. J Allergy Clin Immun 120: 1172–1177
5. Berni Canani R, Nocerino R, Terrin G et al (2012) Hospital admissions for food-induced anaphylaxis in Italian children. Clin Exp Allergy 42:1813–1814
6. Marrs T, Bruce KD, Logan K et al (2013) Is there an association between microbial exposure and food allergy? A systematic review. Pediatr Allergy Immunol 24:311–320
7. Björkstén B, Sepp E, Julge K et al (2001) Allergy development and the intestinal microflora during the first year of life. J Allergy Clin Immunol 108:516–520
8. Sudo N, Sawamura S, Tanaka K et al (1997) The requirement of intestinal bacterial flora for the development of an IgE production system fully susceptible to oral tolerance induction. J Immunol 159:1739–1745
9. Kirjavainen PV, Arvola T, Salminen SJ et al (2002) Aberrant composition of gut microbiota of allergic infants: a target of bifidobacterial therapy at weaning? Gut 51:51–55
10. Winkler P, Ghadimi D, Schrezenmeir J et al (2007) Molecular and cellular basis of microflora-host interactions. J Nutr 137: 756S–772S
11. Nakayama J, Kobayashi T, Tanaka S et al (2011) Aberrant structures of fecal bacterial community in allergic infants profiled by 16S rRNA gene pyrosequencing. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol 63:397–406
12. Atarashi K, Tanoue T, Shima T et al (2011) Induction of colonic regulatory T cells by indigenous Clostridium species. Science 331: 337–341
13. Atarashi K, Tanoue T, Oshima K et al (2013) Treg induction by a rationally selected mixture of Clostridia strains from the human microbiota. Nature 500:232–236
14. Metsälä J, Lundqvist A, Virta LJ et al (2013) Mother's and offspring's use of antibiotics and infant allergy to cow's milk. Epidemiology 24:303–309
15. Berin MC (2014) Future therapies for IgE-mediated food allergy. Curr Pediatr Rep 2: 119–126
16. Kim JS, Nowak-Wegrzyn A, Sicherer SH et al (2011) Dietary baked milk accelerates the resolution of cow's milk allergy in children. J Allergy Clin Immunol 128:125–131, e2
17. Leonard SA, Sampson HA, Sicherer SH et al (2012) Dietary baked egg accelerates resolu-

tion of egg allergy in children. J Allergy Clin Immunol 130:473–480, e1

18. Prickett SR, Voskamp AL, Phan T et al (2013) Ara h 1 CD4? T cell epitope-based peptides: candidates for a peanut allergy therapeutic. Clin Exp Allergy 43:684–697
19. Pascal M, Konstantinou GN, Masilamani M et al (2013) In silico prediction of Ara h 2T cell epitopes in peanut-allergic children. Clin Exp Allergy 43:116–127
20. Hilmenyuk T, Bellinghausen I, Heydenreich B et al (2010) Effects of glycation of the model food allergen ovalbumin on antigen uptake and presentation by human dendritic cells. Immunology 129:437–445
21. Ilchmann A, Burgdorf S, Scheurer S et al (2010) Glycation of a food allergen by the Maillard reaction enhances its T-cell immunogenicity: role of macrophage scavenger receptor class A type I and II. J Allergy Clin Immunol 125:175–183, e1–11
22. Skripak JM, Nash SD, Rowley H et al (2008) A randomized, doubleblind, placebo-controlled study of milk oral immunotherapy for cow's milk allergy. J Allergy Clin Immunol 122(6): 1154–1160
23. Jones SM, Pons L, Roberts JL et al (2009) Clinical efficacy and immune regulation with peanut oral immunotherapy. J Allergy Clin Immunol 124(2):292–300, 300.e1–97
24. Varshney P, Jones SM, Scurlock AM et al (2011) A randomized controlled study of peanut oral immunotherapy: clinical desensitization and modulation of the allergic response. J Allergy Clin Immunol 127(3):654–660
25. Burks AW, Jones SM, Wood RA et al (2012) Oral immunotherapy for treatment of egg allergy in children. N Engl J Med 367(3): 233–243
26. Keet CA, Frischmeyer-Guerrerio PA, Thyagarajan A et al (2012) The safety and efficacy of sublingual and oral immunotherapy for milk allergy. J Allergy Clin Immunol 129(2):448–455, e1–5
27. Jones SM, Pons L, Roberts JL et al (2009) Clinical efficacy and immune regulation with peanut oral immunotherapy. J Allergy Clin Immunol 124(2):292–300
28. Kulis M, Saba K, Kim EH et al (2012) Increased peanut-specific IgA levels in saliva correlate with food challenge outcomes after peanut sublingual immunotherapy. J Allergy Clin Immunol 129:1159–1162
29. Vickery BP, Lin J, Kulis M et al (2013) Peanut oral immunotherapy modifies IgE and IgG4 responses to major peanut allergens. J Allergy Clin Immunol 131(1):128–134, e1–3
30. Berni Canani R, Nocerino R, Terrin G et al (2012) Effect of Lactobacillus GG on tolerance acquisition in infants with cow's milk allergy: a randomized trial. J Allergy Clin Immunol 129:580–582, 582.e1–5
31. Berni Canani R, Nocerino R, Terrin G et al (2013) Formula selection for management of children with cow's milk allergy influences the rate of acquisition of tolerance: a prospective multicenter study. J Pediatr 163:771–777.e1

Part III

Immunomonitoring and Biomarkers

Chapter 15

Standardized Multi-Color Flow Cytometry and Computational Biomarker Discovery

Stephan Schlickeiser, Mathias Streitz, and Birgit Sawitzki

Abstract

Multi-color flow cytometry has become a valuable and highly informative tool for diagnosis and therapeutic monitoring of patients with immune deficiencies or inflammatory disorders. However, the method complexity and error-prone conventional manual data analysis often result in a high variability between different analysts and research laboratories. Here, we provide strategies and guidelines aiming at a more standardized multi-color flow cytometric staining and unsupervised data analysis for whole blood patient samples.

Key words Flow cytometry, Immune monitoring, Standardization, Data analysis

1 Introduction

Within the last 15–20 years, biologics aiming at influencing particular pathological aspects of inflammatory diseases such as solid organ transplantation and different autoimmune diseases have been introduced into clinical practice. With the inflammatory diseases being very divers and knowing that individual patients will respond differently to these biologics, monitoring the changes in composition and functionality of immune cells has and will even more become a crucial part of clinical diagnostics [1]. In addition, it has now become more and more evident that composition and function of leukocyte subsets are not static but may vary between individuals, are dependent on gender and age; and rather change during life [2–7]. To be able to compare the effectiveness of biologics and cellular therapeutics, standardization of the immune monitoring assays especially between different performing centers and over time is critical. Because the complexity of the immune system requires the measurement of multiple parameters in parallel and the characterization of many cell subsets, flow cytometry has become a very powerful tool for immune diagnostics [1]. However, the assay complexity in combination with pre-analytical factors such

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_15,

as staining procedures, compensation, leukocyte subset definition, and analysis also increases the variability, particularly when comparing results obtained within different laboratories [8–11]. Thus, in order to introduce flow cytometry into routine diagnostics procedure, standardization including an unsupervised approach for leukocyte subset identification at all steps is of outmost importance. Here we will describe our strategies/procedures for whole blood flow cytometry, which has been proven to result in reproducible results across different laboratories [1].

In the first section of this chapter, protocols that have been validated and successfully used in clinical trials for comprehensive multi-parameter immune phenotyping will be provided. The second part aims at giving a brief overview of computational methods for flow cytometric biomarker discovery with emphasis on accessible and easy to learn tools for clinical scientists and researchers.

2 Materials

2.1 Flow Cytometric Antibody Panels

1. Prepare an antibody pre-mix of each flow panel for the required numbers of samples according to the titrated amount of antibody as exemplified by Table 1.

2.2 Whole Blood Antibody Staining

1. *PBS/FSC-Buffer:*
   IsoFlow (Beckman Coulter) + 0.1 % NaN_3 + 2 % FCS. Pour 490 ml IsoFlow into 500 ml glass bottle. Add 0.5 g NaN_3 and 10 ml FCS to the bottle and mix well. Store buffer at 4 °C.
2. *Versa-Lyse-Fix-Solution:*
   Mix 8 ml Versa-Lyse and 200 µl IOTest 3 Fixative solution (10×, Beckman Coulter) in a 15 ml Falcon tube.
3. *1× Lysis-Buffer:*
   Mix 1.5 ml Red Blood Cell Lysing Solution (Miltenyi Biotec) and 13.5 ml Ampuwa.
4. *PBS-Fix-Buffer:*
   Mix 1 ml IsoFlow with 25 µl IOTest 3 Fixative Solution (10×).

2.3 Flow Cytometer Set-Up

1. Flow-Set Pro beads (Beckman Coulter, *see* **Note 1**).

2.4 Bioinformatics Tools/Programs

1. *Software for manual gating.*
   From the wealthy catalog of commercially available software products for conventional flow cytometry data analysis, i.e., by manual gating, only the most popular third-party packages shall be mentioned here. FlowJo™ (TreeStar), Kaluza® (Beckman Coulter), as well as FCS Express™ (DeNovo Software) are "state of the art" and feature intuitive user interfaces, flexibility and speed in data analysis and visualization as

Table 1
Example of antibody panels for complex multi-parametric whole flow cytometry as performed within the "ONE Study"

	FITC	PE	ECD	PC7	APC	APC-A700	APC-A750	PacBlue	KrOrange
1. Immune phenotyping	CD160 Clone 3GB	CD560 Clone N901	CD19 Clone J3-190	CD14 Clone RMO 52	CD 4 Clone 1388.2	CD 8 Clone 89.11	CD3 Clone UCHT 1	CD64 Clone 22	CD45 Clone J.33
2. T-cell subsets	TCRγδ Clone IMMU510	TCRαβ Clone IP26A	CD45RO Clone UCHL1		CD4 Clone 1388.2	CD8 Clone 89.11	CD3 Clone UCHT 1		CD45 Clone J.33
3. T-cell activation	CD57 Clone NC1	CD28 Clone J.33	HLA-DR Clone IMMU357	CD27 Clone 1A 4CD27	CD4 Clone 1388.2	CD8 Clone 89.11	CD3 Clone UCHT 1	CD45RA Clone 2H4LDH11LO89	CD45 Clone J.33
4. $T_{eff}/T_{mem} + T_{reg}$	CD127 Clone R34.34	CCR7 Clone 150503	CD62L Clone DREG56	CD25 Clone 81.49.9	CD4 Clone 1388.2	CD8 Clone 89.11	CD3 Clone UCHT 1	CD45RA Clone 2H4LDH11LD89	CD45 Clone J.33
5. B-cell phenotyping	IgD Clone IAD60	CD21 Clone BL13	CD19 Clone J3-119	CD27 Clone 1A 4CD27	CD24 Clone ALB 6		CD38 Clone LS198-4-3	IgM Clone SA-DA-4	CD45 Clone J.33
6. Dendritic cells	BDCA3 Clone 501733	LIN	CD123 Clone SSDCLY107D2	CD11c Clone BU15	BDCA20 Clone AC144		CD16 Clone 3GB	HLA-DR Clone IMMU357	CD45 Clone J.33

well as sophisticated reporting of the results. To date, no commercially available software provides a complete solution for automated data processing and gating, unsupervised population identification algorithms as well as statistical analysis for feature extraction and biomarker discovery.

2. *Open-source software for automated gating and unsupervised approaches.*
   The R Project for Statistical Computing/BioConductor platform constitutes a major and freely available resource for advanced flow cytometric data analysis [12–14]. Within the modular R framework the *flowCore* package provides the basis for handling cytometric data sets usually stored in list mode data (FCS) files with a multitude of adjoining packages for quality control, normalization, advanced tools for autogating and population identification based on a large number of different clustering algorithms as well as exploratory pipelines (*see* Table 2) for robust identification of clinical correlates (*see* Table 3).

3 Methods

3.1 Flow Cytometer Setup

The environment of the cytometer has a great impact on the quality of the measurements. Best is an installation of the cytometer in an air-conditioned room with protection of direct sun radiation. Variations in temperature affect the stability of the measurements. We describe here the setup procedure for a ten-color, three-laser Navios™ flow cytometer (Beckman Coulter). Similar procedures apply to other ten-color flow cytometers.

The standardization of the Navios™ cytometer performance can easily be done by (1) defining target channels for all fluorochromes using calibration beads (e.g., Flow-Set Pro beads, Beckman Coulter) and (2) generating Flow-Set bead lot-specific protocol files (*see* **Note 1**).

3.2 Staining of Whole Blood Samples

3.2.1 Staining Protocol 1 for Whole Blood Samples for Leukocyte Subsets Except B Cells (e.g., Panel 1 to 4 and 6 of Table 1)

1. Sample preparation: Use EDTA-whole blood stored within refrigerator (*see* **Note 2**), mix well prior to use. Label six 5 ml flow cytometry tubes with panel 1, 2, 3, 4, 2×6 and the corresponding sample ID. Add 100 µl EDTA-blood per tube.
2. Cell staining: Add pre-made antibody mixes according to tube label. Vortex samples for 10 s. Incubate samples for 15 min at room temperature in the dark. Vortex samples for 10 s. Add 1.5 ml 1× Versa-Lyse-Fix-Solution to all tubes. Vortex briefly. Incubate samples for 15 min at room temperature in the dark. Vortex tubes for 5 s. Add 2.5 ml cold PBS/FCS-Buffer to all tubes. Centrifuge samples at 300×*g* for 5 min at 4 °C. Decant the supernatants. Vortex tubes for 5 s. Unify both

Table 2
Selection of R packages for advanced flow cytometry data analysis

R package	Description	Ref.
flowCore	Framework for reading, writing, and processing of FCS files	[37]
flowStats	Data transformation, normalization, binning, and statistical methods	[32]
flowViz	Plotting of flow data for conventional visual inspection, i.e., by dot plots	[38]
flowQ	Quality control of raw data	[39]
QUALIFIER	Quality control of gated data	[40]
flowFP	Fingerprinting by probability binning for quality control and classification	[41, 42]
flowDensity	Automated sequential gating based on 1D kernel density estimation	[43]
flowMeans	*k*-Means clustering with adjacent cluster merging	[44]
Modalclust	*Hierarchical modal clustering*	[45]
Mclust	*n* Mixture model-based clustering	[46]
flowClust	*t* Mixture model-based clustering with the Box–Cox transformation	[47]
flowMerge	Model-based clustering with entropy-based merging	[48]
flowPeaks	*k*-Means clustering with *n* mixture peak merging	[49]
SamSPECTRAL	Spectral clustering after density-based down-sampling	[27]
SPADE	Density-normalized clustering and minimum spanning tree construction	[31]
flowMatch	Cell population matching between samples and meta-clustering	[50]
flowWorkspace	Import of hierarchical gating template from FlowJo™	[40]
openCyto	Scalable robust framework for automation of provided gating template	[51]
flowType	Automated phenotyping by 1D partitioning and significance assessment	[21]
RchyOptimyx	Extraction of population hierarchies correlated with outcome of interest	[33, 52]

panel 6 samples in one tube. Add 3 ml PBS/FCS to all tubes. Centrifuge samples at 300 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C. Decant supernatant. Vortex samples for 5 s. Add 150 µl PBS/FCS-Buffer resulting in a final volume of about 250 µl (*see* **Note 3**).

*3.2.2 Staining Protocol 2 for Whole Blood Sample B-Cell Subsets (e.g., Panel 5 of Table 1, See **Note 4**)*

1. Sample preparation: Use EDTA-whole blood stored within refrigerator (*see* **Note 2**), mix well prior to use. Label two 5 ml flow cytometry tubes with panel 5 and the corresponding sample ID. Label one 50 ml Falcon™ tube with sample ID. Add 15 ml 1× Lysis-buffer into the 50 ml Falcon™ tube. Add 300 µl of blood and vortex. Incubate for 12 min at room temperature on test tube rotator. Add 10 ml cold IsoFlow. Centrifuge at 300 × *g* for 10 min at 4 °C. Decant supernatant and resuspend pellet (*see* **Note 5**). Add 300 µl cold IsoFlow and transfer the suspension into one of the 5 ml flow cytometry tubes. Add 4 ml cold IsoFlow. Centrifuge at 300 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C. Decant supernatant and resuspend pellet in a maximum of 200 µl IsoFlow. Transfer 100 µl cell suspension into second labeled flow cytometry tube.
2. Cell staining: Add pre-made antibody mixes according to tube label. Vortex samples for 10 s. Incubate samples for 20 min at room temperature in the dark. Vortex samples for 10 s. Add 1 ml 1× PBS-Fix buffer. Vortex briefly. Incubate samples for 10 min at room temperature in the dark. Vortex tubes for 5 s. Add 2 ml cold PBS/FCS-Buffer and centrifuge samples at 300 × *g* for 5 min at 4 °C. Decant the supernatants. Vortex tubes for 5 s. Unify both samples in one tube. Add 150 µl PBS/FCS-Buffer resulting in a final volume of about 250 µl (*see* **Note 3**).

3.3 Sample Acquisition and Compensation

1. Acquire samples on the Navios™ using the generated protocol files for staining protocol 1 and 2.
2. When using multiple fluorochromes in an experiment correction of spillover of fluorochromes into another channel is required by the process called compensation, i.e., multiplying by the inverse of the spillover matrix. This is usually achieved by single-color control-stained cells or capture beads. An advanced alternative is called "fluorescence-minus-one" FMO controls, in which always one of the used fluorochromes is removed within the staining procedure. The spillover into this channel can be then compensated. However, for repeated measurements on, e.g., patient samples of several panels this can be time- and cost-intensive. Thus especially in longitudinal projects compensation has to be up-to-date and ideally performed by well-experienced analysts adjusting the photomultiplier tube PMT voltages in order to align the median fluorescence intensity (*see* **Note 6**) of the positive and negative populations in the neighboring channel (*see* Fig. 1).

3.4 Analysis of Acquired Flow Cytometric Data

1. *Manual hierarchical gating.*
   Conventional analysis of flow data relies on sequential manual gating, i.e., by setting cutoff values in univariate histograms or drawing regions (polygons, ellipses) around point clouds that

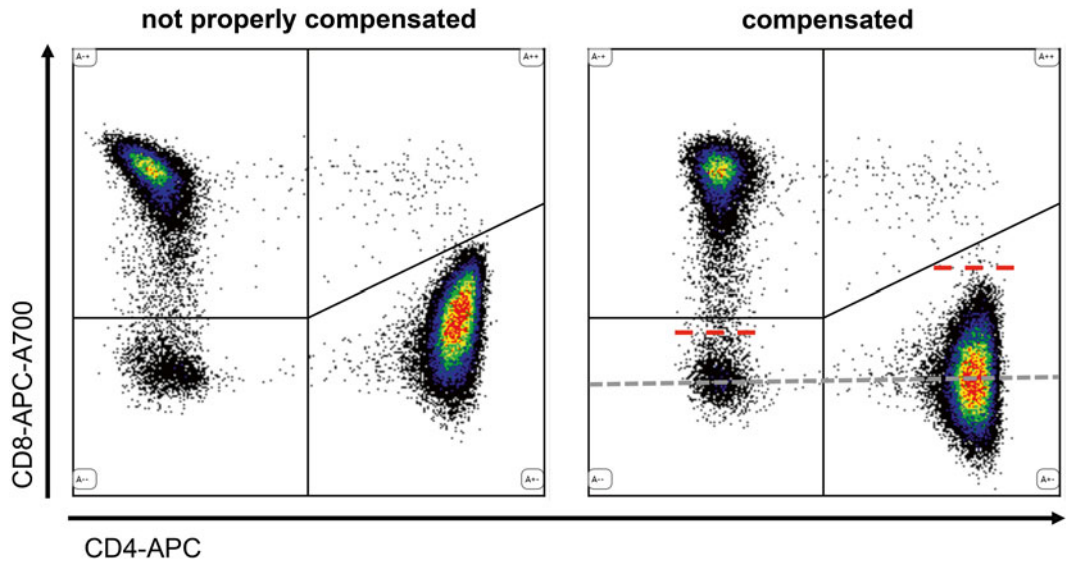


Fig. 1 Example of a not properly compensated and correctly compensated whole blood sample stained for CD8-APC-A700 and CD4-APC. Spillover of APC fluorescence into APC-A700 as visible in the *left* part of the figure was compensated until CD8-negative, CD4-negative (*bottom left*), and CD4-positive (*bottom right*) populations show the same median fluorescence intensity (*grey dashed line* in the *right* part) for the APC-A700 channel. Also indicated are the thresholds for APC-A700 autofluorescence for the CD4-negative and CD4-positive populations (*red dashed line*), which is higher for the CD4-positive population due to data spread after compensation

are positive or negative for a particular parameter, i.e., expression marker, in bivariate dot plots or histograms. Gating is the process to extend a cellular phenotype to more than two markers, by filtering the observed cells based on a region set in a parental dot plot and identifying target populations based on different marker(s) in a nested bivariate dot plot, thereby inherently imposing a gating hierarchy (or strategy) for a desired phenotype. Appropriate negative staining controls such as "fluorescence minus one" (FMO) [11] provide a basis for objectivity in identifying marker-positive cell subsets. However, scaling of the data within a plot, i.e., by appropriate transformations, as well as the exact location of an applied gate may vary considerably between individually skilled operators.

2. *Automated gating and unsupervised approaches.*
One of the main drawbacks in flow cytometric data analysis has been the subjective nature of traditional methods to identify the cellular subsets of interest. Strong analyst bias and technical variability have hampered inter-laboratory comparisons. Recent efforts to harmonize and standardize flow cytometry for immune monitoring in multi-centric clinical trials have been successful [9, 15, 16], paving also the way for computational methods to facilitate cytometric data analysis. A large number of flow cytometry-related bioinformatics tools are not

only readily available but also peer-reviewed and have been tested for performance [17].

3. *Web-based analysis.*
In an effort to also bring the computational methods to the broad community of scientists and cytometrists without programmatic skills, online solutions have been made available. The GenePattern Flow Cytometry Suite allows to build analytical pipelines from 34 open-source modules that leverage from the functionality developed in R/BioConductor [18]. A straightforward approach has been taken by CytoBank, a web-based application for basic and advanced, collaborative analysis, and storage of flow cytometric data. Particularly the advent of mass cytometry enabling simultaneous acquisition of 40 or more parameters has created a need among researchers for easy to use tools, such as the CytoBank built-in *SPADE* (spanning-tree progression analysis of density-normalized events) or *viSNE* (t-distributed stochastic neighbor embedding) algorithms (also available as MATLAB implementations) [19, 20]. These do not only allow an objective, unsupervised identification of cell populations but also their visualization by mapping relationships within the high-dimensional space into two-dimensional graphs (Fig. 2).

4. *Computational biomarker discovery.*
Until recently, comprehensive multi-parameter immune phenotyping has not been accessible to exploratory and predictive analytics, as a fully exhaustive manual gating is not feasible. The superiority of above-mentioned, unsupervised population identification algorithms to explore experimental or clinical high-dimensional flow cytometric data has been demonstrated by critical assessment [21–23]. Approaches to cellular biomarker discovery comprise following steps (for full details of the methodology the interested reader may refer to [17, 21–30] and references in Table 2, which may also serve as a typical analysis pipeline template):

   (a) Acquire a large enough cohort of samples to cover most of the biological heterogeneity and to have sufficient statistical power. Balance for possible confounders.

   (b) Reduce technical noise by using standardized procedures (see above).

   (c) Compensate fluorescence channels and scale data by appropriate transformations (i.e., hyperbolic arcsine, biexponential, or logicle transformation). Further routines to normalize the data are worth considering (*see* **Note 7**).

   (d) Preprocess cytometric data to exclude debris, dead cells, and doublets. Perform quality control by initial analysis of your data, i.e., to detect and exclude outliers (*see* **Note 8**).

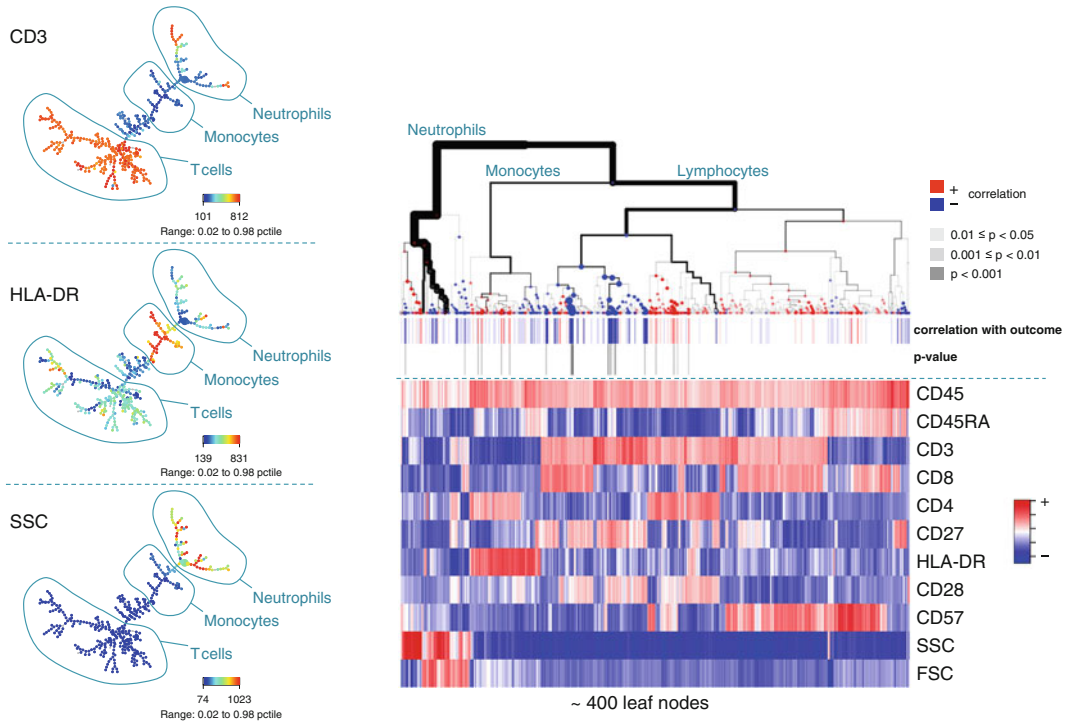


Fig. 2 Unsupervised population identification by density-normalized agglomerative clustering. Whole blood samples from 52 healthy donors were stained for T-cell activation markers and analyzed on a Navios™ (Beckman Coulter) according to standard operating procedures. All data files have been preprocessed by applying compensations, transformations, gating out doublets and debris and subsetting to CD45+ leucocytes. The *left panel* shows the minimum spanning-tree (MST) constructed by *SPADE* (R/Cytoscape plugin) after "meta"-clustering of all measured markers across all 52 samples. According to tree coloring for median fluorescence intensities of CD3 and HLA-DR expression, and side scatter (SSC) characteristics the MST was annotated manually for Neutrophils, Monocytes, and T cells. The size of each individual node (of approx. 400) reflects the contained cell count or frequency for a given sample. To the right, the *SPADE* result can be visualized in a heatmap showing all clustered parameters at once in blue-white-red coloring to accentuate negative and positive marker expression. Similarities between leaf (i.e., *SPADE*) nodes are represented in a dendrogram generated by hierarchical clustering (as opposed to a MST). Hierarchical nodes within the dendrogram are accessible to further analysis such as calculating cell frequencies of parental nodes, indicated by the increased edge thickness (branches) and statistical tests for, e.g., correlation with external variables. Point size of nodes in the dendrogram increases with "significance" of correlation. For leaf nodes sign and *p*-values, e.g., of Pearson's correlation metric (adjusted for multiple comparisons) are indicated by side bar colors

(e) Apply appropriate algorithm that exhaustively identifies cellular subsets for specified parameters/markers across all samples of a training set (*see* **Note 9**).

(f) *Variation 1.* Clustering on individual samples. Identified populations are unlabeled (randomly assigned numbers) and have to be matched between samples by a secondary clustering of individual cluster results (e.g., by *flowMatch*).

(g) *Variation 2.* Meta-clustering after merging of reduced data [27, 31] (e.g., by *SPADE* after density-dependent down-sampling) into a single file.

(h) *Variation 3.* As an alternative approach, use single-parameter partitioning (i.e., into positive and negative expression of a marker) and derive cell populations by combining partitions to all possible phenotypes (*flowType/RchyOptimyx* pipeline).

(i) Visualize and carefully interpret the results in terms of systematic variance and biological relevance (*see* **Note 10**).

(j) Identify candidate features that stratify clinical outcome, i.e., those populations that significantly discriminate between groups (input classes in the training set) or correlate with outcome of interest. Adjust p-values in case of multiple hypothesis testing (*see* **Note 11**).

(k) Generate classification models based on one ore more selected populations or phenotypes (usually, this would be multivariate classifiers, e.g., a logistic regression model, linear discriminant function, or self-learning algorithm, such as a support vector machine [26]; several advanced packages are available in R). Determine robustness of classifier in terms of sensitivity to variations within the training set by internal cross-validation or bootstrapping procedures to get confidence intervals for p-values and effect sizes.

(l) Externally validate the model or trained classifier (new hypothesis!) by testing its predictive performance on a new, independent set of samples taken from the patient population. Ideally, this is prospectively performed in a new randomized blinded clinical trial. Do not underpower the study (calculate necessary sample size, *see* **Note 12**).

4 Notes

1. Different batches of calibration beads such as Flow-Set Pro beads do vary in their mean fluorescence intensity (MFI) values, thus for consistent results within one project work with the same batch of beads. Otherwise, cytometer settings have to be translated between batches to new protocol files.
2. Stain samples within at least 8 h of blood collection, extended time between blood collection and staining results in high-performance variability.
3. Store at 4 °C in the dark until measurements, low variability is achieved when measured within 4 h after staining.

4. Whole blood staining of B cell subsets requires pre-washing of serum antibodies with PBS or lysis solution, which would otherwise interfere with surface IgM and IgG staining.
5. If cell pellet stays red repeat lysis. Pay attention blood samples are drawn at correct volumes. Performance of lysis solutions may also vary according to different batches. Report back to company if performance is unsatisfactory. Unsatisfactory lysis is also influenced by blood volume within collection tube.
6. Use median fluorescence intensity (grey dashed line in Fig. 2) as the threshold for autofluorescence in channel two may be higher for the positive population (red dashed line in Fig. 2), and thus adjusting for the mean fluorescence intensity could result in over-compensation.
7. Normalize systematic between-sample variation (as introduced by instrumentation differences and technical variation during sample acquisition) by aligning prominent features (landmarks) in the raw data on a per-channel basis [32].
8. Beware of piling of events (data points) on the margins of the data range, as, e.g., introduced by too high/low PMT values or insufficient transformation of compensated data to a logarithmic scale. These "boundary events" would contaminate any clustering and should be removed in advance.
9. Clustering algorithms, such as *SPADE*, are ideally suited to detect rare populations (leaf nodes) that are phenotypically different (i.e., in terms of the expression of specific markers). However, if a cohort of samples is rather uniform in cellular phenotypes, relevant, i.e., predictive differences arise from cell distributions (i.e., compositions) in complex phenotypes that are difficult to be interpreted and re-identified by a (hierarchical) gating strategy. The *flowType/RchyOptimyx* pipeline addresses this shortcoming, enabling the annotation and condensation of a large number of identified phenotypes into a single, most important hierarchy [33] Table 3.
10. Perform visual inspection of clusters/populations in conventional dot plots and assess the validity of the result ("does the

Table 3
Cellular phenotypes as clinical biomarkers

Type of biomarker	Clinical application
Diagnostic	To define presence, activity, or absence of a disease
Prognostic/predictive	To predict outcome of a disease or therapy
Monitoring	To asses treatment efficacy and safety
Intrinsic risk profile	To stratify/to personalize therapy

cluster make sense?", i.e., do mutually exclusive cell subsets fall in one cluster). You might have to tune input parameters of the algorithm (e.g., provide optimal *k*-number of clusters to resolve all possible cell populations, add some noise to avoid singularity issues, etc.) and rerun the clustering.

11. Test as appropriate. Discriminative properties of identified subsets might also be scored by evaluating the area under the receiver operating characteristics curve (AUC) [34]. If a multivariate classifier is to be constructed, consider regularization techniques to prevent overfitting of the model and improve predictive performance [35, 36].
12. Consult a statistician for trial design and sample size calculation.

Acknowledgement

This work was supported by the EU FP7 grant "The ONE Study" and the EU COST initiative "A-FACCT" provided to Birgit Sawitzki.

References

1. Streitz M, Miloud T, Kapinsky M, Reed MR, Magari R, Geissler EK, Hutchinson JA, Vogt K, Schlickeiser S, Kverneland AH, Meisel C, Volk HD, Sawitzki B (2013) Standardization of whole blood immune phenotype monitoring for clinical trials: panels and methods from the ONE study. Transplant Res 2:17. doi:10.1186/2047-1440-1182-1117
2. Agarwal S, Busse PJ (2010) Innate and adaptive immunosenescence. Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol 104:183–190, quiz 190–182
3. Castelo-Branco C, Soveral I (2014) The immune system and aging: a review. Gynecol Endocrinol 30:16–22, doi: 10.3109/09513590.09512013.09852531. Epub 09512013 Nov 09513512
4. Franceschi C, Campisi J (2014) Chronic inflammation (inflammaging) and its potential contribution to age-associated diseases. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 69:S4–S9. doi:10.1093/gerona/glu1057
5. Goto M (2008) Inflammaging (inflammation + aging): a driving force for human aging based on an evolutionarily antagonistic pleiotropy theory? Biosci Trends 2:218–230
6. Jenny NS (2012) Inflammation in aging: cause, effect, or both? Discov Med 13:451–460
7. Larbi A, Fulop T (2014) From "truly naive" to "exhausted senescent" T cells: when markers predict functionality. Cytometry A 85:25–35, doi: 10.1002/cyto.a.22351. Epub 22013 Sep 22330
8. Herzenberg LA, Tung J, Moore WA, Herzenberg LA, Parks DR (2006) Interpreting flow cytometry data: a guide for the perplexed. Nat Immunol 7:681–685
9. Maecker HT, McCoy JP Jr, Consortium FHI, Amos M, Elliott J, Gaigalas A, Wang L, Aranda R, Banchereau J, Boshoff C, Braun J, Korin Y, Reed E, Cho J, Hafler D, Davis M, Fathman CG, Robinson W, Denny T, Weinhold K, Desai B, Diamond B, Gregersen P, Di Meglio P, Nestle FO, Peakman M, Villanova F, Ferbas J, Field E, Kantor A, Kawabata T, Komocsar W, Lotze M, Nepom J, Ochs H, O'Lone R, Phippard D, Plevy S, Rich S, Roederer M, Rotrosen D, Yeh JH (2010) A model for harmonizing flow cytometry in clinical trials. Nat Immunol 11:975–978
10. Maecker HT, McCoy JP, Nussenblatt R (2012) Standardizing immunophenotyping for the Human Immunology Project. Nat Rev Immunol 12:191–200, doi: 110.1038/nri3158
11. Maecker HT, Trotter J (2006) Flow cytometry controls, instrument setup, and the determination of positivity. Cytometry A 69:1037–1042
12. R_Core_Team_(2014) R: a language and environment for statistical computing. R Foundation for Statistical Computing, Vienna, Austria. http://www.R-project.org/

13. Le Meur N (2013) Computational methods for evaluation of cell-based data assessment – bioconductor. Curr Opin Biotechnol 24:105–111
14. Reimers M, Carey VJ (2006) Bioconductor: an open source framework for bioinformatics and computational biology. Methods Enzymol 411:119–134
15. Maecker HT, Rinfret A, D'Souza P, Darden J, Roig E, Landry C, Hayes P, Birungi J, Anzala O, Garcia M, Harari A, Frank I, Baydo R, Baker M, Holbrook J, Ottinger J, Lamoreaux L, Epling CL, Sinclair E, Suni MA, Punt K, Calarota S, El-Bahi S, Alter G, Maila H, Kuta E, Cox J, Gray C, Altfeld M, Nougarede N, Boyer J, Tussey L, Tobery T, Bredt B, Roederer M, Koup R, Maino VC, Weinhold K, Pantaleo G, Gilmour J, Horton H, Sekaly RP (2005) Standardization of cytokine flow cytometry assays. BMC Immunol 6:13
16. Streitz M, Miloud T, Kapinsky M, Reed MR, Magari R, Geissler EK, Hutchinson JA, Vogt K, Schlickeiser S, Kverneland AH, Meisel C, Volk HD, Sawitzki B (2013) Standardization of whole blood immune phenotype monitoring for clinical trials: panels and methods from the ONE study. Transplant Res 2:17
17. Aghaeepour N, Finak G, Flow CAPC, Consortium D, Hoos H, Mosmann TR, Brinkman R, Gottardo R, Scheuermann RH (2013) Critical assessment of automated flow cytometry data analysis techniques. Nat Methods 10:228–238
18. Spidlen J, Barsky A, Breuer K, Carr P, Nazaire MD, Hill BA, Qian Y, Liefeld T, Reich M, Mesirov JP, Wilkinson P, Scheuermann RH, Sekaly RP, Brinkman RR (2013) GenePattern flow cytometry suite. Source Code Biol Med 8:14
19. Kotecha N, Krutzik PO, Irish JM (2010) Web-based analysis and publication of flow cytometry experiments. Curr Protoc Cytom Chapter 10: Unit10 17
20. Amirel AD, Davis KL, Tadmor MD, Simonds EF, Levine JH, Bendall SC, Shenfeld DK, Krishnaswamy S, Nolan GP, Pe'er D (2013) viSNE enables visualization of high dimensional single-cell data and reveals phenotypic heterogeneity of leukemia. Nat Biotechnol 31:545–552
21. Aghaeepour N, Chattopadhyay PK, Ganesan A, O'Neill K, Zare H, Jalali A, Hoos HH, Roederer M, Brinkman RR (2012) Early immunologic correlates of HIV protection can be identified from computational analysis of complex multivariate T-cell flow cytometry assays. Bioinformatics 28:1009–1016
22. Bashashati A, Johnson NA, Khodabakhshi AH, Whiteside MD, Zare H, Scott DW, Lo K, Gottardo R, Brinkman FS, Connors JM, Slack GW, Gascoyne RD, Weng AP, Brinkman RR (2012) B cells with high side scatter parameter by flow cytometry correlate with inferior survival in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Am J Clin Pathol 137:805–814
23. Zare H, Bashashati A, Kridel R, Aghaeepour N, Haffari G, Connors JM, Gascoyne RD, Gupta A, Brinkman RR, Weng AP (2012) Automated analysis of multidimensional flow cytometry data improves diagnostic accuracy between mantle cell lymphoma and small lymphocytic lymphoma. Am J Clin Pathol 137: 75–85
24. Qiu P (2012) Inferring phenotypic properties from single-cell characteristics. PLoS One 7:e37038
25. Craig FE, Brinkman RR, Ten Eyck S, Aghaeepour N (2014) Computational analysis optimizes the flow cytometric evaluation for lymphoma. Cytometry B Clin Cytom 86:18–24
26. Fiser K, Sieger T, Schumich A, Wood B, Irving J, Mejstrikova E, Dworzak MN (2012) Detection and monitoring of normal and leukemic cell populations with hierarchical clustering of flow cytometry data. Cytometry A 81:25–34
27. Zare H, Shooshtari P, Gupta A, Brinkman RR (2010) Data reduction for spectral clustering to analyze high throughput flow cytometry data. BMC Bioinformatics 11:403
28. Dundar M, Akova F, Yerebakan HZ, Rajwa B (2014) A non-parametric Bayesian model for joint cell clustering and cluster matching: identification of anomalous sample phenotypes with random effects. BMC Bioinformatics 15:314
29. Cron A, Gouttefangeas C, Frelinger J, Lin L, Singh SK, Britten CM, Welters MJ, van der Burg SH, West M, Chan C (2013) Hierarchical modeling for rare event detection and cell subset alignment across flow cytometry samples. PLoS Comput Biol 9:e1003130
30. Mosmann TR, Naim I, Rebhahn J, Datta S, Cavenaugh JS, Weaver JM, Sharma G (2014) SWIFT-scalable clustering for automated identification of rare cell populations in large, high-dimensional flow cytometry datasets, part 2: biological evaluation. Cytometry A 85:422–433
31. Qiu P, Simonds EF, Bendall SC, Gibbs KD Jr, Bruggner RV, Linderman MD, Sachs K, Nolan GP, Plevritis SK (2011) Extracting a cellular hierarchy from high-dimensional cytometry data with SPADE. Nat Biotechnol 29:886–891
32. Hahne F, Khodabakhshi AH, Bashashati A, Wong CJ, Gascoyne RD, Weng AP, Seyfert-

Margolis V, Bourcier K, Asare A, Lumley T, Gentleman R, Brinkman RR (2010) Per-channel basis normalization methods for flow cytometry data. Cytometry A 77:121–131

33. Aghaeepour N, Jalali A, O'Neill K, Chattopadhyay PK, Roederer M, Hoos HH, Brinkman RR (2012) RchyOptimyx: cellular hierarchy optimization for flow cytometry. Cytometry A 81:1022–1030
34. Streitz M, Fuhrmann S, Thomas D, Cheek E, Nomura L, Maecker H, Martus P, Aghaeepour N, Brinkman RR, Volk HD, Kern F (2012) The phenotypic distribution and functional profile of tuberculin-specific CD4 T-cells characterizes different stages of TB infection. Cytometry B Clin Cytom 82:360–368
35. Zare H, Haffari G, Gupta A, Brinkman RR (2013) Scoring relevancy of features based on combinatorial analysis of Lasso with application to lymphoma diagnosis. BMC Genomics 14(Suppl 1):S14
36. Mehta T, Tanik M, Allison DB (2004) Towards sound epistemological foundations of statistical methods for high-dimensional biology. Nat Genet 36:943–947
37. Hahne F, LeMeur N, Brinkman RR, Ellis B, Haaland P, Sarkar D, Spidlen J, Strain E, Gentleman R (2009) flowCore: a bioconductor package for high throughput flow cytometry. BMC Bioinformatics 10:106
38. Sarkar D, Le Meur N, Gentleman R (2008) Using flowViz to visualize flow cytometry data. Bioinformatics 24:878–879
39. Le Meur N, Rossini A, Gasparetto M, Smith C, Brinkman RR, Gentleman R (2007) Data quality assessment of ungated flow cytometry data in high throughput experiments. Cytometry A 71:393–403
40. Finak G, Jiang W, Pardo J, Asare A, Gottardo R (2012) QUAliFiER: an automated pipeline for quality assessment of gated flow cytometry data. BMC Bioinformatics 13:252
41. Roederer M, Treister A, Moore W, Herzenberg LA (2001) Probability binning comparison: a metric for quantitating univariate distribution differences. Cytometry 45:37–46
42. Rogers WT, Holyst HA. FlowFP: A Bioconductor Package for Fingerprinting Flow Cytometric Data. Adv Bioinformatics. 2009:193947. doi:10.1155/2009/193947. Epub 2009 Sep 24. PubMed PMID: 19956416; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC2777013.
43. Malek M, Taghiyar MJ, Chong L, Finak G, Gottardo R, Brinkman RR. flowDensity: reproducing manual gating of flow cytometry data by automated density-based cell population identification. Bioinformatics. 2015 Feb 15;31(4):606–7. doi: 10.1093/bioinformatics/btu677. Epub 2014 Oct 16. PubMed PMID: 25378466; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC4325545.
44. Aghaeepour N, Nikolic R, Hoos HH, Brinkman RR (2011) Rapid cell population identification in flow cytometry data. Cytometry A 79:6–13
45. Ray S, Pyne S (2012) A computational framework to emulate the human perspective in flow cytometric data analysis. PLoS One 7:e35693
46. Yeung KY, Fraley C, Murua A, Raftery AE, Ruzzo WL (2001) Model-based clustering and data transformations for gene expression data. Bioinformatics 17:977–987
47. Lo K, Hahne F, Brinkman RR, Gottardo R (2009) flowClust: a bioconductor package for automated gating of flow cytometry data. BMC Bioinformatics 10:145
48. Finak G, Bashashati A, Brinkman R, Gottardo R. Merging mixture components for cell population identification in flow cytometry. Adv Bioinformatics. 2009:247646. doi: 10.1155/2009/247646. Epub 2009 Nov 12. PubMed PMID: 20049161; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC2798116.
49. Ge Y, Sealfon SC (2012) flowPeaks: a fast unsupervised clustering for flow cytometry data via K-means and density peak finding. Bioinformatics 28:2052–2058
50. Azad A, Pyne S, Pothen A (2012) Matching phosphorylation response patterns of antigen-receptor-stimulated T cells via flow cytometry. BMC Bioinformatics 13(Suppl 2):S10
51. Finak G, Frelinger J, Jiang W, Newell EW, Ramey J, Davis MM, Kalams SA, De Rosa SC, Gottardo R (2014) OpenCyto: an open source infrastructure for scalable, robust, reproducible, and automated, end-to-end flow cytometry data analysis. PLoS Comput Biol 10: e1003806
52. O'Neill K, Jalali A, Aghaeepour N, Hoos H, Brinkman RR (2014) Enhanced flowType/RchyOptimyx: a bioconductor pipeline for discovery in high-dimensional cytometry data. Bioinformatics 30:1329–1330

Chapter 16

The Aryl Hydrocarbon Receptor in Immunity: Tools and Potential

Charlotte Esser

Abstract

The signaling pathway of the evolutionary old transcription factor AhR is inducible by a number of small molecular weight chemicals, including toxicants such as polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, bacterial toxic pigments, and physiological compounds such as tryptophan derivatives or dietary indoles. AhR activation is of immunological importance, but at the same time mediates toxicity of environmental pollutants, such as immunosuppression by dioxins. Measuring AhR activity and identification of ligands is thus of great interest for a variety of research fields. In this chapter, I briefly introduce the AhR signaling pathway, its role in immunology, and the tools and assays needed to analyze AhR signaling. Both are also needed when therapeutic applications are envisioned.

Key words Aryl hydrocarbon receptor, PAS-bHLH proteins, T cells, Innate lymphoid cells, AhR ligand binding and activation assays, TCDD, Immunotoxicity, Dioxin

1 Introduction

Interaction with the environment and building meaningful physiological responses is pivotal for organisms. In fact, much in the science of biology is about the study of cellular differentiation and interaction. Signaling and induction of gene expression are at the core of differentiation and response to external triggers. Signaling is mediated via signaling molecules and their receptors. Major signaling pathways are known. Surface receptor (e.g. cytokine receptors, G proteins) mediated transmission eventually amplify a signal via a cascade of downstream events (such as MAP kinase signaling). In contrast, nuclear receptors (e.g. steroid receptor or thyroid receptors) are transcription factors themselves. The aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AhR) is a nuclear receptor which can sense and respond to certain chemicals. AhR has been studied for a long time by toxicologists because it binds to and mediates toxicity to the environmental pollutant 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin (TCDD) and other, often anthropogenic, polycyclic aromatic

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2_16,

hydrocarbons (PAH). However, it has always been considered unlikely that AhR has evolved to recognize a modern environmental pollutant. In recent years, the physiological functions of AhR signaling have been studied increasingly and revealed numerous pivotal functions of AhR for cell differentiation, proliferation, and function of immune cells [1–3]. AhR might also be a pattern recognition factor for bacterial pathogens [4]. AhR research is highly interdisciplinary. This chapter provides a discussion on the role for AhR in immunity and major tools in measuring and assessing AhR activation. Both are needed when therapeutic applications are envisioned.

2 The Family of PAS-bHLH Proteins

The AhR belongs to the family of Per-ARNT-Sim-basic-helix-loop-helix (PAS-bHLH) proteins [5, 6], one of the three main families of bHLH proteins. PAS-bHLH proteins are transcriptional regulators controlling essential gene expression in adaptive responses. The acronym PAS indicates a domain, which was first identified in the drosophila proteins PER and SIM, and in ARNT. The PAS domain is common for proteins which can sense environmental clues, such as oxygen in the case of the PAS-bHLH member HIF-1α, or polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in the case of the AhR [7]. Also bacterial PAS-containing proteins are known, e.g. redox sensor DOS from *Escherichia coli* [8]. Some plants use PAS domain containing proteins for photoreception [9]. The PAS domain is approximately 300 amino acids long and some PAS-bHLH proteins have two degenerate repeats, PAS-A and PAS-B. Characteristically, PAS-bHLH proteins form functional homo- or heterodimers via their PAS domains. Recently, the murine PAS-A domain has been crystallized [10], and the authors could detail the heterodimerization of the AhR with its partner molecule AhR-nuclear translocator (ARNT) via PAS. Also, the PAS domain includes the ligand binding domain (LBD). The LBD appears spatially conserved. AhR binds its ligand in the PAS-B domain [11, 12]. PAS-bHLH proteins are evolutionary old, members exist in both vertebrates and invertebrates, e.g. in the nematode *Caenorhabditis elegans*. A crystal structure of the full AhR has not been reported, although it would be of enormous interest. Figure 1 shows the basic sections of AhR protein. Table 1 lists members of PAS-bHLH proteins.

3 Biochemistry of AhR Signaling

The biochemistry of so-called canonical signaling via AhR is well-known (reviewed by [13]). AhR resides in the cytoplasm in a multi-protein complex, which consists of two heatshock protein

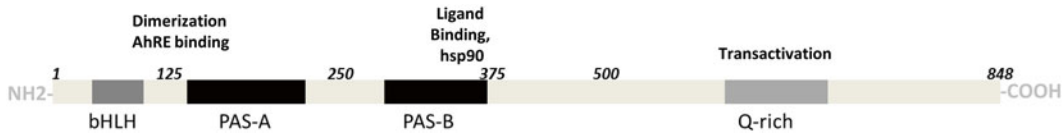


Fig. 1 Graphic scheme of domains in AhR. In humans, AhR is 848 amino acids long. A basic amino acid stretch is placed near the N-terminus, followed by a domain with two alpha-helices connected by a loop. This region binds to DNA and is important for nuclear translocation as well. At around amino acid 120 the first PAS domain begins. PAS domains are about 100 amino acids long. Dimerization with ARNT, ligand binding (at PAS-B), and also attachment with chaperoning proteins such as AIP occur in this region. Finally, toward the C-terminus a transactivation domain is found, necessary for the transcription factor activity of AhR

Table 1
Some members of PAS-bHLH protein family

"Sensor" Class I (class α)	Major function	Mouse model(s) available[a]	"Partner" Class II (class β)	Mouse model(s) available[a]
AhR	Chemical sensing/ immunity, metabolism	Yes	ARNT (=HIF1β)	Yes
AhRR	Suppression of AhR	Yes	ARNT2	Yes
HIF1α	Hypoxia sensing	Yes	BMAL1 (ARNTL1; MOP3)	Yes
HIF2α		Yes	BMAL2 (ANRTL2)	
HIF3α (IPAS)		–		
Sim1	Embryogenesis			
Sim2		Yes		
Clock	Circadian rhythm			
Per (lacks bHLH)		Yes		
NPAS2				
NPAS1	Neurogenesis			
NPAS3	Suppression of HIF			
NPAS4	Memory	Yes		

[a]To date

(hsp)-90 molecules, co-chaperon p23, and the immunophilin-related AhR-interacting protein (AIP, formerly known as XAP2 or ARA9). Hsp90 molecules prevent proteolytic degradation, while AIP prevents binding of the molecule importin [14], and thus premature nuclear import. The AhR complex disintegrates once a ligand binds into the AhR ligand binding pocket, and at the same time a nuclear translocation site (NLS) is exposed, and AhR is imported into the nucleus [15, 16]. Ligands of AhR can be either present in the cells, or must cross the cell membrane (and therefore are likely to be very lipophilic). There is no known AhR ligand transporter system, but import apparently requires dephosphorylation in

the NLS region [16]. Due to the omnipresence of ligands, a constitutive activity of AhR must be assumed. Within the nucleus, AhR dimerizes with ARNT molecules and binds to a short DNA sequence with the substitution intolerant core sequence (5′-GCGTG-3′). This sequence is called "dioxin-responsive element" (DRE), "xenobiotic response element" (XRE), or AhR-responsive element (AhRE). To initiate transcription, co-activators (such as SP1, NCOA1, p300) are recruited and chromatin structure changes. Eventually specific and general transcription factors enable that RNA polymerase II starts transcribing the gene [15, 17–20]. AhR-induced gene transcription is highly cell- and tissue-specific [21–23]. Many genes contain putative AhREs, but only few are actually targeted by AhR. The specificity is controlled by factors such as DNA accessibility, AhRE sequence and placement within promoter and other promoter elements, or availability of cofactors. Nonetheless, much of this is not understood and requires further research.

In addition to the canonical gene induction by AhR:ARNT, interactions of AhR with proteins from other signaling pathways have been described in recent years, most notably in cells of the immune system. AhR can associate with a number of proteins, including retinoblastoma protein, NFκB, STATs, c-maf, or β-catenin [24–31]. Apparently, this ability to tie into other signaling pathways allows for great flexibility and builds a network of cellular responses in cell proliferation, development, or inflammation. The interactions are highly cell- and situation-specific. Finally, purely cytoplasmic events can be initiated by dissociation of the AhR complex. A rapid increase in Ca^{2+} concentration or phosphorylation of the EGF receptor by c-src has been described in this context [32, 33].

4 Immunosuppression by TCDD and PAHs

PAHs are persistent in the environment and continue to be a regulatory challenge and ecological concern [34]. Measures have been taken in the last decades to remove PAHs from the environment but much remains to be done. New sources of pollution, such as electronic waste reclamation in developing countries have emerged, which lead to intolerably high intakes of toxic equivalents for workers and people living in the respective areas [35]. These new pollution scenarios must be dealt with by national governments in accordance with international conventions.[1] Toxicological assessment looks at various endpoints. One of them is immunotoxicity. Immunosuppression is caused by very low doses of TCDD in laboratory animals [36–38]. TCDD has a broad range of effects,

[1] http://chm.pops.int/Convention/ConventionText/tabid/2232/Default.aspx (accessed June 8, 2015).

causing atrophy of secondary lymphoid organs (thymus, lymph node, spleen) and functional impairment of many immune cells [39–42]. As a result, TCDD is immunosuppressive on the systemic level. Epidemiological evidence of TCDD immunotoxicty in humans was gathered after major poisoning incidents, such as the release of TCDD into the environment in 1976 after an explosion in a plant in Seveso, Italy. However, results were sometimes conflicting, and correlation with exposure is not always available. In general though, the data support the view that the human immune system is a target of dioxin-like substances [43]. Similarly, in vitro studies with human cells have shown that immune functions are adversely affected by dioxins, albeit a robust human biomarker for "immune competence impairment" is still lacking. This remains a major challenge for immunotoxicologists.

5 AhR and Immunity

Studies of AhR-deficient mice have highlighted its role for differentiation and function of immune cells. AhR is expressed highly in several hematopoietic cells from both the innate and adaptive immune system. Microarrays and studies using cell sorting combined with real-time PCR and Western blotting have identified Lin-Sca$^+$ and Sca$^-$ progenitor cells in bone marrow (BM), double-negative (CD4$^-$CD8$^-$) DN4 cells in thymus, CD4$^+$Th17 cells, innate lymphoid cells type 3 (ILC3), BM-derived dendritic cells (DC), γδ T cells, and Langerhans cells (LC) as subpopulations with high AhR levels [44–51]. Also keratinocytes, mast cells, and immune cells of the skin express AhR [52]. Dendritic cells (DC) and γδ T cells have simultaneously a constitutively high expression of AhR repressor (AhRR). The significance of this is not known.

5.1 T Cells

T cells are part of the adaptive immune system. Naïve T cells differentiate upon recognition of their cognate antigen and co-stimulatory signals provided by antigen-presenting cells (APC). Cytotoxic CD8+ T cells are capable of killing infected cells or cancer cells. T helper (Th) cells, on the other hand, orchestrate specific and innate immune responses by secretion of cytokines; for instance they help B cells to differentiate and undergo immunoglobulin class switching, and provide pro-inflammatory or immunosuppressive cytokines for other immune cells. Differentiation from naïve CD4+ T cells into T helper (Th) 1, Th2, or Th17 cells is driven by combinations of cytokines in the micromilieu, which are also provided by APC. AhR expression is not equal among T-cell subsets, or indeed other immune cells. It remains debated whether high AhR expression levels are indicative of physiological importance. However, AhR expression levels can be inducible in T cells and other cells [53–55].

One T-cell subset, Th17 cells, expresses higher constitutive amounts than other T helper cells [47]. Under in vitro Th17 differentiating culture conditions, AhR ligands promote the generation of Th17 [56]. It was further shown that AhR is needed for the expansion of this subset and secretion of IL-22 by Th17 cells [47, 57]. As IL-22 is very important for fighting bacterial infections, lack of AhR can lead to high susceptibility to certain infection [51]. However, Th17 cells and their cytokines are also known for their contribution to tissue destruction in autoimmunity. Unexpectedly, in experimentally induced autoimmunity models exposure to persistent and easily degradable AhR ligands (TCDD, ITE, or FICZ) ameliorated the disease, rather than exacerbating it [57–60]. Disease amelioration was explained by a shift toward generation of regulatory T-cell subsets (Treg). Likely, this is not a direct AhR effect. First, because evidence for induction of FoxP3 by AhR is inconclusive, and second, because mice with a constitutively active AhR in T cells have no increase in Treg [57, 60, 61]. It could be a question of a tolerogenic cytokine micromilieu generated by AhR effects on DC [62, 63]. Clearly, the in vivo situation is more complex, i.e. AhR ligands may induce Th17 directly, but Treg indirectly via DC, and this is balanced out by other parameters such as onset, route of exposure, immune status, and so on.

Regulatory T cells (Treg) secrete IL-10, an immunosuppressive cytokine, which also helps prevent tissue damage. Inducible Treg, natural Treg, and regulatory Tr1 cells were shown to be increased in mice injected with AhR ligands [29, 47, 57, 58, 64]. AhR cooperates with c-Maf in Tr1 cells to induce IL-10 transcription [29, 65]. Kynurenines, tryptophan metabolites, and high-affinity endogenous AhR ligands have been reported to promote Treg formation [57, 63, 66]. Thus, AhR is involved in the balance between Treg and Th17. However, there are still many unknowns, and more research is necessary if this is to be pharmacologically exploited. In particular, understanding ligand-specific and cell-specific interference with immune responses will be pivotal for any therapeutic approach [67].

5.2 Innate Lymphoid Cells

DC are professional antigen-presenting cells, which can sense pathogenic challenges via their Toll-like receptors. DC secrete cytokines upon antigen uptake and thereby generate either a tolerogenic or inflammatory micromilieu, adapted to the type of pathogen and the immunological situation. Their activities thus range from ensuring immune tolerance against dietary antigens to the initiation of a potent immune response upon entering bacteria into skin wounds. Of note, DC express high levels of AhR. In LC, AhR is needed for maturation and function of the cells [49]. Also, expression of the immunosuppressive enzyme indolamine-2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) by DC needs the presence of AhR, and is driven by kynurenine, a ligand of AhR which is produced by IDO;

AhR is in this case a negative regulator of immunogenicity [49, 63]. Triggering of immunosuppression via production of kynurenine as AhR ligands is even used by glioblastoma cancer cells to evade immunity [68]. Consequently, some researchers have looked at the potential of AhR ligands to manipulate immune responses. For instance, one such compound, VAF347, can suppress allergies or suppress graft rejection in a mouse model [62].

AhR signaling has recently been shown to be important for the differentiation and function of other cells of the innate immune system as well. AhR and AhR signaling is necessary for γδ T cells, innate lymphoid cells of the gut and NK cells. Its presence is required for proliferation and expansion in the respective tissues, and for secretion of IL17 and IL22. AhR-deficient mice thus lack important immune cells in their gut and skin, with potentially devastating consequences during bacterial infection and inflammation [45, 51, 53, 59, 69].

5.3 Epithelial Cells

The epithelia of the gut, skin, lung, and genitals present barriers to the environment. They are the first line of defense against unwanted chemicals, but also must allow some passage of chemicals, e.g., from the diet. Maybe not surprisingly, AhR expression is high in most cells of the epithelia, at least as far as analyzed. Immune cells and epithelial cells of the skin, gut, and lung have high AhR levels (reviewed in Esser and Rannug, 2015). For many of these cells, AhR was shown to be important for specific cell responses, such as the ultraviolet (UV) B stress response in keratinocytes of the skin [32, 70], or proliferation of ILC3 in the gut [51]. Intriguingly, ILC3 proliferation is also impaired when the AhR ligands are removed from the diet, highlighting that the AhR signaling evolved as a sensor for environmental triggers.

5.4 Therapeutic Potential

Immunotoxicology and immunopharmacology are two sides of one coin. Both analyze and describe how chemicals change immune responses. The immune system is very complex and thus the search for drugs which can be used in specific situations reflects this complexity. AhR activity is modulated by the type and affinity of ligands, as well as the target cell type. Persistent or short-term activation of the AhR by ligands can lead to changes in immunity, as known from the effects of TCDD and other polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, and from studies using FICZ or other endogenous ligands. As described above 4, immunosuppression is a hallmark of TCDD exposure. TCDD affects numerous immune cells, and similar effects of any AhR ligands ought to be considered carefully. A number of chemicals have been proposed as potential drugs, but so far no clinical trials have been reported. Of particular interest may be drugs, which are already marketed for certain diseases (and thus have undergone phase I and II trials), and have later been identified as AhR activators and thus maybe eligible for new fields of

application. Tranilast is one such example. Originally used as a drug for allergic diseases, it is now suggested as a breast cancer drug [71]. StemRegenin was found to promote proliferation of HSC [72], and kynurenine inhibitors as cancer drugs [68]. UVB irradiation-induced skin damage is dampened by the chemical BDDI [73], and coal tar, a mixture containing many AhR ligands, is a long-standing effective treatment for psoriasis, an inflammatory skin disease. With an ever-increasing knowledge of AhR ligands and their biochemistry and pharmacokinetics, the stage is set, however, for AhR-signaling related drugs. Conceivably, the situation in vivo integrates AhR activation in a more complex fashion than deduced from in vitro data, and in vitro data must be viewed with caution [60].

6 Major Tools

Research on AhR function and detection of novel ligands requires a range of tools. In the following text, I briefly describe such tools and how they can be used in AhR research.

6.1 Anti-AhR Antibodies

More than 200 monoclonal antibodies (mAb) against AhR are currently commercially available. In contrast, only a handful of polyclonal anti-AhR antisera are sold. The majority of anti-AhR mAbs are raised against short peptides from the N-Terminus of AhR. Fewer mAbs exist, which were developed using peptides from the C-terminus of AhR or against the phosphorylated form of AhR (e.g. against pSer-36). Phosphorylation of AhR contributes to nuclear import and DNA binding [16, 74]. Mouse and human AhR have about 80 % homology. Because of this high cross-species homology of AhR, anti-AhR antibodies are often cross-reactive and will detect AhR from human and several "laboratory" animals/rodents.

Before choosing and buying an antibody for AhR detection, it is useful to consider the way the antibody has been quality tested. Because most cells contain ARNT, another member of the PAS-bHLH family with sequence similarity to AhR, cross-reactivity is a risk. Quality tests thus should go beyond showing the size of the "anti-AhR" antibody on a Western blot. Rigorous negative controls must be done as well. The gold standard is testing the antibody or antiserum in question on AhR-negative cells or tissues. Thus Western blots should be done using cell lysates from AhR-negative/low tissues, lysates from cells from AhR knock-out mice, or siRNA knock-down cells. Similarly, for immunohistochemistry, a control with AhR-negative cells or tissues should be provided by the company and done as a routine control when using the antibody.

6.2 AhR Ligand Binding and Activation: Assays and Cell Lines

Identification of AhR ligands and their affinities/capacities to induce AhR-dependent transcription is an important tool in the search for therapeutic ligands, or evaluation of environmental exposure [16, 75]. Many endogenous and endogenous potential AhR ligands have been identified [11]. Ligand binding is the first and decisive step in AhR activation. The affinities between AhR and its ligands are relevant for the outcome of activation of AhR. Toxicological research has used this fact for developing the Toxic Equivalent Factor (TEF) concept, where 2,3,7,8-TCDD, the substance with the highest affinity to AhR, is assigned the value "1," and other substances get factors in relation to their affinity [76, 77]. This then allows describing the toxicity of a chemical mixture, albeit the metabolic stability of a substance and AhR expression levels also influences the toxicity in biological scenarios [78, 79].

Both direct affinity of an AhR ligand to AhR, and the ability to mediate transcription of AhR-dependent genes—most often *cyp1a1* is the gene of choice—can be measured. The latter has to be interpreted with greater caution, excluding indirect gene induction mechanism and the involvement of other transcription factors, such as retinoid X receptor, NF-κB, and others [80–83]. Identification of a true AhR ligand or inhibitor is not trivial [84]. Ligand binding, capacity to trigger nuclear translocation, AhRE binding, and eventually gene transcription are steps in the signaling pathway. Ideally, all of these are measured. Several methods exist, which are described briefly below. An example can be found here [85], where a new class of AhR ligands was recently identified with immune-modulating potential.

6.3 Measuring Gene Induction

For measuring activation of AhR transcriptional activity (rather than direct ligand binding), gene induction is the method of choice. The cytochrome P4501A1 (*cyp1a1*) gene has several DREs in its promoter [21], and is often used for assessing the AhR-activating ability of a ligand. Measurements are done by RT-PCR. Liver has high AhR expression levels, making liver-derived cells such as HepG2 (human), H4IIE (rat), or Hepa1c1 (mouse) suitable and common tools. For control purposes, one can also assay cell lines which have lost or deleted AhR or ARNT. A set of murine liver hepatoma cells (Hepa1c1c7 (wild-type), Hepa1c12 (AhR-deficient), Hepa1c4 (ARNT deficient)) has been published by Oliver Hankinson many years ago [86]. In addition, a transient transfection with respective siRNAs is a fast and easy alternative to prove the involvement of AhR and/or ARNT in the regulation of a certain gene of interest.

6.3.1 CYP1 Activity Assays

Rather than CYP450 induction, enzyme activity of CYP1 isoenzymes is often measured. In the so-called ethoxyresorufin-O-deethylase (EROD) assay, 7-ethoxyresorufin is preferentially converted into

resorufin by CYP1A1 won from cell lysates treated with putative AhR ligands. For a more specific measurement of CYP1A2 activity, the methoxyresorufin-*O*-deethylase (MROD) assay, with 7-methoxyresorufin serving as substrate, is often used. The EROD/MROD product—if present—can easily be measured fluorometrically, and the 50 % effective concentration (EC_{50}) values quantified.

6.3.2 Luciferase Reporter Assay

Reporter gene assays are often used in lieu of affinity as well. AhR-expressing cells are stably or transiently transfected with a plasmid reporter vector containing *Photinus* luciferase under the control of a DRE-sequences containing promoter (e.g. derived from rat *cyp1a1*). These cells can then be treated with putative AhR ligands, and AhR activation measured as luminescence. In transient transfection experiments, parallel transfection with a plasmid coding for a different luciferase (e.g. from *Renilla* under a strong constitutive promoter) should be used. The so-called CALUX assay consists of stable transfectants of the plasmid pGudLuc1.1 into rat hepatoma cell line H4IIE [87–90]. In Fig. 2a, the scheme of such a reporter plasmid is shown. The pGudLuc plasmid contains four functional DREs from the murine *cyp1a1* gene that confer TCDD responsiveness upon a MMTV promoter and adjacent luciferase gene. A human HepG2 cell line with a luciferase reporter plasmid was described as well [89]. A dose–response curve can then be derived which gives EC_{50} values (Fig. 2b). These assays are interesting in particular because they can simultaneously assess and quantify the presence of agonizing and antagonizing AhR ligands in samples, including mixtures. They are very useful for screening and monitoring, especially in environmental studies. In a note of caution, inhibition of luciferase activity by the test substance must be excluded.

6.3.3 Nuclear Translocation

To study translocation of AhR into the nucleus, another important parameter of AhR activation upon ligand binding, an expression vector plasmid has been developed. It contains AhR fused to a fluorescent EGFP gene in the plasmid pEGFP-C1 [32]. Cells which are transfected with this plasmid can be treated with the AhR ligand in question and the translocation of the AhR-EGFP fusion protein into the nucleus can then be followed in a fluorescent microscope. Nuclear translocation can also be assessed in Western blots by comparing band intensity of nuclear versus cytosolic fractions upon ligand treatment of the cells. Finally, immunohistochemistry with a sensitive antibody can reveal nuclear translocation.

6.3.4 Competition Assay

The above methods measure indirectly, whether AhR activity leads to transcription. Varying background levels of the natural high-affinity ligand 6-formylindolo[3,2-*b*]carbazole (FICZ) in cell culture media leads to a particular problem for assays of AhR activation in cultured cells [91, 92]. FICZ binds to the AhR with very

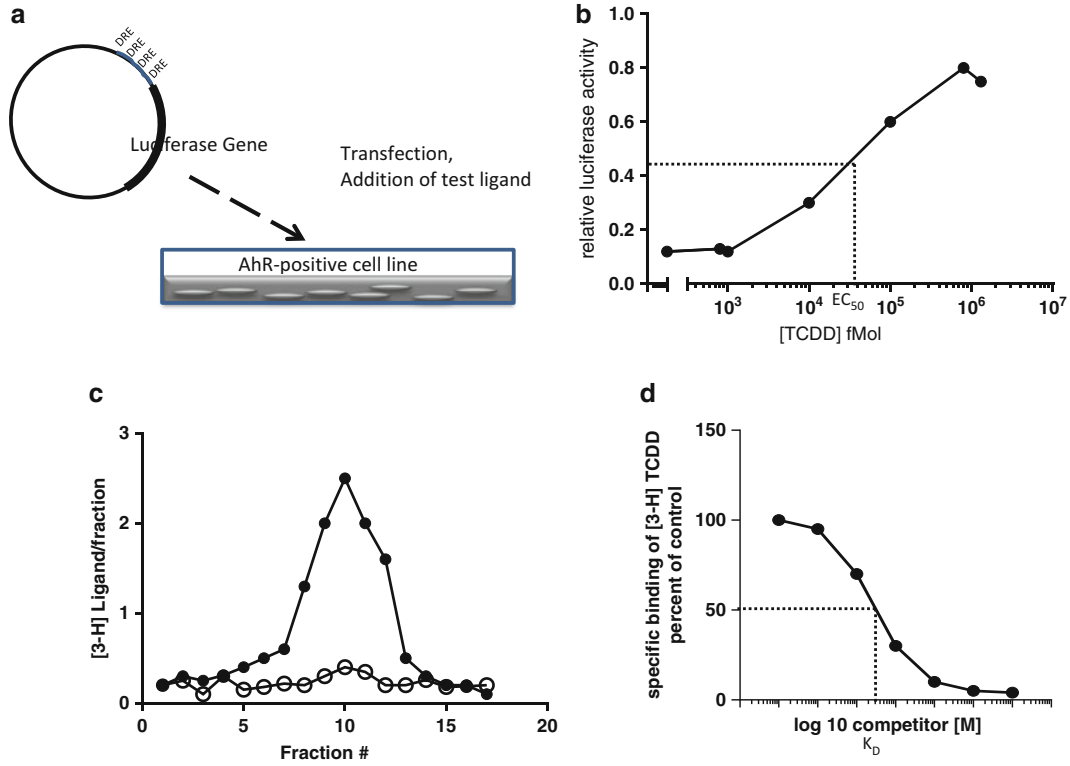


Fig. 2 Measuring AhR activity and AhR ligand affinity. A number of methods to screen for AhR activity and determine ligand binding affinity exist, as described in the text. (**a**) The luciferase reporter assay. A plasmid with the gene for luciferase under the control of a DRE-containing promoter is transfected transiently or stably into an AhR-proficient cell line. The ligand or environmental sample to be tested is added to the transfected cells. Finally, luciferase enzyme activity is measured as luminescence after addition of luciferin as the substrate. (**b**) The intensity of luminescence is correlated to ligand concentration, and can be expressed as EC_{50}. Note that the assay does not allow comparing absolute ligand affinities across labs, unless conditions were exactly the same. (**c**) Proving ligand binding—rather than induction of AhR-dependent transcription—requires biochemical competition assay. Radioactively labeled ligand, e.g. TCDD, is incubated with AhR-containing cell lysates and the amount of bound activity measured across fractions collected from a sucrose gradient. Cold TCDD is added in excess to show that binding has indeed occurred. (**d**) A graph derived from a competition assay, where binding is expressed in percentages across the molar input of ligand. The absolute affinity K_D in molar concentration can then be read off the graph, and compared between various ligands

high affinity ($<10^{-12}$ M), efficiently induces *cyp1a1* transcription and is quickly degraded by CYP1A1 enzyme activity [93]. Chemicals which inhibit CYP1A1 could thus appear as AhR activators in all the assays above [94]. Measuring direct binding of a putative ligand in competitive binding assays is therefore the only way to prove that a given chemical is an AhR ligand [95, 96]. Serial dilutions of the competitors to be tested are added to AhR-containing liver cytosol and incubated with radioactively labeled TCDD ([^{3}H]-TCDD). To control for nonspecific binding, samples are treated with radioactive TCDD together with an excess

amount of "cold" TCDD or TDCF. Unbound radioactive TCDD is removed by dextran-charcoal and the remaining solution separated on a linear sucrose gradient. Fractions are collected and the radioactivity in the fractions is determined by liquid scintillation counting. Finally, the specific binding to the AhR is calculated by subtracting the amount of radioactivity in the fractions containing radioactive TCDD together with the excess "cold" TCDD from the activity in the fractions containing radioactive TCDD [75]. Binding affinity can then be determined by plotting the specific binding relative to the concentrations of the competitor (Fig. 2c, d). Several different protocols exist and it is common that [^{125}I]2-iodo-7,8-dibromodibenzo-p-dioxin, DBDD, is used instead of [^{3}H]-TCDD. Alternatively, the hydroxyapatite (HAP) assay can be done, which was first described in 1982 [97], and has been modified since [98]. In this assay, bound radioactivity is retrieved from the mixture with hydroxyapatite. Aliquots of cytosol are incubated with [^{3}H]TCDD and different concentrations of the ligand to be tested. Thereafter, hydroxyapatite suspension is added to the different reaction mixtures and incubated. The suspension is pelleted, washed, and measured in a scintillation counter. Displacement of [^{3}H]-TCDD by the test ligand is then calculated, and corrected for nonspecific binding [99].

6.3.5 Chromatin Immunoprecipitation Assay

This assay directly identifies the binding of a transcription factor to a promoter such as AhR:ARNT to the AhRE element. Briefly, cells (approximately 1×10^6 are needed per sample) are incubated with ligand, then fixed with, e.g. 1 % formaldehyde, to crosslink DNA–protein complexes. Cells are lysed and DNA is sheared to fragments of approximately 300–500 bp size. Cell debris is cleared away, and the DNA–protein complexes are precipitated by a specific antibody against AhR. The antibody can be coupled to magnetic beads, sepharose or similar to enable and enhance precipitation or isolation from the mixture. Finally, the DNA–protein complex is "decrosslinked," protein-digested with proteinase K, and the remaining DNA fragments amplified by RT-PCR [100, 101]. PCR fragments can be electrophoresed and further identified by sequencing, cloning or on a microarray (ChIP-on-chip). The quality of the assay depends of course on the quality of the antibody (see above). ChIP assay kits are commercially available by now, and ChIP technology is quickly evolving, in particular with a view to reduce the number of cells needed, and solve specificity issues.

6.3.6 EMSA Electrophoretic Mobility Shift Assay

Finally, a somewhat older method to assess the capacity of a ligand to induce AhR-DNA binding must be included. Again, cytosolic extracts are incubated with the ligand in question. The cytosolic extracts are then incubated with radioactive [γ-32P]-labeled DNA, i.e. the AhRE consensus sequence. The products are separated and visualized on a polyacrylamide gel. Specificity of the binding of

Table 2
TCDD-resistant and susceptible rodent strains

	High susceptibility	Low susceptibility
Rats (*Rattus norvegicus*)	Long-Evans (*Turku*/AB) (inbred) LnC Sprague–Dawley (outbred)	Han/Wistar (*Kuopio*, closed colony) LnA
Mice (*Mus musculus*, *Mus spretus*)	AhRb-1 C57BL/6 AhRb-2 CH3/HeJ A/J BALB/c AhRb-3 *Mus spretus*	AhRd 129 DBA/2 NZB AKR SJL/J

AhR:ligand can be confirmed by using unlabeled AhREs as competitors. Addition of anti-AhR or anti-ARNT antibodies to induce a supershift on the gel (i.e. a slower electrophoretic movement due to the larger complex) is a further proof of the specificity of the AhR:ligand:DNA complex [98, 99].

6.4 Rats and Mice

Mice and rats with AhR alleles leading to different dioxin sensitivity are known [102, 103] (Table 2). High-susceptibility rat strains are Long-Evans (Turku/AB), Sprague–Dawley, and LnC (bred from L-ExH/W). Low-susceptibility strains are Han/Wistar and LnA [103, 104]. In rats, the difference in susceptibility is caused by a deletion in the transactivation domain, resulting in the loss of transcriptional induction of genes important for TCDD toxicity [104]. High-affinity alleles ($AhR^{b\text{-}1}$, $AhR^{b\text{-}2}$, and $AhR^{b\text{-}3}$) and a low-affinity allele (AhR^{d}) exist in mice. The d allele (e.g. found in DBA/2) differs from the b-1 allele found in C57BL by 10 nucleotides, five of which represent amino acid changes. Affinity of these AhR proteins to TCDD differs approximately by a factor of 100. Congenic C57BL/6 strains have been bred, i.e. strains which differ only at the AhR locus. Several strains of AhR gene-deleted mice have been developed independently in the 1990s. In addition, ARNT-deficient, AhR repressor-deficient, AhR repressor-EGFP reporter strains, humanized transgenics, constitutively active AhR, nuclear translocation signal (NLS) hypomorphs, floxed AhR or ARNT mice and others were developed, offering a comprehensive "zoo" of mice related to AhR signaling. Many of these lines are commercially available. For a discussion of the phenotypes see [102]. In addition, conditional mouse strains, where the AhR is deleted only in certain cell types are increasingly used in research. These mice are generated by breeding $AhR^{flox/flox}$ mice (which were generated by Christopher

Bradfield, University of Wisconsin) with an appropriate Cre-expressing mouse strain. For instance, this has been done for keratinocytes, liver cells, gut epithelial cells, recombination activation gene (RAG)-positive cells, and more [45, 51, 105, 106].

Acknowledgement

I am indebted to Agneta and Ulf Rannug, Nancy Kerkvliet, and Thomas Haarmann-Stemmann for comments and suggestions, and to the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft for financial support.

References

1. Stockinger B, Di MP, Gialitakis M, Duarte JH (2014) The aryl hydrocarbon receptor: multitasking in the immune system. Annu Rev Immunol 32:403–432
2. Bock KW, Kohle C (2006) Ah receptor: dioxin-mediated toxic responses as hints to deregulated physiologic functions. Biochem Pharmacol 72:393–404
3. Esser C, Rannug A, Stockinger B (2009) The aryl hydrocarbon receptor and immunity. Trends Immunol 9:447–454
4. Moura-Alves P, Fae K, Houthuys E, Dorhoi A, Kreuchwig A, Furkert J et al (2014) AhR sensing of bacterial pigments regulates antibacterial defence. Nature 512:387–392
5. Burbach KM, Poland A, Bradfield CA (1992) Cloning of the Ah-receptor cDNA reveals a distinctive ligand-activated transcription factor. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 89:8185–8189
6. Hahn ME (2002) Aryl hydrocarbon receptors: diversity and evolution. Chem Biol Interact 141:131–160
7. Gu YZ, Hogenesch JB, Bradfield CA (2000) The PAS superfamily: sensors of environmental and developmental signals. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 40:519–561
8. Kurokawa H, Lee DS, Watanabe M, Sagami I, Mikami B, Raman CS et al (2004) A redox-controlled molecular switch revealed by the crystal structure of a bacterial heme PAS sensor. J Biol Chem 279:20186–20193
9. Christie JM, Reymond P, Powell GK, Bernasconi P, Raibekas AA, Liscum E et al (1998) Arabidopsis NPH1: a flavoprotein with the properties of a photoreceptor for phototropism. Science 282:1698–1701
10. Wu D, Potluri N, Kim Y, Rastinejad F (2013) Structure and dimerization properties of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor PAS-A domain. Mol Cell Biol 33:4346–4356
11. Denison MS, Nagy SR (2003) Activation of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor by structurally diverse exogenous and endogenous chemicals. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 43:309–334
12. Pandini A, Soshilov AA, Song Y, Zhao J, Bonati L, Denison MS (2009) Detection of the TCDD binding-fingerprint within the Ah receptor ligand binding domain by structurally driven mutagenesis and functional analysis. Biochemistry 48:5972–5983
13. Denison MS, Soshilov AA, He G, DeGroot DE, Zhao B (2011) Exactly the same but different: promiscuity and diversity in the molecular mechanisms of action of the aryl hydrocarbon (dioxin) receptor. Toxicol Sci 124:1–22
14. Barouki R, Coumoul X, Fernandez-Salguero PM (2007) The aryl hydrocarbon receptor, more than a xenobiotic-interacting protein. FEBS Lett 581:3608–3615
15. McIntosh BE, Hogenesch JB, Bradfield CA (2010) Mammalian Per-Arnt-Sim proteins in environmental adaptation. Annu Rev Physiol 72:625–645
16. Ikuta T, Kobayashi Y, Kawajiri K (2004) Phosphorylation of nuclear localization signal inhibits the ligand-dependent nuclear import of aryl hydrocarbon receptor. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 317:545–550
17. Beischlag TV, Luis MJ, Hollingshead BD, Perdew GH (2008) The aryl hydrocarbon receptor complex and the control of gene expression. Crit Rev Eukaryot Gene Expr 18:207–250
18. Taylor RT, Wang F, Hsu EL, Hankinson O (2009) Roles of coactivator proteins in dioxin induction of CYP1A1 and CYP1B1 in human breast cancer cells. Toxicol Sci 107:1–8
19. Sartor MA, Schnekenburger M, Marlowe JL, Reichard JF, Wang Y, Fan Y et al (2009)

Genomewide analysis of aryl hydrocarbon receptor binding targets reveals an extensive array of gene clusters that control morphogenetic and developmental programs. Environ Health Perspect 117:1139–1146

20. Kurita H, Schnekenburger M, Ovesen JL, Xia Y, Puga A (2014) The Ah receptor recruits IKKalpha to its target binding motifs to phosphorylate serine-10 in histone H3 required for transcriptional activation. Toxicol Sci 139:121–132
21. Sun YV, Boverhof DR, Burgoon LD, Fielden MR, Zacharewski TR (2004) Comparative analysis of dioxin response elements in human, mouse and rat genomic sequences. Nucleic Acids Res 32:4512–4523
22. Frericks M, Meissner M, Esser C (2007) Microarray analysis of the AHR system: tissue-specific flexibility in signal and target genes. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 220:320–332
23. Esser C (2012) Biology and function of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor: report of an international and interdisciplinary conference. Arch Toxicol 86:1323
24. Ge NL, Elferink CJ (1998) A direct interaction between the aryl hydrocarbon receptor and retinoblastoma protein. Linking dioxin signaling to the cell cycle. J Biol Chem 273:22708–22713
25. Kim DW, Gazourian L, Quadri SA, Romieu-Mourez R, Sherr DH, Sonenshein GE (2000) The RelA NF-kappaB subunit and the aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AhR) cooperate to transactivate the c-myc promoter in mammary cells. Oncogene 19:5498–5506
26. Vogel CF, Sciullo E, Park S, Liedtke C, Trautwein C, Matsumura F (2004) Dioxin increases C/EBPbeta transcription by activating cAMP/protein kinase A. J Biol Chem 279:8886–8894
27. Vogel CF, Sciullo E, Li W, Wong P, Lazennec G, Matsumura F (2007) RelB, a new partner of aryl hydrocarbon receptor-mediated transcription. Mol Endocrinol 21:2941–2955
28. Kimura A, Naka T, Nohara K, Fujii-Kuriyama Y, Kishimoto T (2008) Aryl hydrocarbon receptor regulates Stat1 activation and participates in the development of Th17 cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105:9721–9726
29. Apetoh L, Quintana FJ, Pot C, Joller N, Xiao S, Kumar D et al (2010) The aryl hydrocarbon receptor interacts with c-Maf to promote the differentiation of type 1 regulatory T cells induced by IL-27. Nat Immunol 11:854–861
30. Braeuning A, Kohle C, Buchmann A, Schwarz M (2011) Coordinate regulation of cytochrome P450 1a1 expression in mouse liver by the aryl hydrocarbon receptor and the beta-catenin pathway. Toxicol Sci 122:16–25
31. Prochazkova J, Kabatkova M, Bryja V, Umannova L, Bernatik O, Kozubik A et al (2011) The interplay of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor and beta-catenin alters both AhR-dependent transcription and Wnt/beta-catenin signaling in liver progenitors. Toxicol Sci 122:349–360
32. Fritsche E, Schafer C, Calles C, Bernsmann T, Bernshausen T, Wurm M et al (2007) Lightening up the UV response by identification of the arylhydrocarbon receptor as a cytoplasmatic target for ultraviolet B radiation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:8851–8856
33. Nebert DW, Roe AL, Dieter MZ, Solis WA, Yang Y, Dalton TP (2000) Role of the aromatic hydrocarbon receptor and [Ah] gene battery in the oxidative stress response, cell cycle control, and apoptosis. Biochem Pharmacol 59:65–85
34. Malaj E, von der Ohe PC, Grote M, Kuhne R, Mondy CP, Usseglio-Polatera P et al (2014) Organic chemicals jeopardize the health of freshwater ecosystems on the continental scale. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111:9549–9554
35. Song Y, Wu N, Han J, Shen H, Tan Y, Ding G et al (2011) Levels of PCDD/Fs and DL-PCBs in selected foods and estimated dietary intake for the local residents of Luqiao and Yuhang in Zhejiang, China. Chemosphere 85:329–334
36. Holsapple MP, Snyder NK, Wood SC, Morris DL (1991) A review of 2,3,7,8-tetrachloro dibenzo-p-dioxin-induced changes in immunocompetence: 1991 update. Toxicology 69:219–255
37. Silverstone AE, Frazier DE Jr, Gasiewicz TA (1994) Alternate immune system targets for TCDD: lymphocyte stem cells and extrathymic T-cell development. Exp Clin Immunogenet 11:94–101
38. Vos JG (1977) Immune suppression as related to toxicology. CRC Crit Rev Toxicol 5:67–101
39. Sulentic CE, Kaminski NE (2011) The long winding road toward understanding the molecular mechanisms for B-cell suppression by 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin. Toxicol Sci 120(Suppl 1):S171–S191
40. Bankoti J, Rase B, Simones T, Shepherd DM (2010) Functional and phenotypic effects of AhR activation in inflammatory dendritic cells. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 246:18–28
41. Kerkvliet NI (2012) TCDD: an environmental immunotoxicant reveals a novel pathway of

immunoregulation--a 30-year odyssey. Toxicol Pathol 40:138–142

42. Vorderstrasse BA, Dearstyne EA, Kerkvliet NI (2003) Influence of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlor odibenzo-p-dioxin on the antigen-presenting activity of dendritic cells. Toxicol Sci 72:103–112
43. Esser C (2005) Dioxins and the immune system. In: Vohr H-W (ed) Encyclopedic reference of immunotoxicology. Springer, Heidelberg
44. Singh KP, Casado FL, Opanashuk LA, Gasiewicz TA (2009) The aryl hydrocarbon receptor has a normal function in the regulation of hematopoietic and other stem/progenitor cell populations. Biochem Pharmacol 77:577–587
45. Kadow S, Jux B, Zahner SP, Wingerath B, Chmill S, Clausen BE et al (2011) Aryl hydrocarbon receptor is critical for homeostasis of invariant gamma-delta T cells in the murine epidermis. J Immunol 187: 3104–3110
46. Martin B, Hirota K, Cua DJ, Stockinger B, Veldhoen M (2009) Interleukin-17-producing gammadelta T cells selectively expand in response to pathogen products and environmental signals. Immunity 31: 321–330
47. Veldhoen M, Hirota K, Westendorf AM, Buer J, Dumoutier L, Renauld JC et al (2008) The aryl hydrocarbon receptor links TH17-cell-mediated autoimmunity to environmental toxins. Nature 453:106–109
48. Sibilano R, Frossi B, Calvaruso M, Danelli L, Betto E, Dall'Agnese A et al (2012) The aryl hydrocarbon receptor modulates acute and late mast cell responses. J Immunol 189:120–127
49. Jux B, Kadow S, Esser C (2009) Langerhans cell maturation and contact hypersensitivity are impaired in aryl hydrocarbon receptor-null mice. J Immunol 182:6709–6717
50. Frericks M, Temchura VV, Majora M, Stutte S, Esser C (2006) Transcriptional signatures of immune cells in aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AHR)-proficient and AHR-deficient mice. Biol Chem 387:1219–1226
51. Kiss EA, Vonarbourg C, Kopfmann S, Hobeika E, Finke D, Esser C et al (2011) Natural aryl hydrocarbon receptor ligands control organogenesis of intestinal lymphoid follicles. Science 334:1561–1565
52. Esser C, Bargen I, Weighardt H, Haarmann-Stemmann T, Krutmann J (2013) Functions of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor in the skin. Semin Immunopathol 35:677–691
53. Wagage S, John B, Krock BL, Hall AO, Randall LM, Karp CL et al (2014) The aryl hydrocarbon receptor promotes IL-10 production by NK cells. J Immunol 192: 1661–1670
54. Marcus RS, Holsapple MP, Kaminski NE (1998) Lipopolysaccharide activation of murine splenocytes and splenic B cells increased the expression of aryl hydrocarbon receptor and aryl hydrocarbon receptor nuclear translocator. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 287:1113–1118
55. Prigent L, Robineau M, Jouneau S, Morzadec C, Louarn L, Vernhet L et al (2014) The aryl hydrocarbon receptor is functionally upregulated early in the course of human T-cell activation. Eur J Immunol 44:1330–1340
56. Veldhoen M, Hirota K, Christensen J, O'Garra A, Stockinger B (2009) Natural agonists for aryl hydrocarbon receptor in culture medium are essential for optimal differentiation of Th17 T cells. J Exp Med 206:43–49
57. Quintana FJ, Basso AS, Iglesias AH, Korn T, Farez MF, Bettelli E et al (2008) Control of T(reg) and T(H)17 cell differentiation by the aryl hydrocarbon receptor. Nature 453:65–71
58. Nakahama T, Kimura A, Nguyen NT, Chinen I, Hanieh H, Nohara K et al (2011) Aryl hydrocarbon receptor deficiency in T cells suppresses the development of collagen-induced arthritis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:14222–14227
59. Monteleone I, Rizzo A, Sarra M, Sica G, Sileri P, Biancone L et al (2011) Aryl hydrocarbon receptor-induced signals up-regulate IL-22 production and inhibit inflammation in the gastrointestinal tract. Gastroenterology 141:237–248, 248
60. Duarte JH, Di MP, Hirota K, Ahlfors H, Stockinger B (2013) Differential influences of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor on Th17 mediated responses in vitro and in vivo. PLoS One 8:e79819
61. Funatake CJ, Ao K, Suzuki T, Murai H, Yamamoto M, Fujii-Kuriyama Y et al (2009) Expression of constitutively-active aryl hydrocarbon receptor in T-cells enhances the down-regulation of CD62L, but does not alter expression of CD25 or suppress the allogeneic CTL response. J Immunotoxicol 6:194–203
62. Hauben E, Gregori S, Draghici E, Migliavacca B, Olivieri S, Woisetschlager M et al (2008) Activation of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor promotes allograft-specific tolerance through

direct and dendritic cell-mediated effects on regulatory T cells. Blood 112:1214–1222

63. Nguyen NT, Kimura A, Nakahama T, Chinen I, Masuda K, Nohara K et al (2010) Aryl hydrocarbon receptor negatively regulates dendritic cell immunogenicity via a kynurenine-dependent mechanism. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107:19961–19966
64. Kimura A, Naka T, Nakahama T, Chinen I, Masuda K, Nohara K et al (2009) Aryl hydrocarbon receptor in combination with Stat1 regulates LPS-induced inflammatory responses. J Exp Med 206:2027–2035
65. Wu HY, Quintana FJ, da Cunha AP, Dake BT, Koeglsperger T, Starossom SC et al (2011) In vivo induction of Tr1 cells via mucosal dendritic cells and AHR signaling. PLoS One 6:e23618
66. Mezrich JD, Fechner JH, Zhang X, Johnson BP, Burlingham WJ, Bradfield CA (2010) An interaction between kynurenine and the aryl hydrocarbon receptor can generate regulatory T cells. J Immunol 185:3190–3198
67. Stevens EA, Bradfield CA (2008) Immunology: T cells hang in the balance. Nature 453:46–47
68. Opitz CA, Litzenburger UM, Sahm F, Ott M, Tritschler I, Trump S et al (2011) An endogenous tumour-promoting ligand of the human aryl hydrocarbon receptor. Nature 478:197–203
69. Li Y, Innocentin S, Withers DR, Roberts NA, Gallagher AR, Grigorieva EF et al (2011) Exogenous stimuli maintain intraepithelial lymphocytes via aryl hydrocarbon receptor activation. Cell 147:629. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2011.09.025
70. Frauenstein K, Sydlik U, Tigges J, Majora M, Wiek C, Hanenberg H et al (2013) Evidence for a novel anti-apoptotic pathway in human keratinocytes involving the aryl hydrocarbon receptor, E2F1, and checkpoint kinase 1. Cell Death Differ 20:1425–1434
71. Prud'homme GJ, Glinka Y, Toulina A, Ace O, Subramaniam V, Jothy S (2010) Breast cancer stem-like cells are inhibited by a non-toxic aryl hydrocarbon receptor agonist. PLoS One 5:e13831
72. Boitano AE, Wang J, Romeo R, Bouchez LC, Parker AE, Sutton SE et al (2010) Aryl hydrocarbon receptor antagonists promote the expansion of human hematopoietic stem cells. Science 329:1345–1348
73. Tigges J, Haarmann-Stemmann T, Vogel CF, Grindel A, Hubenthal U, Brenden H et al (2014) The new aryl hydrocarbon receptor antagonist E/Z-2-benzylindene-5,6-dimethoxy-3,3-dimethylindan-1-one protects against UVB-induced signal transduction. J Invest Dermatol 134:556–559
74. Pongratz I, Stromstedt PE, Mason GG, Poellinger L (1991) Inhibition of the specific DNA binding activity of the dioxin receptor by phosphatase treatment. J Biol Chem 266:16813–16817
75. Denison MS, Rogers JM, Rushing SR, Jones CL, Tetangco SC, Heath-Pagliuso S (2002) Analysis of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AhR) signal transduction pathway. Curr Protoc Toxicol Chapter 4: Unit 4
76. van Leeuwen FX, Feeley M, Schrenk D, Larsen JC, Farland W, Younes M (2000) Dioxins: WHO's tolerable daily intake (TDI) revisited. Chemosphere 40:1095–1101
77. van den Berg M, Birnbaum LS, Denison M, De VM, Farland W, Feeley M et al (2006) The 2005 World Health Organization reevaluation of human and Mammalian toxic equivalency factors for dioxins and dioxin-like compounds. Toxicol Sci 93:223–241
78. Riddick DS, Huang Y, Harper PA, Okey AB (1994) 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin versus 3-methylcholanthrene: comparative studies of Ah receptor binding, transformation, and induction of CYP1A1. J Biol Chem 269:12118–12128
79. Harper PA, Riddick DS, Okey AB (2006) Regulating the regulator: factors that control levels and activity of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor. Biochem Pharmacol 72:267–279
80. Vecchini F, Lenoir-Viale MC, Cathelineau C, Magdalou J, Bernard BA, Shroot B (1994) Presence of a retinoid responsive element in the promoter region of the human cytochrome P4501A1 gene. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 201:1205–1212
81. Rushing SR, Denison MS (2002) The silencing mediator of retinoic acid and thyroid hormone receptors can interact with the aryl hydrocarbon (Ah) receptor but fails to repress Ah receptor-dependent gene expression. Arch Biochem Biophys 403:189–201
82. Monostory K, Pascussi JM, Kobori L, Dvorak Z (2009) Hormonal regulation of CYP1A expression. Drug Metab Rev 41:547–572
83. Zordoky BN, El-Kadi AO (2009) Role of NF-kappaB in the regulation of cytochrome p450 enzymes. Curr Drug Metab 10:164–178
84. Denison MS, Pandini A, Nagy SR, Baldwin EP, Bonati L (2002) Ligand binding and activation of the Ah receptor. Chem Biol Interact 141:3–24
85. Punj S, Kopparapu P, Jang HS, Phillips JL, Pennington J, Rohlman D et al (2014)

Benzimidazoisoquinolines: a new class of rapidly metabolized aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AhR) ligands that induce AhR-dependent Tregs and prevent murine graft-versus-host disease. PLoS One 9:e88726

86. Hankinson O (1979) Single-step selection of clones of a mouse hepatoma line deficient in aryl hydrocarbon hydroxylase. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 76:373–376
87. He G, Tsutsumi T, Zhao B, Baston DS, Zhao J, Heath-Pagliuso S et al (2011) Third-generation Ah receptor-responsive luciferase reporter plasmids: amplification of dioxin-responsive elements dramatically increases CALUX bioassay sensitivity and responsiveness. Toxicol Sci 123:511–522
88. Murk AJ, Legler J, Denison MS, Giesy JP, van de Guchte C, Brouwer A (1996) Chemical-activated luciferase gene expression (CALUX): a novel in vitro bioassay for Ah receptor active compounds in sediments and pore water. Fundam Appl Toxicol 33:149–160
89. Novotna A, Pavek P, Dvorak Z (2011) Novel stably transfected gene reporter human hepatoma cell line for assessment of aryl hydrocarbon receptor transcriptional activity: construction and characterization. Environ Sci Technol 45:10133–10139
90. Garrison PM, Tullis K, Aarts JM, Brouwer A, Giesy JP, Denison MS (1996) Species-specific recombinant cell lines as bioassay systems for the detection of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin-like chemicals. Fundam Appl Toxicol 30:194–203
91. Rannug A, Rannug U, Rosenkranz HS, Winqvist L, Westerholm R, Agurell E et al (1987) Certain photooxidized derivatives of tryptophan bind with very high affinity to the Ah receptor and are likely to be endogenous signal substances. J Biol Chem 262: 15422–15427
92. Oberg M, Bergander L, Hakansson H, Rannug U, Rannug A (2005) Identification of the tryptophan photoproduct 6-formylindolo[3,2-b]carbazole, in cell culture medium, as a factor that controls the background aryl hydrocarbon receptor activity. Toxicol Sci 85:935–943
93. Wei YD, Bergander L, Rannug U, Rannug A (2000) Regulation of CYP1A1 transcription via the metabolism of the tryptophan-derived 6-formylindolo[3,2-b]carbazole. Arch Biochem Biophys 383:99–107
94. Wincent E, Amini N, Luecke S, Glatt H, Bergman J, Crescenzi C et al (2009) The suggested physiologic aryl hydrocarbon receptor activator and cytochrome P4501 substrate 6-formylindolo[3,2-b]carbazole is present in humans. J Biol Chem 284:2690–2696
95. Poland A, Glover E, Kende AS (1976) Stereospecific, high affinity binding of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin by hepatic cytosol. Evidence that the binding species is receptor for induction of aryl hydrocarbon hydroxylase. J Biol Chem 251: 4936–4946
96. Bradfield CA, Poland A (1988) A competitive binding assay for 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin and related ligands of the Ah receptor. Mol Pharmacol 34:682–688
97. Gasiewicz TA, Neal RA (1982) The examination and quantitation of tissue cytosolic receptors for 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin using hydroxylapatite. Anal Biochem 124:1–11
98. El Gendy MA, Soshilov AA, Denison MS, El-Kadi AO (2012) Harmaline and harmalol inhibit the carcinogen-activating enzyme CYP1A1 via transcriptional and posttranslational mechanisms. Food Chem Toxicol 50:353–362
99. Frauenstein K, Tigges J, Soshilov AA, Kado S, Raab N, Fritsche E et al. (2014) Activation of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor by the widely used Src family kinase inhibitor 4-amino-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-(dimethylethyl) pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidine (PP2). Arch Toxicol 89:1329–1336
100. Haarmann-Stemmann T, Bothe H, Kohli A, Sydlik U, Abel J, Fritsche E (2007) Analysis of the transcriptional regulation and molecular function of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor repressor in human cell lines. Drug Metab Dispos 35:2262–2269
101. Harper TA Jr, Joshi AD, Elferink CJ (2013) Identification of stanniocalcin 2 as a novel aryl hydrocarbon receptor target gene. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 344:579–588
102. Esser C (2009) The immune system of Ahr null mutant mouse strains - not a simple mirror of xenobiotic receptor over-activation. Biochem Pharmacol 77:597–607
103. Yao CQ, Prokopec SD, Watson JD, Pang R, P'ng C, Chong LC et al (2012) Inter-strain heterogeneity in rat hepatic transcriptomic responses to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD). Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 260:135–145
104. Moffat ID, Boutros PC, Chen H, Okey AB, Pohjanvirta R (2010) Aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AHR)-regulated transcriptomic changes in rats sensitive or resistant to major dioxin toxicities. BMC Genomics 11:263

105. Walisser JA, Glover E, Pande K, Liss AL, Bradfield CA (2005) Aryl hydrocarbon receptor-dependent liver development and hepatotoxicity are mediated by different cell types. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102:17858–17863

106. Di Meglio P, Duarte JH, Ahlfors H, Owens ND, Li Y, Villanova F et al (2014) Activation of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor dampens the severity of inflammatory skin conditions. Immunity 40:989–1001

INDEX

Maria Cristina Cuturi and Ignacio Anegon (eds.), *Suppression and Regulation of Immune Responses: Methods and Protocols, Volume II*, Methods in Molecular Biology, vol. 1371, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-3139-2, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2016

M

N

P

R

S

T

U